

АНГЛИЙСКИЙ ЯЗЫК

для бакалавров

Часть 1

ББК 81.432 – 923
Б 79

Английский язык для бакалавров. Ч. 1: учебное пособие / М. В. Болина. — Саратов: Вузовское образование, 2022. — 308 с. — (Высшее образование). — Текст: электронный. ISBN 978-5-4487-0809-1 (ч. 1)
ISBN 978-5-4487-0810-7

Данное учебное пособие предназначено для студентов-бакалавров I курса факультета иностранных языков, обучающихся по направлению «Педагогическое образование», профиль «Иностранный язык. Иностранный язык», и по направлению «Лингвистика», профиль «Перевод и переводоведение». Учебный материал I курса рассчитан на лиц, продолжающих изучать английский язык, однако предусматривает систематическое повторение основ грамматики и фонетики. В учебник включен материал первого семестра.

Рецензенты: М.А. Курочкина, канд. филол. наук, доцент ЮУрГГПУ
Е.В. Челпанова, канд. пед. наук, доцент ЮУрГГПУ

ВВЕДЕНИЕ

Целью обучения английскому языку на первом курсе факультета иностранных языков является практическое овладение студентами основными видами речевой деятельности – аудированием, говорением, чтением и письмом в пределах грамматических и лексических тем, включенных в программу I курса. Требования к практическому владению студентами каждым видом речевой деятельности представлены в программе.

Задача фонетического курса заключается в корректировке и автоматизации произносительных навыков студентов. В работе над произношением большое внимание уделяется отработке произношения отдельных звуков, ассимиляции звуков в потоке речи, ритмике, фразовому ударению и коммуникативной функции интонации. В курсе рассматриваются начальные теоретические сведения о фонетическом строе английского языка и работе органов речи. Фонетический курс также включает 12 практических занятий. В конце курса представлен материал для повторения, который можно использовать для промежуточного фонетического зачета, а также небольшой лексический материал, что облегчает переход к практике устной речи.

Практика устной речи охватывает 4 лексических темы: «Знакомство», «Внешность», «Семья», «Праздники». Каждая тема состоит из текста, тематического словаря и упражнений, позволяющих не только отрабатывать лексический материал, но также совершенствовать фонетические и грамматические навыки. Тексты учебника частично взяты из учебников, рекомендованных для вузов, частично являются адаптацией оригинальных источников. Каждая тема завершается лексико-грамматическим материалом для повторения, после которого рекомендуется провести тест.

Грамматические темы («Части речи и члены предложения», «Виды предложений», «Артикль», «Местоимение», «Существительное», «Числительное», «Временные формы глагола в действительном залоге») выделены в отдельный раздел. Этот раздел включает не только грамматические правила, но и тренировочные упражнения.

Учебник также содержит приложения, в который включены правила чтения, задания по аудированию, диктанты, диалоги и тексты песен.

На каждый час аудиторного занятия приходится час самостоятельной работы студентов.

Contents

Phonetics

1. Phonetic theory.....	6
§ 1. English articulation.....	6
§ 2. Phoneme.....	8
§ 3. Transcription.....	9
§ 4. Phoneme classifications.....	9
§ 5. English phonetic system.....	15
§ 6. Assimilation.....	16
§ 7. Reduction.....	17
§ 8. Intonation.....	18
§ 9. Nuclear tones.....	23
§ 10. Syllable division.....	26
2. Phonetic practice.....	27
Lesson 1.....	27
Lesson 2.....	29
Lesson 3.....	31
Lesson 4.....	34
Lesson 5.....	37
Lesson 6.....	40
Lesson 7.....	43
Lesson 8.....	46
Lesson 9.....	49
Lesson 10.....	51
Lesson 11.....	54
Lesson 12.....	58
Tongue twisters.....	60
OCE dialogues.....	64
Reading practice.....	67
British matrix.....	71

Speech practice

Introductory part.....	82
Unit 1. Getting acquainted.....	89
Unit 2. Describing people.....	103
Unit.....	3.
Family.....	115
Unit.....	4.
Holidays.....	131

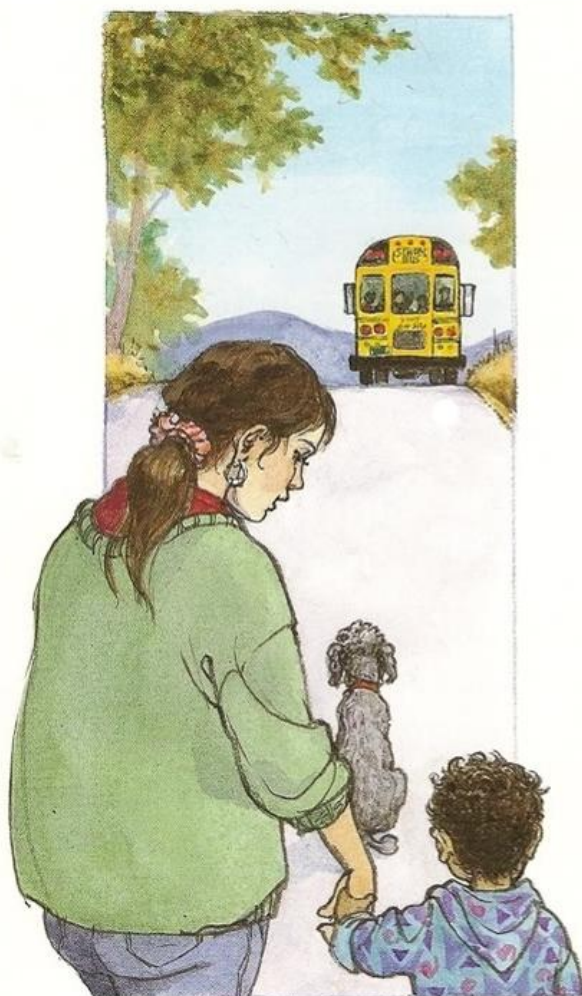
Grammar

§ 1. Introductory part.....	147
§ 2. Noun.....	157
§ 3. Numeral.....	164
§ 4. Pronoun.....	166
§ 5. Article.....	176
§ 6. Possessive case.....	183
§ 7. Present Simple.....	186
§ 8. Present Continuous.....	187
§ 9. Future Simple.....	192
Revision.....	196

Supplements

1. Reading rules.....	200
2. Listening and video tasks.....	210
3. Written practice.....	228
4. Dictations.....	229
5. Songs.....	245
➤ Christmas songs.....	251
➤ John Lennon & the Beatles.....	253

➤ Freddy Mercury & the Queen.....	260
➤ Jim Morrison & the Doors.....	264



September

The breezes taste
 Of apple peel.
 The air is full
 Of smells to feel—

Ripe fruit, old footballs,
 Drying grass,
 New books and blackboard
 Chalk in class.

The bee, his hive
 Well-honeyed, hums
 While Mother cuts
 Chrysanthemums.

Like plates washed clean
 With suds, the days
 Are polished with
 A morning haze.

ФОНЕТИКА (PHONETICS)

I. ОСНОВЫ ТЕОРИИ (PHONETIC THEORY)

Первостепенной задачей изучающего любой иностранный язык является овладение его фонетическим строем, т. е. умение правильно произносить звуки данного языка изолированно и в потоке речи, правильно оформлять речь интонационно.

Фонетический строй русского и английского языков существенно различаются, что создает большие трудности при овладении английским произношением. Чтобы овладеть произношением звуков английского языка, необходимо подробно изучить механизм речи, т. е. познакомиться с органами речи и их работой.

§ 1. Английская артикуляция (English Articulation)

1. 1. Органы речи

В образовании звуков, прежде всего, участвуют полости гортани, глотки, рта и носа.

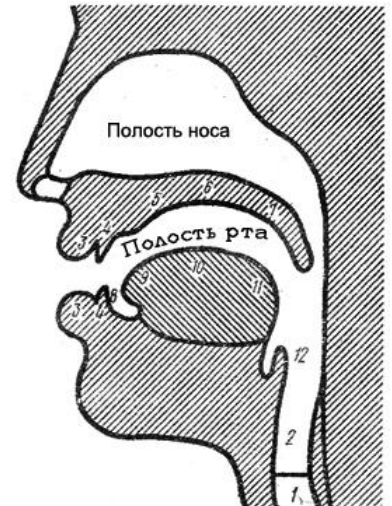
Струя воздуха при выдохе попадает в полость гортани (1), где расположены голосовые связки (2). Если мы произносим звуки с участием голоса, т. е. звонкие звуки, то голосовые связки напряжены и сближены, но не сомкнуты; воздушный поток приводит связки в колебание.

При произнесении глухих звуков голосовые связки раздвинуты, и выдыхаемый воздух проходит через голосовую щель беззвучно.

Из полости гортани струя воздуха попадает в глотку (12), откуда направляется в полость рта, если мягкое нёбо и маленький язычок (7) подняты и закрывают проход в носовую полость, или в полость носа, если мягкое нёбо опущено. В зависимости от того, проходит ли воздух через полость рта или через полость носа, звуки делятся на ротовые и носовые.

В полости рта важнейшим органом речи является язык. Поверхность языка называется спинкой языка и для удобства описания артикуляции звуков условно делится на следующие части: переднюю часть (9) с кончиком языка (8), среднюю (10) и заднюю (11).

Верхней границей полости рта является нёбо – твердое (6) и мягкое, заканчивающееся маленьким язычком. Непосредственно за верхними зубами у края твердого нёба расположены небольшие бугорки, называемые альвеолами (5). Помимо вышеупомянутых органов речи, следует назвать губы (3) и зубы (4).



Органы речи принято делить **на активные**,

то есть такие, которые производят определенные движения при образовании звуков:

1. голосовые связки,
2. задняя спинка глотки,
3. мягкое нёбо,
4. маленький язычок,
5. язык,
6. губы;

и **пассивные**, то есть такие, которые не производят самостоятельной работы:

1. зубы,
2. альвеолы,


3. твердое нёбо.


1. 2. Особенности английской артикуляции

Артикуляция – особенности механизма производства звуков, обусловленные анатомическим строением речевого аппарата. Данный механизм включает: способ подачи воздуха, необходимого для производства звука, особенности формы резонатора (главным образом ротового), положение языка, положение губ и т. п.

Английская артикуляция характеризуется следующими особенностями:

1. Выдыхаемый воздух подаётся краткими отрывистыми порциями, в отличие от русской плавной манеры;

2. При произнесении некоторых согласных язык находится в **апикальном** положении, когда активным в производстве звуков является только самый его кончик; язык оттянут назад и как бы с трудом дотягивается до зубов и альвеол; спинка языка распластана и имеет плоскую форму; 

в русском языке при произнесении похожих звуков язык находится в **дорсальном** положении, то есть выгибается кончиком вниз и сильно прилегает к зубам всей передней частью, которая активно участвует в образовании звуков; 

3. Губы слегка растянуты в улыбке и не меняют своего положения в процессе произнесения, то есть не двигаются в горизонтальной плоскости и их углы остаются неподвижными; в русском языке губы очень подвижны: они сильно округляются и выпячиваются;

4. Расстояние между челюстями в английской артикуляции уже чем в русском.

1. 3. Упражнения для губ и языка

Для овладения английской артикуляцией нужно освоить упражнения для губ и языка.

I. Упражнения для губ (Exercises for the Lips).

1. Обнажение зубов – «оскал».

(Stretch your lips. Show your teeth.)

Губы растянуть, не выпячивая, и разомкнуть вверх и вниз, слегка обнажив оба ряда зубов. Нижние резцы находятся точно под верхними резцами.

2. Оскал с открыванием и закрыванием рта.

(Stretch your lips. Open and close your mouth.)

Обнажить зубы (упр. 1). Опускать и поднимать нижнюю челюсть при разомкнутых губах.

3. Опускание и поднятие нижней губы.

(Press your lower lip to the upper teeth and then put it down.)

Слегка приподнять верхнюю губу, обнажив край верхних зубов, и прижать к ним нижнюю губу; опустить её, обнажив нижние зубы. Повторить это движение несколько раз. Нижняя челюсть и верхняя губа неподвижны.

4. Вытягивание губ – «хоботок».

(Put your lips forward and then relax them)

Губы энергично выпятить вперёд, а затем расслабить, не открывая рта.

5. Чередование «оскала» с «хоботком».

(Put your lips forward and then stretch them.)

Движения уголков губ должны быть одновременными и симметричными.

6. Плоское округление.

(Round your flat lips.)

Обнажить зубы, открыть рот, медленно округлить губы, оставляя их прижатыми к зубам, и постепенно сокращать отверстие в форме овала \bigcirc . Губы остаются в плоском положении,

не выпячиваются. Челюсти неподвижны. Затем возвратиться к исходному положению, проделав все движения в обратном порядке.

II. Упражнения для языка (Exercises for the tongue).

1. Высовывание языка – «лопата».

(Put your tongue forward between your teeth.)

Обнажив зубы, придать языку плоскую широкую форму так, чтобы его края касались верхних зубов по всему полукругу, затем чуть-чуть высунуть язык между зубами, слегка касаясь их языком. Высовывая язык, не загибать его вниз, не прикладывать к губам.

2) Высовывание заострённого языка – «жалю».

(Put your pointed tongue forward and up and keep it like that.)

Обнажить зубы. Высовывая заострённый язык, не прикасаться к нему зубами. Кончик языка направлен вперёд и вверх. Подержать язык в таком положении некоторое время. Язык должен быть неподвижен.

3) Прощупывание линии поперечного разреза полости рта.

(Move your tongue backwards across the palate.)

Приложить кончик языка к краю верхних резцов, провести по щели между верхними резцами по задней поверхности, перейти на десну и на альвеолы. Продвигая кончик языка назад, пройти через альвеолярную выпуклость, провести по твёрдому нёбу до начала мягкого нёба.

4) Чередование дорсального и апикального укладов. Счёт: 1 – 2.

(Put your tongue down behind your lower teeth and then up on the alveoli.)

Приложить кончик языка к нижним зубам у внутренней поверхности десны, выдвинуть аркой среднюю часть языка, затем поднять и переместить кончик языка на самую выпуклую часть альвеол, переводя язык в апикальное положение. Повторить несколько раз.

§ 2. Фонема (Phoneme)

В живой речи каждого языка произносится определенное количество разнообразных звуков, которые можно объединить в сравнительно небольшое число звуковых типов, способных дифференцировать слова и их формы, то есть служить целям человеческого общения. Эти звуковые типы и имеются в виду, когда говорят об отдельных звуках речи. Они называются фонемами.

Фонема — это наименьшая, далее неделимая звуковая единица языка. Фонема есть абстрактное представление о звуке, которое объединяет различные его признаки в одно целое. Фонемы формируют звуковые оболочки слов и помогают различать слова и грамматические формы слов.

Например: *том* – *дом*, *том* – *там* (замена фонемы [т] фонемой [д] или фонемы [о] фонемой [а] меняет значение слова); *дом* – *дому* (добавление фонемы [у] меняет форму слова).

При изучении фонетического строя языка речь идет о фонеме, осознаваемой всеми говорящими на данном языке как отдельный звук, противопоставленный другим фонемам. Но в потоке речи одна и та же фонема произносится неодинаково. Это зависит от ее положения в слове, т.е. от влияния стоящих рядом звуков и ударения. Поэтому фонема конкретно реализуется только в виде аллофонов.

Аллофон – это вариант или оттенок фонемы, который существует в потоке речи.

Сравните: *та* – *то*. В первом слове при произнесении фонемы [т] губы нейтральны, так как за ней следует неогубленная фонема [а]; во втором случае при произнесении [т] губы округлены и выдвинуты вперед под влиянием последующей лабиализованной фонемы [о].

Другой пример: *петь* – *цел*. В первом слове фонема [э] имеет более «узкий» оттенок под влиянием окружающих мягких согласных; во втором слове произносится более «широкий» оттенок [э], так как соседние согласные твердые.

В родной речи различие между аллофонами фонемы, как правило, не осознается, не замечается. Однако при изучении иностранного языка следует обращать внимание на наличие оттенков фонем, на умение правильно употреблять их в определенных условиях.

§ 3. Транскрипция (Transcription)

Английская система орфографии основана на историческом принципе, когда написание слова объясняется историческими традициями и не совпадает с произношением. Так как в английском языке орфография за последние 400 – 500 лет почти не изменилась, а звуковая сторона языка претерпела серьёзные изменения, то англичане сейчас пишут так, как они произносили в XV веке, когда различий в написании и произношении не было.

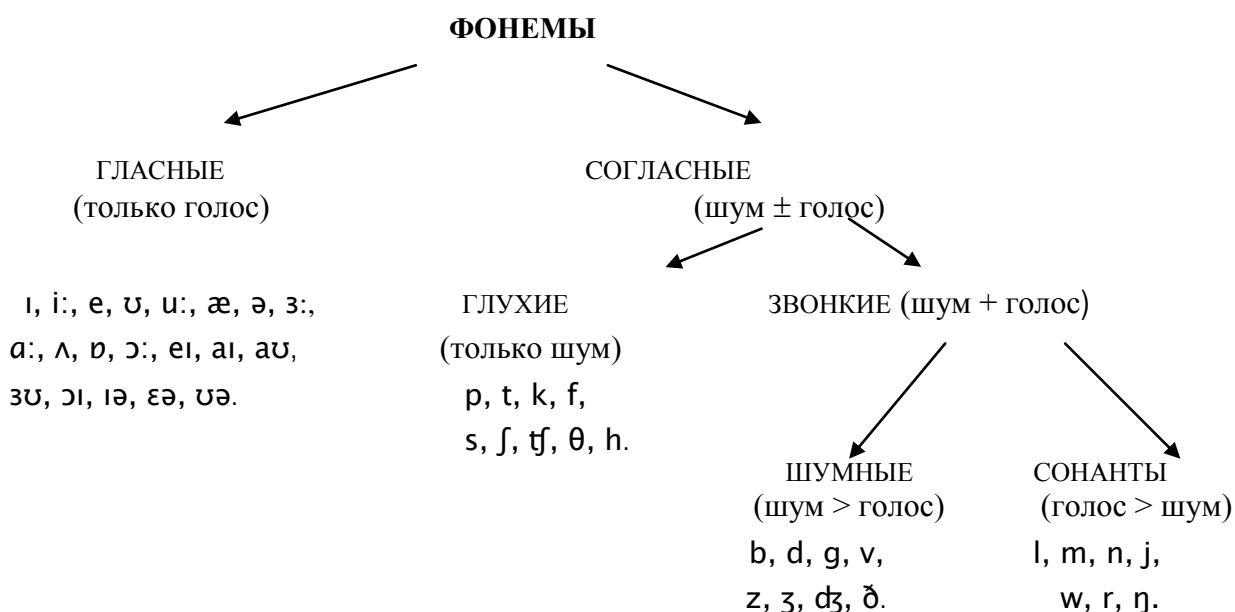
При системе орфографии, основанной на историческом принципе, одна и та же буква может передавать различные звуки, в зависимости от некоторых условий. Так, например, английская гласная буква может передавать 4 – 5 звуков, часто совершенно различных.

Отсюда возникает необходимость записывать звуковой состав слова с помощью **транскрипции**.

Транскрипция – это графическое изображение звука. Она состоит из письменных эквивалентов звуков, называемых **значками** транскрипции. Ими служат буквы латинского и греческого алфавита, а также небольшое число условных знаков. Эти фонетические символы были разработаны в 1889 году Международной фонетической ассоциацией, основанной известным французским фонетистом Полем Пасси.

§ 4. Классификации английских фонем (English Phonemes Classifications)

4. 1. Классификация фонем по участию шума и голоса



Упражнение 1. Послушайте аудиозапись и приготовьте чтение транскрипции.

Гласные

- | | |
|-------|--------|
| 1) ɪ | 2) i: |
| 3) e | 4) æ |
| 5) ə | 6) ɜ: |
| 7) ʌ | 8) a: |
| 9) ɒ | 10) ɔ: |
| 11) ʊ | 12) u: |

- | | | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|-------|--------|
| 13) eɪ | 14) aɪ | 15) aʊ | 16) ʊ | 17) ɔɪ |
| 18) iə | 19) ɛə | 20) ʊə | | |

Согласные

- | | | |
|----------|----------|----------|
| 1) p – b | 2) t – d | 3) k – g |
| 4) f – v | 5) s – z | 6) ʃ – ʒ |

7) θ - ð 8) tʃ - dʒ 9) h

13) ŋ 14) j 15) w 16) r

Сонанты

10) l 11) m 12) n

Упражнение 2. Сделайте упражнения для губ и языка и прочитайте слова.

1. Stretch your lips. Show your teeth. [ɪ-i:-e-eɪ-z:-iə]

tɪn-ti:n-ten-teɪn-tɜ:n-tiə bit-bi:t-bet-beɪt-bɜ:t-bɪə fit-fi:t-fed-feɪt-fɜ:-fiə
sɪd-si:d-sed-seɪ-sɜ:-siə pɪt-pi:t-pet-peɪt-pɜ:t-pɪə lɪn-li:n-len-leɪn-lɜ:n-liə

2. Stretch your lips. Open and close your mouth. [æ - aɪ - aʊ]

bæk-baɪk-baʊ kæt-kait-kaʊ mæp-maɪ-maʊθ gæs-gaɪz-gaʊn

3. Stretch you lips. Press your lower lip to your upper teeth. [f-v]

fi:-vi: fain-vain seɪf-seɪv sta:f-sta:v 'fi:və -faɪv
feɪl-veil fju:-vju: li:f-li:v pru:f- pru:v fə'revə

4. Put your lips forward and then relax them.

5. Put your lips forward and then stretch them. [w]

wɪ: win wen wɛə wai wʌn wɔ:k wʊd wʊnt
wi:k wɪə wei wæg waʊ wɒnt wɜ:k wu:l 'wi:vəz ,waɪvz

6. Round your flat lips. [ʊ - ʊ - ɔ: - u: - u - ʊə]

bʊs - bʊt - bɔ: - bu: - bʊk - bʊə stɒp - stʊn - stɔ: - tu:l - tʊk - tʊə
nɒt - nʊt - nɔ: - nu:n - nʊk - nʊə ʃɒk - ʃʊ - ʃɔ: - ʃu: - ʃʊk - ʃʊə

7. Stretch your lips. Put your flat tongue between your teeth. [θ - ð]

'ðɪs ɪz ðə ,fɪfθ sentəns || 'ðɪs ɪz ðə ,sɪksθ sentəns
'ɪz ðɪs ðə ,fɪfθ sentəns || 'ɪz ðɪs ðə ,sɪksθ sentəns || 'ɪz ðɪs ðə ,fɪfθ | ɔ ðə ,sɪksθ sentəns

8. Open your mouth. Put out your pointed tongue and keep it like that. [t-d; n; l; s-z; tʃ-dʒ; ʃ-ʒ]

'tedɪ ɪz ,ten 'nɪnə ɪz ,naɪn 'su:zɪ ɪz ,sɪks 'dʒeɪn ɪz ,dʒʌst ðə 'gæərə:ʒ ɪz ,beɪz
'dæni ɪz 'twentɪ ,tu: 'lɪli ɪz ,levn 'tʃɑ:lɪ ɪz ,tʃæti 'ʃi:lə ɪz ,ʃaɪ

9. Move your tongue backwards across your palate. [r]

rɪd red ræn rʌn rɒk rʊk fri: 'greɪt ,brɪtn 'redɪli ə ,gri:
ri:d reɪd raɪt rɑ:ft rɔ: ru:d tri: 'prɪti ,draɪ 'rɔ:rɪŋ ,drʌŋk
rɪə rɛə raʊ rʊd rɔ:d 'rʊərəl θri: 'gri:n ,grɑ:s 'veri ,sɒri

10. Put your tongue behind your lower teeth and then up on the alveoli.

tæn - taɪn - taʊn - tɑ:n - tɔ:n - tɒn - tʊn næt - naɪt - naʊn - nɑ:l - nɔ:t - nɒt - nʊt
læd - laɪt - laʊd - lɑ:d - lɔ:d - lɒt - lʊd sæd - saɪd - saʊnd - sa:d - sɔ:d - sɒd - 'sʊdə

11. Read the words.

wæg-væg lɪk-kɪl bæn-bæŋ da:n-dʌn et-jet ɪt-hɪt
wi:p-vi:p li:n-ni:l sɪn-sɪŋ ta:n-tʌn eɪl -jeɪl i:t-hi:t
wʊk-vʊg let-tel tʌn-tʌŋ ma:tʃ-mʌtʃ æm-jæm ed-hed
waʊ-vaʊ lʊd-dʊl rʌn-rʌŋ ba:n-bʌn a:t- ja:d æm-hæm

kwɪə-viə laɪf-faɪl dɒn-dɒŋ hɑ:t-hʌt ɔ:t- jɒt aɪk- haɪk
waɪə -vaɪə lu:t-tu:l θɪn-θɪŋ la:f-lʌf zʊk-jʊk ɛə-hɛə

4. 2. Классификация гласных фонем

При артикуляции гласных струя воздуха, попадая в гортань, приводит в колебание голосовые связки, а затем, проходя через полость глотки и рта, не встречает на своем пути препятствий и свободно выходит наружу. При этом существенно то, какое положение занимает язык и какую форму он придает резонатору (т.е. полости глотки и рта).

В артикуляции гласных также принимают участие губы, которые могут быть в различной степени округлены, растянуты или выдвинуты вперед.

Классификация гласных по стабильности артикуляции

	название	артикуляция	примеры
1	монофтонги	гласные с устойчивой артикуляцией, т.е. органы речи не меняют своего положения в процессе произнесения гласной;	[ɪ], [e], [æ], [ɑ:];
2	дифтонгоиды	в процессе произнесения этих гласных артикуляция немного меняется , наблюдается движение органов речи от одного звука к другому;	[ɪ-i:], [u-u:].
3	дифтонги	артикуляция сильно меняется , дифтонг – это один звук, состоящий из двух элементов: ядро – начальный элемент дифтонга, более сильный, напряженный, скольжение (или глайд) – конечный, слабый, произнесенный не до конца элемент.	[ɪə], [eɪ], [ɛə], [aɪ], [aʊ]. [ʊə], [zʊ], [ɔɪ].

В английском языке 10 монофтонгов, 2 дифтонгоида и 8 дифтонгов.

Английские гласные **монофтонги** и **дифтонгоиды** обычно классифицируются по следующим признакам:

1. по участию определенной части языка в артикуляции,
2. по степени подъема определенной части языка,
3. по участию губ,
4. по количеству (долготе) гласного и степени напряженности артикулирующих органов.

Классификация гласных по положению языка

	название	артикуляция	примеры
1	гласные переднего ряда	к твердому небу поднимается передняя часть языка, а кончик его находится у нижних зубов.	английские [i:], [ɪ], [e], [æ]; русские [и], [э];
2	гласные смешанного ряда	все тело языка равномерно поднято и вытянуто вдоль полости рта.	английские [ɜ:], [ə], [ʌ];
3	гласные заднего ряда	задняя часть языка поднимается к мягкому небу.	английские [u:], [ʊ], [ɔ:], [ɒ], [ɑ:]; русские [о], [у];

Примечание. В русском языке нет гласных смешанного ряда. Русские [а] и [ы] относятся к гласным среднего ряда, когда к твердому небу поднимается средняя часть языка.

Классификация гласных по степени подъема определенной части языка

	название	артикуляция	примеры
1	гласные высокого подъема (закрытые)	язык поднимается высоко, и пространство между поднятой частью языка и нёбом остается узким	английские [i:], [ɪ], [u:], [ʊ]; русские [и], [ы], [у];
2	гласные низкого подъема (открытые)	произносятся при низком положении языка, так что пространство между нёбом и языком широкое	английские [æ], [ɔ:], [ɒ], [ɑ:]; русский [а];
3	гласные среднего подъема	язык поднимается до середины расстояния между высоким и низким положениями	английские [e], [ɜ:], [ə], [ʌ]; русские [э], [о];

Английские гласные фонемы высокого, среднего и низкого подъема имеют, в свою очередь, **узкую и широкую разновидности**, например: [i:] – гласный высокого подъема узкой разновидности, [ɪ] – гласный высокого подъема широкой разновидности.

нёбо

↑↑	↑↑	↑↑	↑↑	узкая разновидность	высокий подъем
				широкая разновидность	
↑↑	↑↑	↑↑	↑↑	узкая разновидность	средний подъем
				широкая разновидность	
↑↑	↑↑	↑↑	↑↑	узкая разновидность	низкий подъем
				широкая разновидность	

самое низкое положение языка

Классификация гласных по участию губ

	название	артикуляция	примеры
1	лабиализованные (огублённые) гласные	произносятся с округлением губ, губы при этом не выпячиваются	английские [u:], [ʊ], [ɔ:], [ɒ]; русские [о], [у];
2	нелабиализованные (неогублённые) гласные	губы растянуты или занимают нейтральное положение	английские [i:], [ɪ], [e], [æ], [ɜ:]; русские [а], [э], [и].

По долготе гласные фонемы английского языка делятся на **долгие и краткие звуки**, (в транскрипции долготу звуков обозначают двумя точками [:]), которые отличаются как по количеству, так и по качеству.

Например, фонемы [ɑ:] и [ʌ] отличаются не только долготой, но и артикуляцией: [ɑ:] – гласная фонема заднего ряда низкого подъема, в то время как [ʌ] – гласная фонема смешанного ряда среднего подъема.

В отличие от русского языка, в английском языке замена долгой фонемы близкой ей по артикуляции краткой и наоборот изменяет смысл слова и всего высказывания. Сравните: [dʌk] duck – [dɑ:k] dark.

По напряженности артикулирующих органов английские гласные более напряженные, чем русские. При этом, при произнесении **долгих** гласных мускулы артикулирующих органов **напряжены сильнее**, чем при артикуляции кратких гласных.

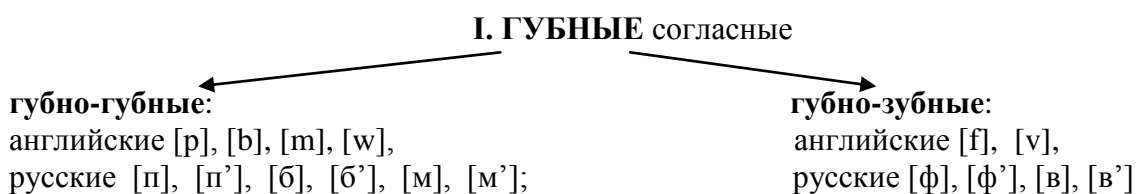
4. 3. Классификация согласных фонем

При произнесении согласных на пути воздушной струи встречается препятствие в виде полной преграды или щели, через которую проходит воздух.

Согласные фонемы можно классифицировать по следующим трем основным принципам:

1. по действующему органу и месту образования преграды,
2. по способу образования преграды и
3. по участию голосовых связок.

Классификация по работе действующего органа и месту образования преграды



II. ЯЗЫЧНЫЕ согласные

	название	артикуляция	примеры
1	переднеязычные	в артикуляции участвует передняя спинка языка вместе с кончиком языка;	
-	апикально-альвеолярные	язык лежит плоско во рту, кончик языка направлен вверх к альвеолам	[t], [d], [n], [l], [s], [z], [ʃ], [ʒ], [tʃ], [dʒ];
-	апикально-межзубные	язык лежит плоско во рту, кончик языка находится между зубами	[θ], [ð];
-	какуминальные (=заальвеолярные)	кончик языка слегка загнут назад за альвеолы	английский [r] русский [p]
<p>Note. В русском языке переднеязычные согласные – дорсально-зубные: кончик языка находится у нижних зубов, а передняя часть языка поднимается к твердому нёбу: [т], [т’], [д], [д’], [ц], [ч’], [н], [н’], [с], [с’], [з], [з’], [ш], [ш’], [ж], [л], [л’].</p>			
2	среднеязычные палатальные	<u>средняя</u> спинка языка поднимается к твердому небу (hard palate)	английский [j], русский [й];
3	заднеязычные веллярные	<u>задняя</u> спинка языка поднимается к мягкому небу (soft palate near the velum)	английские [k], [g], [ŋ], русские [к], [к’], [г], [г’], [х], [х’];

III. ФАРИНГАЛЬНЫЕ согласные (pharyngeal)

артикулируются в полости фаринкса (глотки) где происходит сближение корня языка с задней стенкой глотки, например, английский [h].

В русском языке таких согласных нет.

Классификация по способу образования преграды

	название	артикуляция	примеры
1	смычные	создается полная преграда между двумя артикулирующими органами (смычка)	
-	смычные шумные взрывные	при размыкании преграды струя воздуха производит сильный, подобно взрыву, звук;	английские [p], [b], [t], [d], [k], [g]; русские [п], [п'], [б], [б'], [т], [т'], [д], [д'], [к], [к'], [г], [г'];
-	смычные сонанты	создается смычка между двумя артикулирующими органами, воздух проходит через носовую полость;	английские [m], [n], [ŋ]; русские [м], [м'], [н], [н'];
2	щелевые	создается препятствие в виде щели (различной формы и ширины)	[h]
-	шумные фрикативные	узкощелевые, в произнесении которых преобладает шум трения;	английские [f], [v], [θ], [ð], [s], [z], [ʃ], [ʒ] русские [ф], [ф'], [в], [в'], [с], [с'], [з], [з'], [ш], [ш'], [ж], [х].
-	щелевые сонанты:	щель несколько шире	
	срединные	воздух проходит по всей плоскости языка;	английские [r], [w], [j]; русский [й];
	боковые =латеральные	воздух проходит по бокам языка;	английский [l]; русские [л], [л'];
3	аффрикаты	в начале их артикуляции образуется полная смычка, постепенно переходящая в щель, в которую проходит воздух.	английские [tʃ], [dʒ]; русские [ц], [ч'];

По принципу **участия голоса** в артикуляции согласные фонемы делятся на **звонкие и глухие**.

Английские звонкие согласные в конечном положении никогда не оглушаются, как в русском языке, хотя и наблюдается некоторое ослабление их артикуляции. Оглушение конечной звонкой согласной в английском языке влечет за собой изменение смысла слова.

Сравните: английские [ded] dead – [det] debt и русские *пруд, прут*, которые произносятся одинаково – [прут].

В английском языке глухие согласные в конце слов перед паузой произносятся более напряженно, чем в другом положении.

§ 5. Особенности английской фонетической системы (English Phonetic System)

1) В английском языке 6 гласных букв читаются как 20 гласных звуков.

В русском языке 10 гласных букв читаются как 6 гласных звуков.

2) Английские гласные делятся на **монофтонги (10), дифтонги (8) и дифтонгоиды (2)**.

В русском языке нет дифтонгов.

Есть сочетания гласных звуков, принадлежащих разным слогам: *кло-ун, па-у-за*.

Есть сочетания гласных с согласным звуком [й]: *чай, лей, мой, красный*.

3) Английские гласные (кроме дифтонгов) бывают **краткими и долгими**.

Например: *ship [ɪ] (корабль) – sheep [i:] (овца)*.

В русском языке отсутствует деление гласных по признаку долготы.

4) Все английские гласные имеют **позиционную долготу**, т.е. долгота их произнесения зависит от положения в слове:

- **самый долгий** вариант произносится в конце слова перед паузой;

- **более кратко** гласная звучит перед звонким согласным;

- **самый краткий** вариант – перед глухим согласным звуком.

Например: *pea [pi:], peel [pi:l], peak [pi:k]*.

5) Английские гласные произносятся **более напряжённо**, чем в русском языке. Краткие гласные произносятся **усечённо**, то есть не ослабляются за время звучания.

Например: произнесите *mother, Mark* и *мама, марка*.

6) Английские звонкие согласные в конце слова и перед глухой согласной оглушаются лишь частично. Например: *dog [dɒg] – doc [dɒk]*; В русском языке: *год [гот], стог [сток]*.

7) Все английские согласные кроме [ʃ] [ʒ] [ʒ] и мягкого[l], произносятся **твёрдо** перед любым гласным. Например: *Val [væl] – veal [vi:l]*; В русском языке твёрдые согласные смягчаются перед гласными [и], [е], [ю], [я]: *вал – вилы; море – мяч, мера*.

Это явление называется **палатализация** и представляет собой подъем средней спинки языка к твердому нёбу дополнительно к основной артикуляции фонемы.

Палатализация согласных в русском языке является смыслоразличительным признаком. Соответствующие мягкие и твердые русские согласные представляют собой две отдельные фонемы. Например: *м'ел – м'ел', плот – плот'*. В английском языке палатализация является **фонетической ошибкой** или **исключением**.

8) В английском языке **глухие согласные сильнее звонких** (в русском языке – наоборот).

Глухие взрывные согласные [p], [t], [k] произносятся с дополнительным придыханием – аспирацией. **Аспирация** – легкий выдох после произнесения глухого взрывного согласного перед произнесением следующего **гласного** звука.

Придыхание **особенно сильно** перед долгим ударным гласным и дифтонгом: [pi:t], [rai];

слабее перед кратким или безударным гласным: [pit], ['kɑ:pɪt];

и **отсутствует** в сочетании с предшествующим согласным [s]: [spi:k];

9) Для английских согласных [t], [d], [s], [z], [n], [l] характерна **апикально-альвеолярная** артикуляция (т. е. кончик языка напряжён и поднят вверх к альвеолам); для сходных с

ними русских согласных [т], [д], [с], [з], [н], [л] характерна дорсально-зубная артикуляция (т.е. кончик языка расслаблен и опущен к нижним зубам).

10) Английские **сонанты** [m], [n], [l] могут быть **слоγοобразующими**.

Например: *kitten* ['kɪtn], *little* ['lɪtl].

§ 6. Ассимиляция (Assimilation)

В потоке речи звуки могут претерпевать значительные изменения под влиянием соседних с ними звуков. Фонемы, таким образом, выступают в речи в виде аллофонов, артикуляция которых отличается от полной артикуляции изолированных фонем.

В артикуляции отдельной фонемы принято различать три этапа, или фазы:

1. **экскурсия** (или приступ) – подготовка органов речи к артикуляции звука;
2. **выдержка**, в течение которой органы речи сохраняют определенный уклад;
3. **рекурсия** (или отступ), когда органы речи возвращаются в свое обычное состояние.

В речи, однако, звуки выступают в тесной связи с соседними, так что часто одна из фаз предыдущего звука является началом артикуляции последующего.

Частичное или полное изменение артикуляции звуков в потоке речи под влиянием соседних звуков называется **ассимиляцией**.

Ассимиляцию можно анализировать по различным признакам:

Ассимиляция по направлению

	название	артикуляция	примеры
1	прогрессивная	предшествующий звук влияет на последующий	what is [ɪz] – what's [wɒts] (t оглушает z). →
2	регрессивная	последующий звук влияет на предыдущий	in the [ɪnðə] п меняется под влиянием ð ←
3	взаимная	соседние звуки влияют друг на друга	twice [twais] t ↔ w [t] огубляется под влиянием [w] [w] частично оглушается под влиянием глухого [t]

Ассимиляции по месту образования преграды

Примером могут служить сочетания [nθ], [tð] и др., где [θ], [ð] влияют на артикуляцию предшествующих им апикально-альвеолярных фонем [n], [t], превращая их в межзубные. tenth [tenθ]

Ассимиляция по работе губ

Например, под влиянием губно-губного щелевого сонанта [w] предшествующие согласные становятся **огубленными** или **лабиализованными**: quick [kwɪk].

Ассимиляция по работе голосовых связок

При этом происходит **оглушение** или **озвончение** соседних звуков, например: eats [i:ts] и gives [gɪvz].

Следует помнить, что

озвончение или оглушение в **английском** языке имеет **прогрессивное** направление, в то время как в **русском** языке ассимиляция согласных только **регрессивная**.

Сравните: *like that* [laɪk ðæt], где [k] не озвончается под влиянием [ð]

и *раз так* [rɪs tɪk], где под влиянием последующего глухого [s] оглушается предыдущий звонкий согласный [z].

определенного артикля, когда следующее за ним слово начинается с согласного. Например: [ə'pen], [ə'dei], ['seldəm]. Второй оттенок [ə] произносится короче первого. Он менее открытый и более отодвинут назад.

3. Третий оттенок [ə] под влиянием соседних звуков [k, g] – самый закрытый и отодвинутый назад, например: [ə'geɪn], [kə'nekt].

В английском языке звук [ə] является самостоятельной фонемой, так как разница в значении ряда слов опирается на различие между [ə] и другим гласным. Например: ['ɑ:mə] armour – вооружение, доспехи и ['ɑ:mi] army – армия.

Чтение предлогов и местоимений в конце предложения

Если предлог стоит в конце предложения (или синтагмы), он произносится в сильной форме, независимо от того, падает на него ударение или нет. Часто в этом случае за предлогом следует личное местоимение. Необходимо помнить, что личное местоимение в этой позиции является неударным и должно произноситься в редуцированной форме:

lʊk æt hə || maɪ ,sʌn ɪz .wɪð mi ||

§ 8. Интонация (Intonation)

8. 1. Синтагма

В речи слова объединены в **синтагмы**.

Синтагма – это смысловая группа. Это может быть отдельное предложение или законченный по смыслу отрезок предложения. В потоке речи синтагмы разделяются паузами и произносятся с определенной интонацией.

We went to the library. To tell the truth, / we didn't go to the library.

My friend and I / went to the library / to get some books / for our English lesson.

В отдельную синтагму может быть выделено:

- 1) распространенное подлежащее: This fascinating new film / made a great impression on us.
- 2) любое подлежащее перед глаголом-связкой *to be*:
This / is the Faculty of Foreign Languages. He / is my close friend.
- 3) любое обстоятельство в начале предложения перед подлежащим:
In the morning / he got out of his bed and went downstairs.
- 4) вводные слова и их группы в начале, середине и конце предложения:
In my opinion, / he is very narrow-minded. John, / as far as I know, / went abroad a week ago.
- 5) слова автора, вводящие прямую речь: He said, / «I have never seen this man before.»
- 6) обращения в начале предложения: Peter, / make us a cup of coffee, please.
- 7) распространенное обстоятельство в конце предложения:
At last we came up / to an old and shabby-looking building.
- 8) распространенное определение: This book, / translated into Russian, / became popular.
- 9) каждый однородный член при перечислении: He has two cats, / three dogs / and a canary.
- 10) любое приложение: Edinburgh, / one of the most beautiful towns in Europe, / lies by the sea.

8. 2. Компоненты и функции интонации

Интонация представляет собой единство речевой мелодики, фразового ударения, ритма, тембра и темпа речи. Это единство различных компонентов интонации выполняет четыре основные функции:

- 1) оформляет предложение, т. е. придает предложению, построенному по определенным грамматическим правилам, коммуникативный характер;
- 2) раскрывает смысловой центр предложения, т. е. выделяет последний ударный слог в предложении;

- 3) определяет коммуникативный тип предложения, т. е. дает понять, является ли данное предложение простым сообщением, вопросом, просьбой, побуждением или восклицанием;
- 4) выражает отношение говорящего к высказыванию, т. е. передает субъективно-модальный аспект высказывания.

8. 3. Тonoграмма

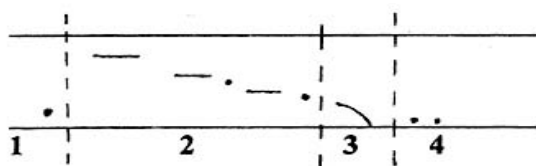
Интонацию можно изобразить графически на шкале, которая представляет собой мелодический контур синтагмы в виде ряда ударных и безударных слогов.

При записи интонации применяются следующие условные знаки:

1. Две параллельные прямые обозначают верхнюю и нижнюю границы голосового диапазона. Между этими прямыми располагаются значки, обозначающие ударные и безударные слоги фразы.
2. Тире обозначает ударный или полуударный слоги.
3. Точка обозначает неударный слог.
4. Кривые, падающие вниз, обозначают простое или высокое падение тона в последнем ударном слоге.
5. Кривые, поднимающиеся вверх, обозначают повышение тона в конечном ударном слоге (простой или высокий подъем).

Графическое изображение интонационной структуры синтагмы называется **тонограммой**.
Например: This new text is very difficult.

ðɪs 'nju: 'tekst ɪz 'veri ,dɪfɪkəlt



1. Pre-Head (начальные безударные слоги);
2. Head (шкала);
3. Nucleus (ядро);
4. Tail (конечные безударные слоги).

8. 4. Шкала

Шкала – это часть интонационной структуры синтагмы, представляющая собой чередование ударных и безударных слогов, от первого ударного слога (включая его) и до последнего ударного слога (= ядра), не включая его.

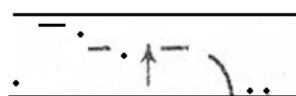
Для английского языка характерна **постепенно понижающаяся** шкала:

'Brendon 'Smith ɪz 'veri ,clever.



Постепенно нисходящая шкала может быть прервана на одном из ударных слогов. В этом случае логически выделенное слово, перед которым на тонограмме ставится вертикальная стрелка [↑], отмечается подъемом тона.



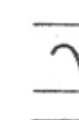


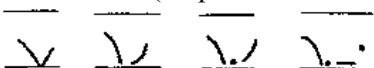

The 'second 'text ɪz ↑so ,dɪfɪkəlt.



8. 5. Ядро

За шкалой следует **ядро**, т.е. последний ударный (ядерный) слог синтагмы, который произносится либо с нисходящим, либо с восходящим тоном, в зависимости от коммуникативного типа высказывания.

Различают семь типов интонационных контуров, или ядерных тонов:

- 1) низкий нисходящий тон
LOW FALL 
- 2) высокий нисходящий тон
HIGH FALL 
- 3) восходяще-нисходящий тон
RISE FALL 
- 4) низкий восходящий тон
LOW RISE 
- 5) высокий восходящий тон
HIGH RISE 
- 6) нисходяще-восходящий тон (в пределах одного слога или нескольких слогов или слов):
FALL RISE 
- 7) ровный тон
LEVEL TONE 

Каждый мелодический тон передает определенное отношение к высказыванию и употребляется для оформления определенных коммуникативных типов высказывания. Все разновидности падающих тонов, как правило, выражают завершенность, законченность высказывания, все восходящие тоны – незавершенность, зависимость от другой части высказывания, сомнение, неуверенность.

В настоящем учебнике приняты следующие значки для обозначения компонентов интонации:

- 1) ударный слог – вертикальной черточкой сверху перед слогом /': 'easy.
- 2) второстепенное ударение в отдельном слове – вертикальной черточкой снизу перед слогом /,: 'compo'sition.
- 3) низкий нисходящий тон – наклонной черточкой вниз под строкой /,/: It's ,me.
- 4) высокий нисходящий тон – наклонной черточкой вниз над строкой / `/: It's `me.
- 5) восходяще-нисходящий тон – знаком / ^/ перед слогом: 'Very ^much. ^Perfectly.
- 6) низкий восходящий тон – наклонной черточкой вверх под строкой /,/: 'Very ,well.
- 7) высокий восходящий тон – наклонной черточкой вверх над строкой /': Is it 'cold?
- 8) нисходяще-восходящий тон – а) знаком / ˇ/ перед слогом, если падение – подъем происходит внутри одного слога или слова: It is ˇcold. б) или значками / `/, /, /, если падение – подъем распространен более, чем на одно слово: It is `difficult to ,say.
- 9) ровный тон обозначается знаком /→/: →Then | I 'went for a ,walk.

10) полуударный или частично-ударный слог в начале, середине и в конце синтагмы за ядерным тоном – точкой на строке: `Yes .please. `Don't .go .there a,lone.

11) пауза после неконечной синтагмы обозначается одной вертикальной чертой / | /, а после конечной синтагмы – двумя вертикальными чертами / || /: `No, | I'm .not .free .now. ||

8. 6. Фразовое ударение

Фразовое ударение – это артикуляционно-слуховое выделение одних слов в речи по сравнению с другими словами.

Ударение имеет важное смысловое значение. В предложении ударение падает лишь на такие слова, которые необходимо выделить с точки зрения их роли в передаче смысла произносимой фразы. В английском языке ударение, как правило, падает на **самостоятельные** части речи, а служебные слова остаются безударными.

Части речи, стоящие под ударением:

- 1) существительные, прилагательные, наречия My 'close 'friends 'write to me 'very ,often.
- 2) числительные They have 'three or 'four ,children.
- 3) междометия 'Gee, I am ,hungry.
- 4) вопросительные слова 'Where are my ,glasses?
- 5) смысловые глаголы My 'close 'friends 'write to me 'very ,often.

Исключения: глаголы *be* и *have* обычно бывают безударными в середине предложения.

He *is* at ,home. Tom *has* a 'big ,family.

б) отрицательная частица **not** и отрицательные местоимения: **no, nobody**, etc.

They have 'no ,children. They are 'not at ,home.

Безударные части речи:

- 1) предлоги There is a 'garden *behind* the ,house.
- 2) союзы She 'didn't 'go there ,yesterday *because* she was ,busy.
- 3) артикли A 'black 'cat 'sat on *the* ,mat.
- 4) личные местоимения *He* is a ,businessman.

Некоторые части речи могут быть **ударными и безударными** в зависимости от их значения и положения в предложении:

Части речи	Безударные	Под ударением
служебные и модальные глаголы	В середине предложения: 'Where <i>does</i> 'John ,live? 'What <i>can</i> I ,do for you? 'Mike <i>can</i> 'swim 'very ,well.	В начале вопроса или в кратких ответах: ' Does he like ,skating? – Yes, he , does . ' Can she play the ,piano or the gui,tar?
указательные местоимения	Перед существительным 'Look at <i>this</i> ,house	1) иногда перед существительным: ' These 'tests are ,good. 2) всегда в роли подлежащего: ' This is our ,house.
притяжательные местоимения	Перед существительным 'Where is <i>my</i> ,book?	В абсолютной форме: The 'book is , mine .

8. 7. Ритм

В английском языке наблюдается тенденция произносить ударные слоги в предложении **через более или менее равные промежутки времени**.

Вследствие этого скорость произнесения неударных слогов, стоящих между двумя ударными, а также долгота звуков в них, особенно гласных, меняется в зависимости от количества неударных слогов, т.е. если **неударных слогов много**, они произносятся **быстрее**, если их **мало** – они произносятся **медленнее**. Это придает английскому предложению определенный ритм.

В английском предложении или синтагме столько **ритмических групп**, сколько ударных слогов. Ритмическая группа может состоять из одного ударного слога или, чаще, из одного ударного слога и одного или нескольких неударных слогов. Например:

'Why not? It's a 'lovely day.

В английском языке неударные слоги внутри синтагмы примыкают к предшествующему ударному слогу; только начальные неударные слоги всегда примыкают к последующему ударному слогу. Например:

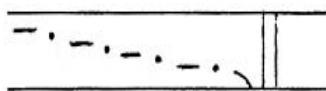
He is 'very busy.

'Nick is a 'gain on 'business in Moscow.

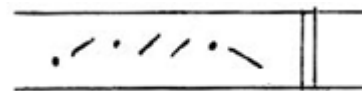
8. 8. Особенности мелодики английского предложения

1. Диапазон английского речевого голоса значительно шире русского, т.е. начало фразы выше, а конец – ниже, чем в русском.

'Once u'pon a 'time there 'lived a king.



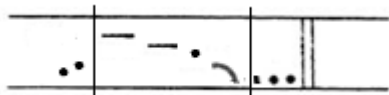
Однажды жил-был король.



2. В английском языке существует движение голосового тона внутри одного гласного звука, которое осуществляется на значительном для восприятия отрезке времени, поэтому создается впечатление, что англичане «поют» ударные слоги.

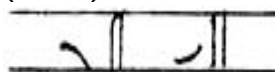
3. Для английской интонации точкой отсчета для движения голосового тона является самый низкий уровень речевого голоса (в русском языке – средний), поэтому безударные слоги, предшествующие первому ударному и следующие за последним ударным слогом, произносятся на самом низком уровне, который почти не используется в русском языке.

There's a 'big 'yellow car in the yard.

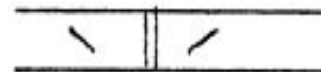


Английское падение голоса достигает самого низкого уровня диапазона; повышение голоса также начинается с самого низкого уровня.

Yes. Yes?



Да. Да?

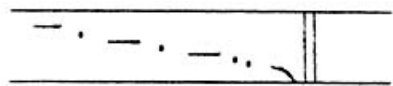


4. Английское высказывание характеризуется наличием централизованного ударения, т.е. одно (ядерное) слово выделено значительно больше, чем остальные ударные слова. На

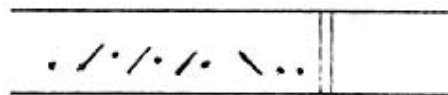
нем осуществляется значительное (самое широкое по диапазону и длительности) движение голосового тона.

В русском высказывании ударение децентрализованное, т. е. все ударные слова получают более или менее одинаковую степень выделенности:

'Helen's 'eyes were 'not very \ good.



У Лены было плохое зрение.



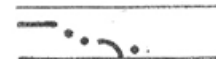
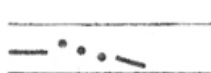
§ 9. Интонационные контуры (Nuclear Tones)

9.1. Низкий нисходящий тон (Low Fall)

Низкий нисходящий тон выражает **законченность** высказывания. Может выражать категоричность, серьезность, сдержанность, неодобрение, нежелание продолжать разговор.

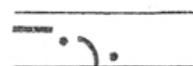
При нисходящем тоне в английском предложении, в отличие от русского, голос падает стремительнее и резче.

Сравните: Катя занята. 'Kitty is \ busy.



Если за последним ударным (ядерным) слогом английского предложения следует один или несколько безударных слогов, то эти слоги произносятся на низком уровне.

Например: 'Nick is \ twenty.



Низкий нисходящий тон характерен для эмоционально нейтральных предложений.

Низкий нисходящий тон употребляется:

- 1) в кратких повествовательных предложениях: I like early \ autumn.
- 2) в восклицаниях: What awful \ weather!
- 3) в повелительных предложениях (требованиях, приказах): Close the \ door.
- 4) в вопросах, начинающихся с вопросительного слова: What is your \ name?
- 5) в первой части разделительного вопроса (всегда) и во второй его части, если говорящий уверен в своём сообщении: It's \ autumn now, / isn't it?
- 6) во второй части альтернативного вопроса: Are you a student / or a \ teacher?
- 7) в официальных приветствиях и обращениях: Good \ morning, sir! \ Gentlemen, let's start.
- 8) в придаточном предложении, стоящим перед главным, если главное произносится с восходящим тоном: **When you come \ home**, / will you ring me \ up?

9.2. Низкий восходящий тон (Low Rise)

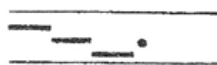
Низкий восходящий тон выражает **незавершенность** высказывания, сомнение, неуверенность говорящего, логическую зависимость предложения или синтагмы от соседних.

В предложении с низким восходящим тоном ударные и безударные слоги образуют постепенно понижающуюся шкалу; начало последнего ударного ядерного слога произносится довольно низким тоном, подъем начинается со второй половины этого слога, происходит медленно и не достигает большой высоты.

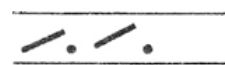
Если за последним ударным слогом английского предложения следуют неударные слоги, то ударный слог произносится на низком уровне, а неударные слоги образуют постепенное повышение тона.

В русском языке тон голоса резко повышается в начале последнего ударного слога и резко падает на заударном слоге.

Сравните: 'Is 'Nick ,busy?



Коля занят?



Низкий восходящий тон употребляется:

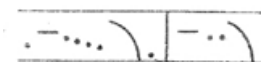
- 1) в начальных синтагмах: My friends and , I / went to the club.
- 2) при перечислении (кроме последней синтагмы):
She has a , mother, / a , father / a , brother /and a , sister.
- 3) в повелительных предложениях (просьбах): Close the , door.
- 4) в общих вопросах: Are you Mary , Jones?
- 5) во второй части разделительного вопроса, если говорящий не уверен в том, что он сообщает в первой части: His elder son is at university, / , isn't he?
- 6) в первой части альтернативного вопроса: Are you a , student / or a , teacher?
- 7) в неофициальных приветствиях и обращениях: He , llo, Nelly! , Mike, / are you at home?
- 8) в придаточном предложении стоящим перед главным, если главное произносится с нисходящим тоном: When I come , home, / I will ring you , up.

9.3. Высокий нисходящий тон (High Fall)

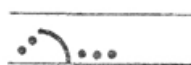
Высокий нисходящий тон, по сравнению с низким, выражает большую заинтересованность говорящего, придает высказыванию дополнительную эмоциональную окраску, которая определяется ситуацией и контекстом.

В слове, которое говорящий хочет выделить, падение начинается с более высокого уровня, чем в обычной неэмфатической речи. При этом остальные слова синтагмы произносятся с обычными ударениями или частично или полностью утрачивают ударность. Например:

The 'papers are on the `table, | 'not on the `desk.

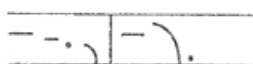


They are `not on the desk.



Высокий нисходящий тон характерен для эмоционально окрашенных повествовательных предложений, вопросов, начинающихся с вопросительных слов, и восклицаний:

This 'pen is ,bad, | 'try `that one.



She's `nice, | `isn't she?



9.4. Нисходяще-восходящий тон (Fall-Rise)

Одним из вариантов эмфатического тона является нисходяще-восходящий тон, который употребляется для выражения противопоставления, уступки, возражения, недоверия, сожаления, предупреждения, извинения, удивления.



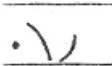
Падение – подъем тона могут происходить:

- а) в пределах одного слога, например:

'No.



б) в пределах двух смежных слогов, например:

˘Sorry.  ˘That's ,right.  Ex˘cuse me. 

в) в пределах двух слогов, разделенных одним или более неударными слогами, например:


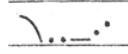
˘Certainly. 

Составной тон

«падение + подъем»

Разновидностью нисходяще-восходящего тона можно считать составной тон «падение + подъем», когда понижение тона происходит на одном из начальных слов синтагмы, а повышение на одном из последних слов. Находящиеся между ними слова произносятся на одном низком уровне, даже если на них падает ударение, которое в таких случаях обозначается точкой на строке. Падение тона происходит на слове, которое говорящий особенно хочет выделить или подчеркнуть, а повышение является как бы дополнением или уточнением основной мысли высказывания.

Например:

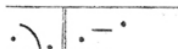
˘Here you ,are.  ˘Thank you for ,telling me. 


9.5. Высокий восходящий тон


Высокий восходящий тон употребляется для выражения удивления, переспроса, просьбы повторить сказанное; он часто встречается в речи как реакция на услышанное высказывание и является как бы его эхом.


Утвердительные и отрицательные предложения, произнесенные с высоким восходящим тоном, становятся вопросами.

Например:

I ,have it. – You ˘have it? 

It ˘isn't ,good. – ˘Not ˘good? ˘Why? 


'Take it ,home. – 'Take it ˘home? ˘How? 

His ˘name is ,Jeff. – ˘What's his name? 


9.6. Восходяще-нисходящий тон

Восходяще-нисходящий тон выражает большую определенность, придает большую категоричность высказыванию, чем остальные падающие тона. Восходяще-нисходящий тон также может передавать чувство сильного удивления, недоверия, потрясения.

Например:

They ˘changed the ,time. 

˘Changed it?! It's ˘crazy! 

His ˘friend is ,dead. 

'That's ˘incredible. 

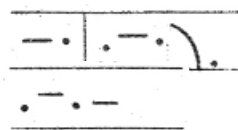
9.7. Ровный тон

Ровный тон перед паузой в конце синтагмы встречается в синтаксически незаконченных группах слов или в конце повествовательного предложения и, подобно низкому восходящему тону, обозначает незавершенность высказывания.

Ровный тон употребляется в том случае, когда говорящий как бы раздумывает, не зная, что сказать дальше, когда он колеблется или как бы беседует сам с собой. Ровный тон также характерен для чтения стихотворных произведений.

Например:

→Frankly | I 'can't af'ford it ||



Per'haps it's →right ||

Часто ровный тон может быть заменен низким восходящим тоном. Ровный тон передает менее тесную связь с последующей синтагмой. Выбор тона для синтагмы определяется ее семантической важностью, завершенностью и степенью связи с последующей синтагмой.

§ 10. Слоговоеделение

В английском языке слог может состоять из отдельного гласного (монофтонга, дифтонгоида или дифтонга) или из сочетания гласного с одним и более согласным звуком. Например: ['i:/zɪ] – easy, ['fɪf/tɪ] – fifty.

Слог также может состоять из слогообразующего сонанта, например [m], [n], которому **обязательно предшествует другой шумный согласный звук**. Например: ['bi:/tn] – beaten.

В двусложных словах, если на границе слогораздела встречаются два согласных звука, первый отходит к ударному слогу, а второй согласный – к безударному.

Например: ['sɪs/tɪm] – system

10.1 Типы ударного слога

Произношение английских ударных гласных зависит от типа слога в котором они встречаются. В английском языке существуют четыре типа ударного слога.

Первый тип слога называется **открытым** слогом. Он может быть:

1) **абсолютно открытым**, если оканчивается на гласную букву и на гласный звук:

no [zə], he [hi:], by [baɪ], hi [haɪ], flu [u:];

2) **условно открытым**, если оканчивается на гласную букву (часто на немую **E**), но на согласный звук: home [hʊm], plane [pleɪn], Pete [pi:t], hide [haɪd], type [taɪp].

В первом типе слога английские гласные читаются так, как произносятся в алфавите, кроме буквы **Y**, которая произносится [aɪ], и буквы **U**, которая может произноситься [ju:] (как в алфавите) или [u:], в зависимости от того, какой согласный ей предшествует.

Второй тип слога называется закрытым слогом. Он оканчивается на согласную букву и на согласный звук: cat [kæt], top [tɒp], pen [pen], kid [kɪd], bus [bʌs], gym [dʒɪm].

Во втором типе слога все гласные читаются кратко.

В **третьем типе** слога за ударной гласной следует буква **R**, и иногда ещё одна согласная: star [stɑ:], form [fɔ:m], her [hɜ:], girl [gɜ:l], turn [tɜ:n]

В третьем типе слога все гласные долгие.

В **четвертом типе** слога за ударной гласной следует буква **R** и обязательно ещё одна гласная, немая или произносимая:

stare [stɛə], Mary ['mɛəri], here [hɪə], tyre ['taɪə], sure [ʃʊə], more [mɔ:]

В четвертом типе слога гласные читаются, как дифтонги или звукосочетания, кроме буквы **O**, которая читается [ɔ:], также как в третьем типе слога.

10.2 Словесное ударение

В английском языке, также как в русском, слова, состоящие из двух и более слогов имеют ударение. Ударение обозначается сверху маленькой вертикальной чертой ['] **перед** ударным слогом: ['meni], ['sevɪn]. Английские слова могут иметь два (реже три) ударения.

Английское ударение может быть главным и второстепенным, (или сильным и слабым). Второстепенное ударение обозначается снизу [ˌ] перед ударным слогом. Например: con,gratu'lation, 're,militari'zation. Числительные от 13 до 19 имеют два сильных ударения.

10.3 Логическое ударение

Логическое ударение может падать на любое слово синтагмы, которое говорящий выделяет по смыслу независимо от правил фразового ударения. Слово, на которое падает логическое ударение, произносится с падением или повышением тона, причем часто это ударение является последним в синтагме. Например:

'Pass ˌme that red pencil. (передайте мне, а не кому-л. еще)

'Pass me ˌthat red pencil. (именно тот красный карандаш, а не другой)

II. ФОНЕТИЧЕСКАЯ ПРАКТИКА (PHONETIC PRACTICE)

LESSON 1

Фонемы [p], [b] – губно-губные смычные взрывные согласные.

Английские согласные [p], [b] произносятся так же, как и твердые русские [п], [б]. При произнесении фонем [p], [b] напряженные губы образуют плотную смычку, затем воздух с шумом прерывает преграду. Следует помнить, что [p], [b], как и все английские согласные звуки не подвергаются **палатализации**, то есть, не смягчаются.

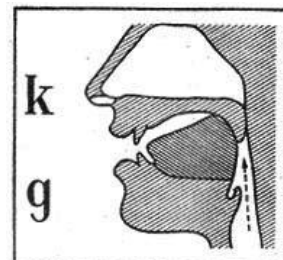
Перед глухими согласными и на конце слова фонема [b] не оглушается, так же как и все звонкие фонемы английского языка. Особенностью английской фонемы [p] является **придыхание (аспирация)**.

Фонемы [k], [g] – заднеязычные велярные смычные взрывные согласные.

Фонемы [k], [g], так же как и русские твердые [к], [г], образуются путем смычки задней спинки языка с мягким нёбом.

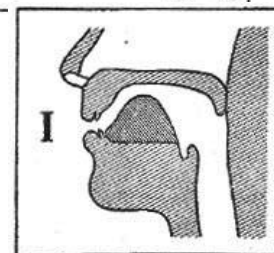
[k] – глухая фонема, [g] – звонкая фонема.

Английский взрывной [k] отличается от русского **придыханием**.



Фонема [ɪ] – краткий нелабиализованный монофтонг переднего отодвинутого назад ряда высокого подъема широкой разновидности.

При произнесении гласной фонемы [ɪ] язык продвинуто вперед, кончик языка находится у основания нижних зубов, средняя спинка языка выгнута вперед и значительно поднята кверху; губы слегка растянуты или нейтральны, [ɪ] – краткий, ненапряженный гласный. Русский [и] – более закрытый и более продвинутый вперед гласный.



Фонемы [f], [v] – губно-зубные щелевые фриктивные согласные.

При артикуляции [f], [v] внешняя сторона нижней губы образует плоскую щель с краем верхних резцов. Верхняя губа не принимает участия в артикуляции.

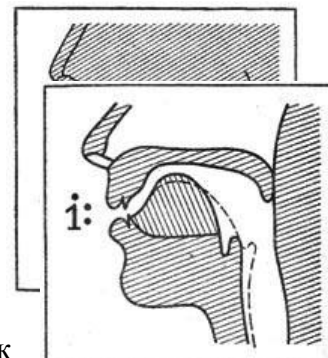
[f] – глухая фонема, [v] – звонкая. При произнесении русских [ф], [в] щель образуется между внутренней стороной нижней губы и верхними резцами.

Упражнение 1		Упражнение 2	
big	big	gɪv	give
pɪg	pɪg	vɪk	Vic
kɪk	kick	fɪb	fib
pɪk	pick	ɪf	if

Фонемы [s], [z] – преднеязычные апикально-альвеолярные щелевые фрикативные согласные.

При произнесении [s], [z] кончик языка и передняя спинка языка поднимаются к альвеолам; края языка приподняты по направлению к твердому нёбу и образуют круглую щель. [s] – глухая фонема, [z] – звонкая. При артикуляции русских [с], [з] кончик языка находится у нижних зубов.

Упражнение 3			
ɪz	is	fɪks	fix
fɪz	fizz	sɪk	sick
		sɪks	six



Фонема [i:] – долгий нелабиализованный дифтонгоид переднего ряда, высокого подъема узкой разновидности.

Фонема [i:] – самый закрытый гласный переднего ряда. Средняя спинка языка высоко поднята к твердому нёбу, но не так высоко, как при русском [и]. При произнесении [i:] вся масса языка продвинута вперед, кончик языка касается нижних зубов, губы несколько растянуты, слегка обнажают зубы. В процессе артикуляции [i:] язык от более низкого и отодвинутого назад положения переходит к более высокому и продвинутому вперед.

Упражнение 4				Упражнение 5	
bi:	be	si:	see	i:v	eve
vi:	v	pi:	pea	i:z	ease
fi:	fee	ki:	key		
Упражнение 6			Упражнение 7		
bi:z	bees	ki:p	keep	pi:s	piece
pi:z	peas	si:k	seek	spi:k	speak
fi:z	fees				
Упражнение 8			Упражнение 9		
pɪk – bɪg	pɪk – bɪg	pi:s – pi:z	peɪs – pi:s	pi:s – pi:z	peɪs – pi:s
kɪs – ɪz	kɪs – ɪz	si:k – si:z	si:k – si:z	si:k – si:z	si:k – si:z
ɪf – gɪv	ɪf – gɪv	ki:p – ki:z	ki:p – ki:z	ki:p – ki:z	ki:p – ki:z

Reading material
[ɪ - i:]

1. 'kɪtɪ ɪz ɪn 2. ɪts ðə 'lɪmɪt 3. ɪt 'ɪznt `krɪkɪt 4. 'sɪd 'dɪd ɪt fə `kɪks 5. 'gɪv mi ə ,kɪs 6. ɪks'tri:mz ,mi:t 7. 'ki:p ðə ,ki:z 8. 'li:v mi ɪn ,pi:s 9. ɪts ɪ:zɪ tə si: 10. hi 'spi:ks ʃaɪ'ni:z 11. 'sti:v ɪz ɪ:gə tə 'pli:z ðə ,ti:tʃə 12. ə 'bɪzɪ ,bi: 13. ,mi:t mi ət ,sɪks 14. ðə 'fi: ɪz ,bɪg 15. ðə 'di:n ɪz ,bɪzɪ 16. ɪt 'ɪznt ,i:zɪ	1. Kitty is in. 2. It's the limit. 3. It isn't cricket. 4. Sid did it for kicks. 5. Give me a kiss. 6. Extremes meet. 7. Keep the keys. 8. Leave me in peace. 9. It's easy to see. 10. He speaks Chinese. 11. Steve is eager to please the teacher. 12. A busy bee. 13. Meet me at six. 14. The fee is big. 15. The dean is busy. 16. It isn't easy.
---	---

Задание. Напишите слова в три колонки в зависимости от позиционной долготы гласного: fi:, pɪk, pi:z, pi:s, ki:p, vi:, gɪv, fi:z, kɪk, fi:b, i:z

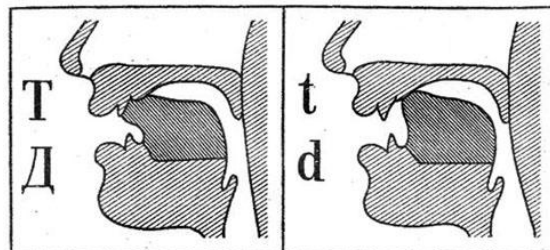
- 1) самый долгий (в конце слова);
- 2) более краткий (перед звонким согласным);
- 3) самый краткий (перед глухим согласным).

LESSON 2

Фонемы [t], [d] – преднеязычные апикально-альвеолярные смычные взрывные согласные.

При артикуляции [t], [d] кончик языка поднимается к альвеолам, образуя с ними смычку. [t] – глухая фонема, [d] – звонкая.

Фонема [t] произносится с придыханием. При артикуляции русских фонем [т], [д] смычка образуется между передней спинкой языка и верхними зубами.



Упражнение 10		Упражнение 11			
ti:	tea	pit	pit	tip	tip
di:	d	fit	fit	did	did
di:d	deed	bit	bit	kɪd	kid
fi:t	feet				

Фонема [m] – губно-губной смычный носовой сонант.

При артикуляции носового сонанта [m] губы образуют смычку; мягкое нёбо опущено, и воздух проходит через носовую полость. Сонант [m] произносится так же, как и русское твердое [м]. Английское [m] в начальном и конечном положении, особенно после краткого гласного, произносится более протяжно, чем русское [м].

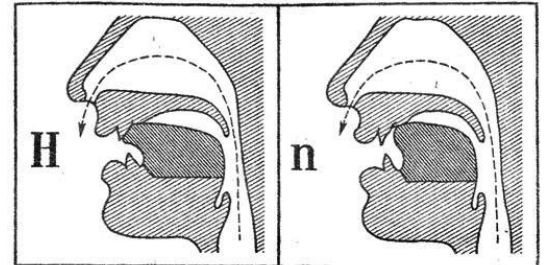
Упражнение 12			
mi:	me	ti:m	team

mi:t	meet	di:m	deem
mid	mid	dim	dim

Фонема [n] – переднеязычный апикально-альвеолярный смычный носовой сонант.

При произнесении носового сонанта [n] кончик языка образует смычку с альвеолами; мягкое нёбо опущено, и воздух проходит через нос.

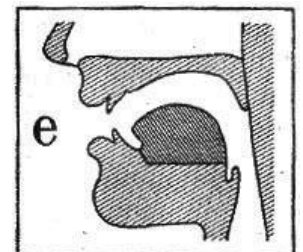
В начальном и конечном положении [n] произносится более протяжно, чем русское [н]. При артикуляции русского [н] смычка образуется между передней спинкой языка и верхними зубами.



Упражнение 13		Упражнение 14	
ni:	knee	di:p – di:d	deep – deed
ni:d	need	ni:t – ni:d	neat – need
nit	knit	fi:t – fi:d	feet – feed
mi:n	mean	bi:t – bi:d	beat – bead
di:n	dean		
Упражнение 15		Упражнение 16	
kit – kɪd	kit – kid	it – i:t	it – eat
nit – dɪd	knit – did	bit – bi:t	bit – beat
bit – bɪd	bit – bid	nit – ni:t	knit – neat
		if – i:v	if – eve

Фонема [e] – краткий нелабиализованный монофтонг переднего ряда среднего подъема узкой разновидности.

При артикуляции [e] язык выдвинут вперед, средняя спинка языка слегка выгнута кверху, кончик языка находится у нижних зубов; губы слегка растянуты. Английский гласный [e] похож на русский [э] в между твердым и мягким согласным, например, в словах *цель, жесть*.



Упражнение 17					
pen	pen	ten	ten	fen	fen
men	men	tekst	text	bet	bet
bed	bed	vet	vet	sez	says

Упражнение 18			
set – sed	set – said	bek – beg	beck – beg
net – ned	net – Ned	det – ded	debt – dead

Упражнение 19 [ɪ] – [e]			
pin – pen	pin – pen	sit – set	sit – set
big – beg	big – beg	bid – bed	bid – bed
nik – nek	Nick – neck	mis – mes	miss – mess

Упражнение 20	
'fɪftɪ – 'fɪf'ti:n	fifty – fifteen

'sɪksti – 'sɪks'ti:n	sixty – sixteen
----------------------	-----------------

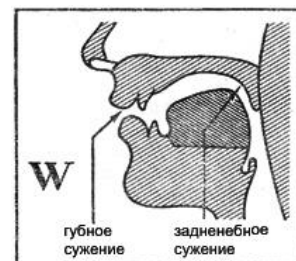
Английские краткие гласные фонемы в ударном слоге всегда тесно примыкают к следующему за ними согласному звуку, поэтому, произнеся краткий гласный звук, надо немедленно переходить к артикуляции последующего согласного звука. Сравните: ['sɪt/ɪ] – Си/ти

Упражнение 21					
'bɪzɪ	busy	'sɪtɪ	city	'tedɪ	Teddy
'gɪnɪ	guinea	'pɪɡɪ	piggy	'bekɪ	Becky
'pɪtɪ	pity	'kɪtɪ	Kitty	'pegɪ	Peggy
'meni	many	'penɪ	Penny	'eni	any

Упражнение 22 (носовой взрыв)					
'kɪtn	kitten	'mɪtn	mitten	'bi:tn	beaten

Фонема [w] – губно-губной срединный щелевой сонант.

При произнесении фонемы [w] напряженные губы сильно округляются и слегка выдвигаются вперед. Одновременно с этим задняя спинка языка оттягивается назад и поднимается в направлении мягкого нёба, как для русского [y]. Мягкое небо поднимается, закрывая доступ воздуху в полость носа. Но начальное положение губ и языка удерживается недолго: органы речи быстро принимают положение для артикуляции последующего гласного.



Сонант [w] встречается только перед гласным и представляет собой скольжение к нему. При артикуляции [w] надо следить, чтобы нижняя губа не касалась верхних зубов, иначе будет слышен звук [v]. В русском языке подобной фонемы нет.

Упражнение 23					
wɪ:	we	wɪm	whim	wɪɡ	wig
wɪ:k	week	'wɪmɪn	women	went	went
wɪn	win	wen	when	wet	wet
wɪnd	wind	west	west	wɛb	web

Упражнение 24	
wɪɡ – wɪt	wɪɡ – wɪt
wɪ:z – wɪ:p	wheeze – weep
wɪ:v – wɪ:k	weave – weak
wɛd – wɛt	wɛd – wɛt

Reading material [v - w] [ɪ- e]

1. wel `sed ,ned 2. wel ai `nevə 3. get `betə ,tedi 4. 'dʒef ɪz 'getɪŋ 'veri ,def 5. its ə ,pɪti beti 6. ðə 'west 'wind ɪz ,wi:k 7. 'wen wɪl 'vɪktə ,wɪn 8. wi 'went tə ðə ,vet 9. 'wɪli ɪz ,twelv 10. ɪt 'wi:vz ðə ,web 11. ðə 'mɪtn ɪz ,wet 12. ðə 'kɪtn ɪz ,wel 13. 'vɪki ,wi:ps	1. Well said, Ned. 2. Well, I never! 3. Get better, Teddy. 4. Jeff is getting very deaf. 5. It's a pity, Betty 6. The west wind is weak. 7. When will Victor win? 8. We went to the vet. 9. Willy is twelve. 10. It weaves the web. 11. The mitten is wet. 12. The kitten is well. 13. Vikie weeps.
---	---

Задания

1. Прочитайте числительные, обратите внимание на ударение. 15, 50, 16, 60, 17, 70.
2. Напишите слова в три колонки в зависимости от позиционной долготы гласного. bi:d, bit, bi:t, kɪd, mi:k, ni:, wɪg, wɪn, wɪp, wi:p, ti:, nɪp, fɪb, fi:
3. Выберите слова, в которых есть носовой взрыв, и произнесите их. 'dɪdnt, 'gɪvn, 'bɪtn, wind, went
4. Прочитайте слова, в которых звуки [p], [t], [k] произносятся с придыханием. pɪn, spɪn, skɪn, kɪn, ki:, ski:, kɪt, kɪd, pɪf, pi:t, sti:m, ti:m, spi:k, ten, stem, nek, nekst

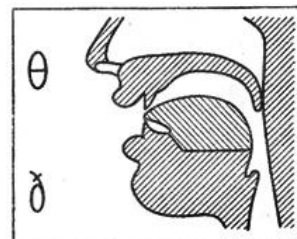
LESSON 3

Фонемы [θ], [ð] – переднеязычные апикально-межзубные щелевые фрикативные согласные.

При произношении [θ], [ð] язык распластан и не напряжен. Кончик языка касается края передних верхних зубов или слегка оттянут за зубы. Воздушная струя с шумом проходит через плоскую щель, которая образуется между верхними зубами и передней спинкой языка. [θ] – глухая фонема, [ð] – звонкая.

В русском языке подобных звуков нет.

Необходимо следить за тем, чтобы кончик языка, находясь за зубами, был распластан, а не поднимался кверху, иначе будут слышны звуки [s], [z]; нижняя губа не касалась зубов, иначе будут слышны звуки [f], [v]; передняя часть языка не касалась верхних зубов, иначе будут слышны звуки [t], [d].



Упражнение 25				Упражнение 26	
θθi: – ðði:				θi: – si:	ði: – zi:
ssi: – zzi:				θi: – fi:	ði: – vi:
ffi: – vvi:				θi: – ti:	ði: – di:
Упражнение 27		Упражнение 28			
θi:f	thief	ti:θ	teeth	sɪksθ	sixth
θi:m	theme	ni:θ	neath	fɪfθ	fifth
θɪk	thick	bɪ'ni:θ	beneath	mɪθ	myth
θɪn	thin				
Упражнение 29			Упражнение 30		
ði:	thee	si:ð		seethe	
ði:z	these	wɪð		with	

ðɪs	this	wɪ'ðɪn	within
-----	------	--------	--------

Фонема [eɪ] – дифтонг, ядром которого является нелабиализованный гласный звук [e] переднего ряда среднего подъема узкой разновидности.

При произнесении ядра дифтонга [eɪ] язык продвинул вперед, и передняя спинка слегка выгнута вверх. Кончик языка прижат к нижним зубам. Губы нейтральны. Затем средняя спинка языка немного поднимается в направлении артикуляции [ɪ], но полностью положения для [ɪ] не принимает; второй элемент дифтонга произносится нечетко, расстояние между спинкой языка и твердым небом остается широким.

Упражнение 31		Упражнение 32		Упражнение 33	
eɪ	a	deɪ	day	deɪn – deɪt	Dane – date
eɪm	aim	keɪ	k	keɪm – keɪp	came – cape
eɪd	aid	meɪ	may	meɪn – meɪk	main – make
eɪt	eight	geɪ	gay	geɪm – geɪt	game – gate
eɪk	ache	peɪ	pay	eɪm – eɪt	aim – eight

Фонема [ə] – нейтральный безударный нелабиализованный монофтонг смешанного ряда среднего подъема.

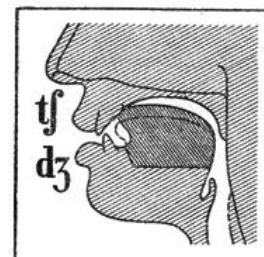
Упражнение 34		Упражнение 35	
ə'pen	a pen	ðə'sentəns	the sentence
ə'pɪn	a pin	ðə'sekənd	the second
ə'deɪ	a day	ðə'meθəd	the method
ə'geɪn	again	ði ə'sɪstənt	the assistant
ən'eg	an egg	tə kə'nekt	to connect
		tə kən'veɪ	to convey
		'seldəm	seldom
Упражнение 36			
'fi:və	fever	'detə	debtor
'mi:tə	metre	'wi:kə	weaker
'mɪstə	mister	'beɪðə	bather

Фонемы [tʃ], [dʒ] – переднеязычные апиально-альвеолярные среднеязычные палатальные аффрикаты.

При артикуляции аффрикат [tʃ], [dʒ] кончик языка прижимается к альвеолам, средняя спинка одновременно поднимается к твердому нёбу, но не так высоко, как для русского [ч].

Полная смычка образуется лишь на мгновение, а затем постепенно переходит в плоскую щель, через которую с шумом трения проходит воздух. [tʃ] – глухая фонема, [dʒ] – звонкая.

При произнесении [tʃ], [dʒ] надо следить за тем, чтобы они произносились одним усилием, слитно, а не были сочетанием двух отдельных звуков [t] и [ʃ] или [d] и [ʒ]. Фонемы, подобной [dʒ], в русском языке нет. Иногда при озвончении русского [ч] в сочетании слов можно услышать похожий звук, например: *ночь была*.



Упражнение 37				Упражнение 38	
ti:tʃ	teach	tʃest	chest	dʒɪm	Jim
'ti:tʃə	teacher	tʃes	chess	eɪdʒ	age

'pɪktʃə	picture	tʃeɪn	chain	peɪdʒ	page
tʃɪn	chin	wɪtʃ	which	dʒeɪmz	James
tʃi:p	cheap	tʃek	check	weɪdʒ	wage
Упражнение 39					
tʃest – 'dʒestʃə		chest – gesture			
tʃɪn – dʒɪn		chin – jinn			
tʃes – dʒet		chess – jet			
tʃɪp – 'dʒɪpsɪ		chip – gypsy			

Reading material [e – eɪ] [θ – ð]	
<p>1. ɪt meɪ ˈreɪn təˌdeɪ</p> <p>2. ˈheɪst ˈmeɪks ˌweɪst</p> <p>3. ˈteɪk ɪt ˈiːzɪ ˌdʒeɪk</p> <p>4. ˌseɪv jə ˌpeɪnz</p> <p>5. ˈdʒeɪn ˈdɪd ɪt ɪn ˌveɪn</p> <p>6. ɪts ə ˈfeɪk</p> <p>7. ˈhiː kən ˈθɪŋk əv ˈsɪks ˌθɪn θɪŋz ənd ˈwiː kən ˈθɪŋk əv ˈsɪks ˌθɪk θɪŋz</p> <p>8. ˈθɪn ˌstɪks ˈθɪk ˌbrɪks</p> <p>9. ðə ˈliːθ pəˈliːs dɪs ˌmɪsəθ əs</p> <p>10. ˈweðə ðə ˈweðə bi ˌkʊld ə ˈweðə ðə ˈweðə bi ˌhɒt ˈweðə ðə ˈweðə bi ˌwɔːm ə ˈweðə ðə ˈweðə bi ˌnɒt wɪl ˈweðə ðə ˈweðə wəˈteɪvə ðə ˌweðə ˈweðə wi ˌlaɪk ɪt ə ˌnɒt</p>	<p>1. It may rain today.</p> <p>2. Haste makes waste.</p> <p>3. Take it easy, Jake.</p> <p>4. Save your pains.</p> <p>5. Jane did it in vain.</p> <p>6. It's a fake.</p> <p>7. He can think of six thin things, and we can think of six thick things.</p> <p>8. Thin sticks, thick bricks.</p> <p>9. The Leith police dismisseth us.</p> <p>10. Whether the weather be cold, Or whether the weather be hot, 'Whether the weather be warm, Or whether the weather be not, We'll weather the weather whatever the weather. Whether we like it or not.</p>

Задания

1. Напишите слова в три колонки в зависимости от позиционной долготы гласных.
teɪm, beɪ, dʒeɪ, dʒeɪn, tʃeɪs, tʃeɪndʒ, keɪk, veɪg, ðiː, ðɪs, ðiːz, nek, ges, giːs, ɪn, niːt, ned
2. Отработайте чтение сочетаний.
ə ˌmeθəd, ə ˌtiːtʃə, ə ˌpɪktʃə, ə ˌsentəns, ə ˌsekənd, ə ˌtʃɪkɪn
3. Отработайте чтение предложений, заменяя данные существительные существительными в скобках.
 - 1) ˈðɪs ɪz ə ˌdesk || (bed, pen, pɪn, kiː, ˈtiːtʃə, ˌpɪktʃə, ˌsentəns,)
 - 2) ðə ˈtekst ɪz ˌiːzɪ || (ˌmeθəd, ˌsentəns, geɪm, weɪ)
 - 3) ˌpɪːt ɪz ˌɪn || (ˌted, ned, ben, ˌbetɪ, ˌkɪtɪ, ˌbekɪ, ˌemɪlɪ)

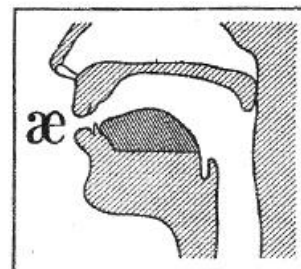
LESSON 4

Упражнение 40		Упражнение 41			
θeft	theft	ðen	then	feðə	feather
deθ	death	ðem	them	tə'geðə	together
tenθ	tenth				
'θi:sis	thesis				
smiθ	Smith				
Упражнение 42		Упражнение 43			
θi:m – si:m	theme – seem	wið – wɪz	with – whiz		
θɪk – sɪk	thick – sick	si:ð – si:z	seethe – seize		
miθ – mɪs	myth – miss	beɪð – beɪz	bathe – baize		
deθ – def	death – deaf	ðen – zed	then – z		
θɪk – fɪks	thick – fix	ði: – vi:	the – v		
θɪn – fɪn	thin – Finn	si:ð – kən'si:v	seethe – conceive		
deθ – det	death – debt	ðeɪ – deɪ	they – day		
θɪn – tɪn	thin – tin				

Фонема [æ] – краткий нелабиализованный монофтонг переднего ряда низкого подъема широкой разновидности.

Фонема [æ] – самый открытый гласный переднего ряда. При произнесении [æ] тело языка продвинуто вперед.

Средняя спинка языка немного приподнята, но расстояние между нею и твердым нёбом намного шире, чем при [e]. Нижняя челюсть довольно сильно опущена. Углы губ растянуты. При артикуляции [æ] вся мускулатура речевого аппарата значительно напряжена. В русском языке подобного звука нет.



Упражнение 44		Упражнение 45	
æn	Ann	mæn	man
æm	am	ðæn	than
æd	add	ðæt	that
ænt	ant	kæt	cat
ænd	and	fæt	fat
'æbsnt	absent	gæs	gas
Упражнение 46		Упражнение 47 [e] – [æ]	
bæk – bæɡ	back – bag	men – mæn	men – man
mæt – mæd	mat – mad	ded – dæd	dead – dad
kæp – kæb	cap – cab	set – sæt	set – sat
bæt – bæd	bat – bad	sed – sæd	said – sad
mætʃ – bædʒ	match – badge		

Фонема [aɪ] – дифтонг. Ядром дифтонга является нелабиализованный гласный [a] переднего ряда низкого подъема широкой разновидности.

При произнесении ядра язык продвинут вперед и лежит плоско в полости рта. Кончик языка находится у нижних зубов; губы растянуты. Затем средняя спинка языка поднимается для произнесения звука [ɪ], однако отчетливо второй элемент дифтонга не произносится. Не следует поднимать среднюю спинку языка слишком высоко для [ɪ], иначе второй элемент дифтонга будет звучать как русское [й] или английское [j].

Упражнение 48	Упражнение 49	Упражнение 50
---------------	---------------	---------------

maɪ	my	faɪv	five	paɪk	pike
daɪ	die	naɪn	nine	kaɪt	kite
taɪ	tie	taɪm	time	taɪp	type
baɪ	buy	daɪn	dine	saɪt	sight
ðɑɪ	thy	faɪnd	find	baɪt	bite
wɑɪ	why	maɪnd	mind		
		wɑɪn	wine		
		tʃaɪm	chime		
		ðɑɪn	thine		

Упражнение 51

saɪ – saɪð – saɪt	sɪgh – scyðe – sɪht
maɪ – maɪn – maɪt	my – maɪn – maɪht
faɪ – faɪn – faɪt	fiɛ – fiɛn – fiɪht
saɪ – saɪd – saɪt	sɪgh – saɪd – sɪht
wɑɪ – wɑɪd – wɑɪt	whɪ – wɪd – whɪt
wɑɪ – wɑɪz – wɑɪp	whɪ – wɪz – wɪp

Фонема [aʊ] – дифтонг; его ядро – нелабиализованный гласный [a] переднего отодвинутого назад ряда низкого подъема широкой разновидности.

Ядро дифтонга является промежуточным между английским [æ] и русским [a]; второй элемент – слабый гласный звук заднего ряда, близкий к [ʊ], который произносится нечетко, без округления губ.

Упражнение 52

kaʊ	cow	vaʊ	vow	ʃaʊt	shout
naʊ	now	taʊn	town	kaʊnt	count
naʊn	noun	saʊnd	sound	laʊd	loud
daʊn	down	aʊt	out	'maʊntɪn	mountain
wɑʊ	wow	paʊt	pout	'faʊntɪn	fountain

Регрессивная ассимиляция

Альвеолярные фонемы [t], [d], [n] под влиянием последующих межзубных [θ], [ð] меняют место смычки и становятся дентальными. Это пример регрессивной ассимиляции, когда последующий звук влияет на артикуляцию предшествующего.

Упражнение 53

ðə 'sevnθ	the seventh	ət 'ðɪs	at this
ðə 'tenθ	the tenth	ən (d) 'ðɪs	and this
ɪn 'ðɪs	in this	ən (d) 'ðæt	and that
ɪn 'ðæt	in that		

Reading material

[æ – aɪ – aʊ]

1. `fænsɪ , ðæt 2. 'sæm ɪz 'mæd əbaʊt , æn 3. 'ðæts 'æbsəlu:tli fən'tæstɪk 4. 'fæt ,pæt həd ə 'fæt ,kæt 'pæts 'fæt ,kæt 'sæt ɪn 'pæts ,hæt 5. ə 'blæk 'kæt 'sæt ɒn ə ,mæt ənd 'et ə 'fæt ,ræt 6. 'ðæts ðə ,mæn hu 'sæt ɒn maɪ 'hæt ɪn ðə ,træm 7. 'taɪm ,flaɪz 8. `maɪnd jər ,aɪ 9. 'maɪk 'draɪvz mi `waɪld 10. ,hi saɪd ,ʃi saɪd ðeɪ `bʊθ ,saɪd `saɪd baɪ ,saɪd 'daʊn bɪsaɪd ðə ,rɪvəsɑɪd 11. `aʊt əv ,daʊt 12. ɪts daʊn ,taʊn 13. 'haʊ əbaʊt ən ,aʊtɪŋ 14. `kaʊnt hɪm ,aʊt	1. Fancy that! 2. Sam is mad about Ann. 3. That's absolutely fantastic! 4. Fat Pat had a fat cat, Pat's fat cat sat in Pat's hat. 5. A black cat sat on a mat [and ate a fat rat. 6. That's the man who sat on my hat in the tram. 7. Time flies. 8. Mind your eye! 9. Mike drives me wild. 10. He sighed, she sighed, they both sighed, side by side, down beside the riverside. 11. Out of doubt. 12. It's downtown. 13. How about an outing? 14. Count him out.
--	--

Задания

1. Напишите слова в три колонки в зависимости от позиционной долготы гласного.
kæn, kæt, kæb, dæd, pet, peg, tʃæp, dzæm, wai, said, bai, saɪt, sprai, paɪk, paɪn, sai
2. Отработайте чтение сочетаний.
maɪ taɪ, maɪ ,saɪd, maɪ naɪf, maɪ ,saɪt, maɪ pen, maɪ ,bed
3. Отработайте чтение предложений.
aɪm ,bɪzɪ || aɪm ,hæpɪ || aɪm ,faɪn || aɪm ,sɪk ||
4. Отработайте чтение предложений, заменяя данные существительные существительными в скобках.
'ðɪs ɪz ə ,kaɪt || taɪ, paɪk, naʊn, taʊn, bæd, mætʃ)
'ðæt ɪz ə ,taɪgə || (beɪkə, tɪ:tʃə, pɪktʃə, sprɑɪdə, klɪ:nə)
5. Напишите предложения в транскрипции; обозначьте мелодию и ударения; отработайте их слитное чтение.
1. This is Mike. 2. That is a white kitten. 3. This is an easy sentence.
4. Find the pen. Find it. 5. Catch the cats. Catch them.

LESSON 5

Упражнение 54 [e] – [eɪ] – [æ]	
et – eit – æt beg – beɪð – bæg ðen – ðeɪ – ðæn pen – peɪn – pæn	ate – eight – at beg – bathe – bag then – they – than pen – pain – pan

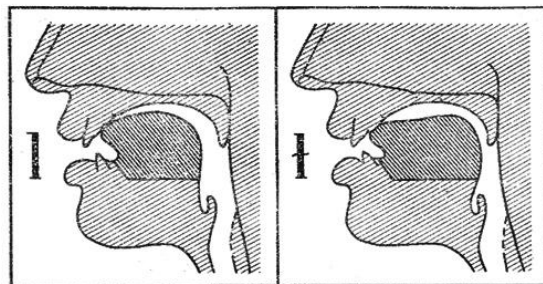
Фонема [l] – переднеязычный апикально-альвеолярный щелевой боковой сонант.

Фонема [l] – апикально-альвеолярный щелевой сонант. При произнесении [l] кончик языка прижат к альвеолам, края языка опущены, воздух проходит по обеим сторонам языка. Мягкое нёбо поднято и закрывает доступ струе воздуха в полость носа.

Английская фонема [l] имеет два варианта: так называемые «светлое» [l] и «темное» [l̥].

При артикуляции светлого [l] одновременно с кончиком языка поднимается средняя спинка языка, но не так высоко, как при русском [л’].

При произнесении темного [l̥] задняя спинка языка поднимается к мягкому нёбу.



Светлое [l] встречается перед гласными; темное [l̥] – перед согласными и на конце слова. В русском языке это две фонемы: [л] и [л’]. Например: *мел – мель*.

Однако, английское темное [l̥] не бывает таким твердым, как русское [л], а светлое [l] не бывает таким мягким, как русское [л’].

Фонема [l], как и сонанты [n], [m], является слогообразующим сонантом, если ей предшествует другой (шумный) согласный, например: [ˈteɪbl̥].

Упражнение 55		Упражнение 56			
læmp	lamp	pleɪt	plate	ˈbædli	badly
ˈlætɪn	Latin	pliːz	please	blæk	black
læd	lad	kliːn	clean	dʒɪl	Jill
læs	lass	ɪˈlevn	eleven	sledʒ	sledge
lænd	land	ˈfæmɪli	family		

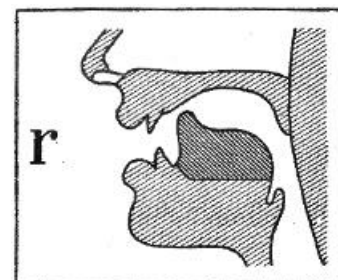
Упражнение 57		Упражнение 58			
leɪt - leɪd	late – laid	teɪl	tail	fi:l	feel
laɪk - laɪz	like – lies	ˈteɪbl̥	table	si:l	seal
li:k – li:d	leak – lead	ˈpensl̥	pencil	tʃɪl	chill
ˈlɪsn – lɪd	listen – lid	bel	bell	wel	well
ˈlesn - leg	lesson - leg	tel	tell	wɪl	will
		kɪl	kill	wɑɪld	wild
		mɪlk	milk		
		fɪlm	film		

Фонема [r] – преднеязычный апикально-заальвеолярный (какуминальный) щелевой срединный сонант.

Английский сонант [r] не похож на русский [р]. Русское дрожащее [р] образуется рядом последовательных быстрых ударов кончика языка об альвеолы.

При артикуляции английского [r] кончик языка поднимается к заднему скату альвеол, но не касается его, оставаясь неподвижным. Щель для прохождения воздуха довольно широкая; губы напряжены, но не выдвинуты вперед.

Для контроля правильности произнесения [r] следует

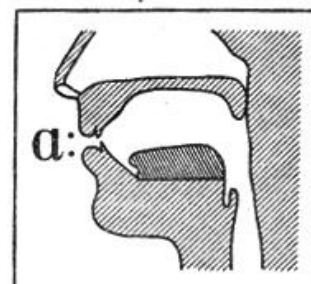


начать произносить русский звук [ж], а затем сделать щель более широкой.

Упражнение 59		Упражнение 60	
red	red	rait – raid	write – ride
rein	rain	reis – rein	race – rain
raim	rhyme	ri:p – ri:d	reap – read
'rivə	river	risk – rid	risk – rid
ri:ð	wreathe	rest – red	rest – red
'redi	ready	ræt – ræg	rat – rag

Фонема [ɑ:] – долгий нелабиализованный монофтонг заднего ряда низкого подъема широкой разновидности.

При произнесении [ɑ:] язык отодвинут назад; задняя спинка слегка приподнята. Расстояние между задней спинкой языка и мягким нёбом широкое. Кончик языка оттянут от нижних зубов; губы нейтральны. По сравнению с русским [а], английское [ɑ:] значительно глубже, произносится дольше и напряженнее.



Упражнение 61		Упражнение 62	
ka:	car	fa:	far
ka:m	calm	fa:m	farm
ka:t	cart	pa:s	pass
'ka:pɪt	carpet	pa:st	past
'gɑ:dn	garden	pa:dn	'pardon
'gɑ:gl	gargle	sta:t	start
Упражнение 63		Упражнение 64 [w] – [v]	
a: – ba:	are – bar	wi:l – vi:l	wheel – veal
a:sk – ta:sk	ask – task	wel – 'velvɪt	well – velvet
a:t – pa:t	art – part	waɪz – vaɪs	wise – vice
a:m – pa:m	arm – palm	wain – vain	wine – vine
a:k – da:k	arc – dark		
'ɑ:nsə – da:ns	answer – dance		

Упражнение 65	
Окончание множественного числа существительных -s (или -es) произносится:	
[s] – после глухих согласных:	
tekst – teksts	text – texts
læmp – læmps	lamp – lamps
pa:t – pa:ts	part – parts
leɪk – leɪks	lake – lakes
[z] – после гласных и звонких согласных:	
taɪ – taɪz	tie – ties
deɪ – deɪz	day – days
bæg – bægz	bag – bags

'lesn – 'lesnz	lesson – lessons
'pensl – 'penslz	pencil – pencils
[ɪz] – после свистящих и шипящих:	
kla:s – 'kla:sɪz	class – classes
mætʃ – 'mætʃɪz	match – matches
pleɪs – 'pleɪsɪz	place – places
pi:s – 'pi:sɪz	piece – pieces
'sentəns – 'sentənsɪz	sentence – sentences

Связующее [r]

Если же за словом, оканчивающимся на **r** или **re**, следует слово, начинающееся с гласного, то между ними может появиться связующий звук [r], причем оба слова произносятся слитно. Например: *ðə 'bægz aː r ɪn ðə ,desk ||*

Reading material [ɑ:] [r] yes no questions	
1. 'ɪz 'mɑ:k ,smɑ:t	1. Is Mark smart?
2. 'wɪl ðeɪ 'sta:t ðə ,kɑ:	2. Will they start the car?
3. 'ʃæl wi ,da:ns aːftə ,kla:sɪz	3. Shall we dance after classes?
4. 'ɪz ðɪs ðə ,raɪt aːnsə	4. Is this the right answer?
5. 'ɪz ðət ə 'la:dʒ ,gɑ:dn	5. Is that a large garden?
6. ðə 'bægz aːr ɒn ðə ,desks	6. The bags are on the desks.
7. ðɪ 'egz aːr ɪn ðə ,pænz	7. The eggs are in the pans.
8. ðə 'bæts aːr ɪn ðə ,keɪvz	8. The bats are in the caves.
9. ðə 'nets aːr ɪn ðə ,weɪvz	9. The nets are in the waves.
10. ə'raʊnd ðə 'rʌɡɪd ,rɒk ðə 'ræɡɪd 'rɑ:skəl ,ræn ðə 'ræɡɪd 'rɑ:skəl 'ræn 'raʊnd ðə 'rʌɡɪd ,rɒk	10. Around the rugged rock the ragged rascal ran. The ragged rascal ran round the rugged rock.
11. 'ræbɪt 'raɪli 'red ðə 'raʊnd 'raɪm ə ,raʊnd ðə 'raʊnd 'raɪm 'ræbɪt 'raɪli 'red ə ,raʊnd 'wæz ðə raʊnd ,raɪm 'ræbɪt 'raɪli 'red ə ,raʊnd	11. Rabbit Riley read the round rhyme around The round rhyme rabbit Riley read around Where is the round rhyme rabbit Riley read around?
12. ,red lɒri ,jelzʊ lɒri	12. Red lorry, yellow lorry.
13. ,red leðə ,jelzʊ leðə	13. Red leather, yellow leather.

Задания

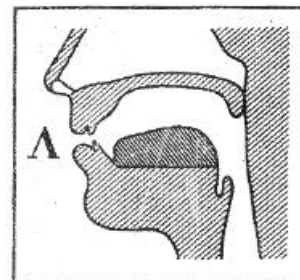
1. Напишите слова в 3 колонки в зависимости от позиционной долготы гласных.
fa:, fa:m, ka:st, la:k, læk, læm, raɪ, raɪm, raɪs

2. Напишите сочетания слов в транскрипции; обратите внимание на произношение определенного и неопределенного артиклей.
the apple, an apple, the garden, the arm, a car
3. Добавьте транскрипцию окончаний множественного числа: **s, z** или **iz**.
e.g. dei... - deiz
spais..., sentəns..., mætʃ..., fæmɪli..., spi:tʃ..., lænd..., eɪdʒ..., eksəsaɪz..., pleɪt...,
tɑ:sk..., taim..., raɪt..., saɪ..., paɪ..., wɪʃ....., step.....;
4. Измените предложения по данному образцу. Отработайте их чтение.
Образец: 'This is a ,match. – 'These are ,matches.
1. This is a bag. 2. This is a letter. 3. This is a tent. 4. This is a teacher.
5. Поставьте общие вопросы к предложениям.
1. The river is wide. 2. This is a red apple. 3. The texts are in the bag. 4. The task is easy.
5. That is a large flat. 6. Nick is in the park.
6. Напишите предложения в транскрипции; обозначьте мелодию и ударения; отработайте их слитное чтение.
1. Is the bag in the car? 2. Are Tim and Meg at the party? 3. Is this his case? 4. The keys are on the table. 5. The lamp is on the desk.

LESSON 6

Фонема [ʌ] – краткий нелабиализованный монофтонг смешанного ряда среднего подъема широкой разновидности.

Английская фонема [ʌ] напоминает русское [а] в предударном слоге, но сходство это относительное: английское [ʌ] бывает всегда ударным, более кратким, напряженным и более задним. При артикуляции [ʌ] язык оттянут назад не так далеко, как для [ɑ:], но дальше, чем для русского [а]. Задняя спинка языка поднята к передней части мягкого нёба выше, чем при [ɑ:]. Губы слегка растянуты, расстояние между челюстями довольно большое.



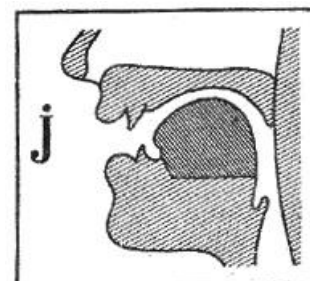
Упражнение 66					
kʌm	come	'mʌni	money	lʌv	love
kʌp	cup	'stʌdi	study	'dʌbl	double
rʌn	run	fʌn	fun	wʌn	won
rʌm	rum	'mʌðə	mother	'wʌndəfʊl	wonderful

Упражнение 67			
[ɑ:] – [ʌ]			
ba:k – bʌk	bark – buck	ba:d – bʌd	bard – bud
da:k – dʌk	dark – duck	ka:m – kʌm	calm – come
la:k – lʌk	lark – luck	ma:st – mʌst	mast – must
ka:t – kʌt	cart – cut	'fa:ðə – 'mʌðə	father – mother

Фонема [j] – среднеязычный палатальный щелевой срединный сонант.

При произнесении сонанта [j] средняя спинка языка поднята к твердому небу, но щель остается достаточно широкой, так что воздух, проходя через нее, не создает шума трения.

В русском языке [й] более шумный сонант, так как средняя спинка языка поднимается выше к твердому нёбу. Русское [й] встречается в



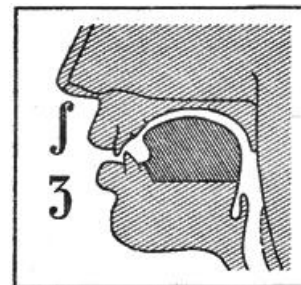
начале и в конце слова: *ел, май*. Английское [j] произносится только перед гласными и звучит очень кратко.

Упражнение 68			
es – jes	s – yes	i:l – ji:ld	eel – yield
et – jet	ate – yet	a:t – ja:d	art – yard
el – jel	l – yell	i:st – ji:st	east – yeast

Фонемы [j], [ʒ] – переднеязычные апикально-альвеолярные среднеязычные палатальные щелевые согласные.

Английские фонемы [j], [ʒ] мягче русских твердых [ш], [ж]. При артикуляции [j], [ʒ] кончик языка поднимается к альвеолам, образуя плоскую щель. Одновременно с этим средняя спинка языка выгибается кверху, что придает английским [j], [ʒ] более мягкий оттенок.

При произнесении русских твердых [ш], [ж] задняя спинка языка поднимается к мягкому нёбу, а средняя часть языка имеет форму впадины. Английские [j], [ʒ] произносятся с округленными, слегка выдвинутыми вперед губами. [j] – глухая фонема, [ʒ] – звонкая.



Упражнение 69					
ʃi:	she	ʃɑ:p	sharp	ʃʌt	shut
ʃaɪ	shy	ʃɪp	ship	ʃeɪlɪ	Shelley
ʃaɪn	shine	ʃi:p	sheep	ʃæk	shack
ʃi:t	sheet	ʃeɪp	shape	wɪʃ	wish

Упражнение 70			
beɪʒ	beige	kə'liʒn	collision
'vɪʒn	vision	'gæra:ʒ	garage
dɪ'vɪʒn	division	'pleʒə	pleasure
dɪ'sɪʒn	decision	'meʒə	measure

Упражнение 71 (потеря взрыва)	
ət 'ðæt ˌtaɪm	at that time
ɪn 'ðæt ˌtekst	in that tekst
'ðæt ˌdeɪ	that day
ðə 'sekənd ˌdeɪ	the second day
'naɪt ənd ˌdeɪ	night and day
'teɪk ˌted	take Ted
'bɪɡ ˌkʌt	big cut

Reading material
[ʌ] [j] tag questions and imperative sentences

<p>1. its 'dʌbl `dʌf fə ,ʃi:lə its ə ,pɪtɪ</p> <p>2. 'hʌrɪ ,ʌp ʃerɪf ,wɪl jə</p> <p>3. 'plʌk ʌp jə ,kʌrɪdʒ ,kæn jə</p> <p>4. its 'tʌf ,lʌk ,ɪznt ɪt ,jes ɪt ,ɪz</p> <p>5. ʃi ɪz ɪn 'bæd ʃeɪp ,ɪznt ʃi ,jes ʃi ,ɪz</p> <p>6. ðə 'ʃi:p ɑ:r ɪn ðə ,ʃed ,ɑ:nt ðeɪ 'jes ðeɪ ,ɑ:</p> <p>7. 'faɪv 'fɪt ,fɪʃəz 'ʃɪpt 'sɪks 'θɪk 'θɪʃ ,dɪʃɪz</p> <p>8. 'ʃi selz 'si: ʃelz ɒn ðə 'si: ,ʃɔ:</p> <p>9. 'kʌm tə maɪ ,pleɪs tənʌɪt</p> <p>10. 'ʃʌt ðə ,wɪndəʊ plɪ:z</p> <p>11. 'kʌm ət ,wʌns</p> <p>12. 'bi: ,kwɪk</p> <p>13. 'pɑ:s mi ðət ,beɪʒ ska:f plɪ:z its ,maɪ . ska:f 'gɪv ɪt 'bæk tə ,mi: 'let ,mi: .teɪk ɪt</p>	<p>1. It's double Dutch for Sheila. – It's a pity.</p> <p>2. Hurry up, sheriff, will you?</p> <p>3. Pluck up your courage, can you?</p> <p>4. It's tough luck, isn't it? – Yes, it is.</p> <p>5. She is in bad shape, isn't she? – Yes, she is.</p> <p>6. The sheep are in the shed, aren't they? Yes, they are.</p> <p>7. Five fit fishers shipped six thick fish dishes.</p> <p>8. She sells seashells on the seashore.</p> <p>9. Come to my place tonight.</p> <p>10. Shut the window, please.</p> <p>11. Come at once!</p> <p>12. Be quick!</p> <p>13. Pass me that beige scarf please. It's my scarf Give it back to me Let me take it</p>
---	---

Задания

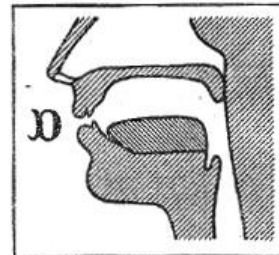
1. Задайте общие вопросы к предложениям.
The cat is black. 2. The man is thin. 3. These lessons are easy. 4. That text is simple.
2. Отработайте чтение вопросов, заменяя данные существительные одним из существительных в скобках и, где нужно, меняя форму артикля (ə - ən).
1) 'ðɪs ɪz ə ,pɪktʃə | ,ɪznt ɪt (eg, ænt, taɪ, bædʒ)
2) 'ðæt ɪz ə ,bed | ,ɪznt ɪt (kæb, pen, keɪdʒ, kaɪt)
3. Прочтите следующие разделительные вопросы в двух вариантах (с повышающейся и понижающейся мелодией во второй половине вопроса).
1) This is a cap, isn't it? 2. This is a pan, isn't it? 3. This is a bad match, isn't it?
4) This is a fat cat, isn't it?
4. Преобразуйте утвердительные предложения в разделительные вопросы.
1. Nick and Lily are in the garden. 2. The key is in the bag. 3. Tim and Kitty are at the cinema. 4. The pen is in the desk. 5. The apples are in the basket. 6. That is a fine bag.
5. Напишите предложения в транскрипции; обозначьте мелодию и ударения; отработайте их слитное чтение.

1. These people are away. 2. Are the leaves green? 3. It's a pity, isn't it?
4. This train isn't late, is it? 5. Give me the black dress, please. 6. Be in time! 7. Let me keep it.

LESSON 7

Фонема [ɒ] – краткий лабиализованный монофтонг заднего ряда низкого подъема широкой разновидности.

При произнесении [ɒ] весь язык отодвигается назад, задняя спинка языка поднимается к мягкому нёбу (немного выше, чем при [ɑ:]). Кончик языка отходит от нижних зубов. Губы слегка округлены, но не выдвинуты вперед. Расстояние между челюстями широкое. Гласный [ɒ] всегда произносится четко и кратко, но с ощутимым мускульным напряжением.



Английское [ɒ] сильно отличается от русского [о]. Русское [о] – более закрытый, сильно огубленный гласный, произносится дольше и часто имеет призвук [y] в начале; расстояние между челюстями меньше, чем при [ɒ].

Упражнение 72					
kɒt	cot	nɒt	not	wɒt	what
sɒk	sock	fɒks	fox	wɒʃ	wash
gɒt	got	bɒks	box	skɒtʃ	Scotch
gɒn	gone	lɒdʒ	lodge	stɒp	stop

Упражнение 73			
[ʌ] – [ɒ]			
kʌt – kɒt	cut – cot	ɡʌn – ɡɒn	gun – gone
bʌt – bɒt	but – bot	pʌt – pɒt	putt – pot
nʌt – nɒt	nut – not		

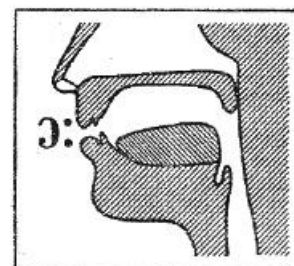
Фонема [ɔɪ] - дифтонг. Ядро дифтонга – лабиализованный гласный заднего ряда низкого подъема.

Ядро дифтонга несколько более закрытый гласный, чем [ɒ]; скольжение происходит в направлении гласного [ɪ]. Не следует заменять второй элемент [ɪ] сонантом [j], т. е. поднимать среднюю спинку языка слишком высоко.

Упражнение 74					
bɔɪ	boy	dʒɔɪ	joy	pɔɪnt	point
tɔɪ	toy	tɔɪl	toil	'tɔɪlɪt	toilet
vɔɪs	voice	nɔɪz	noise	ɪm'plɔɪ	employ
bɔɪl	boil	'nɔɪzɪ	noisy		

Фонема [ɔ:] – долгий лабиализованный монофтонг заднего ряда низкого подъема узкой разновидности.

Английское [ɔ:] по укладу языка похоже на краткое [ɒ]; язык так же оттянут назад, но немного дальше, чем для [ɒ], и задняя спинка языка поднята немного выше, чем для [ɒ]. Кончик языка отходит от нижних зубов. Расстояние между челюстями довольно большое.



Губы округлены и слегка выдвинуты вперед, но не так сильно, как для русского [o]. Все артикулирующие органы напряжены; звук произносится долго и не меняет своего качества от начала до конца.

Упражнение 75				Упражнение 76	
bɔ:	bore	kɔ:z	cause	jɔ:k	York
fɔ:	four	bɪ'kɔ:z	because	tɔ:k	talk
dɔ:	door	smɔ:l	small	wɔ:l	wall
flɔ:	floor	bɔ:d	board	wɔ:m	warm
jɔ:	your	'blækbɔ:d	blackboard	wɔ:k	walk
θɔ:	thaw	θɔ:t	thought		
Упражнение 77					
[ʌ] – [ɑ:] – [ɒ] – [ɔ:]					
kʌt – kɑ:t – kɒt – kɔ:t			cut – cart – cot – court		
pʌt – pɑ:t – pɒt – pɔ:t			putt – part – pot – port		
bʌd – bɑ:d – 'bɒdi – bɔ:d			bud – bard – body – board		

Фонема [ɜv] – дифтонг, ядром которого является лабиализованный гласный [ɜ] смешанного ряда среднего подъема узкой разновидности.

При артикуляции первого элемента дифтонга губы слегка округлены, задняя спинка языка поднята довольно высоко и слегка продвинута вперед. Затем следует скольжение к [v], которое произносится вполне ясно и отчетливо. Для произнесения второго элемента дифтонга задняя спинка языка поднимается немного выше и оттягивается назад, губы больше округляются и ротовое отверстие сильно сокращается. Английское [ɜ] в начале дифтонга – более передний и узкий гласный, чем русское [o]; начало дифтонга [ɜv] представляет собой нечто среднее между русскими [э] и [о], но все же стоит ближе к [o].

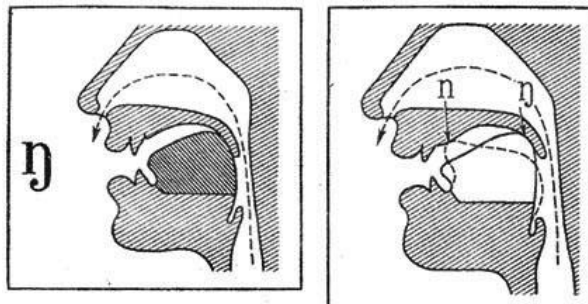
Упражнение 78							
nɜv	know	ɜvld	old	slɜp	slope	vɜg	vogue
lɜv	low	kɜt	coat	bɜθ	both	'jelɜv	yellow
gɜv	go	ðɜz	those	wɜk	woke	'nærɜv	narrow
Упражнение 79							
[ɔɪ] – [ɔ:] – [ɜv]							
bɔɪl – bɔ:t – bɜt				boil – bought – boat			
ɔɪl – ɔ:l – ɜld				oil – all – old			
bɔɪl – bɔ:l – bɜld				boil – ball – bold			
tɔɪl – tɔ:l – tɜld				toil – tall – told			

Фонема [ŋ] – заднеязычный смычный носовой сонант.

При произнесении сонанта [ŋ] задняя спинка языка образует плотную смычку с опущенным мягким нёбом; струя воздуха проходит через носовую полость. Кончик языка опущен и находится у нижних зубов. Подобного звука в русском языке нет.

Частой ошибкой является замена сонанта [ŋ] сонантом [n]; нужно следить, чтобы кончик языка не поднимался к альвеолам.

На конце слова, перед гласными или на



стыке слов после [ŋ] не должен слышаться призвук [g]. Чтобы избежать этого, нужно ослабить мускульное напряжение в конце артикуляции [ŋ], а если [ŋ] встречается на конце слова, то прежде чем разомкнуть преграду после [ŋ], нужно «выключить» голос.

Упражнение 80					
siŋ	sing	riŋ	ring	'piŋ 'pɒŋ	ping-pong
diŋ	ding	sɒŋ	song	gɒŋ	gong
kiŋ	king	lɒŋ	long	rɒŋ	wrong
θiŋ	thing				

Сочетание согласного с [w]

В английском языке согласные звуки перед [w] становятся лабиализованными под влиянием артикуляции [w]. Это еще один случай регрессивной ассимиляции, когда последующий звук влияет на артикуляцию предшествующего.

Упражнение 81					
twelv	twelve	kwɪk	quick	dwaɪf	dwarf
'twenti	twenty	swɪm	swim	dwel	dwel
twais	twice				

Reading material	
[ɒ] [ɔ:] [ɜ:] choice questions and high fall	
1. 'ɪz 'pɔ:l ə ,dɒktə ɔr ə ri ,pɔ:tə	1. Is Paul a doctor or a reporter?
2. 'ɪz ðə 'klɒk ,fa:st ɔ ,slɔ	2. Is the clock fast or slow?
3. 'ɑ: ðə 'dʒɜ:nzɪz ət ,hʌm ɔ ,nɒt	3. Are the Joneses at home or not?
4. 'sɪŋ ðə `sɒŋ	4. Sing the song
5. 'wɒt ə 'lɒt əv `nɒnsəns	5. What a lot of nonsense!
6. `dʒɒg ,ɒn	6. Jog on.
7. `pɒsɪbli ,nɒt	7. Possibly not.
8. ðə 'smɔ:l 'pɒt ɪz 'su:n ,hɒt	8. The small pot is soon hot.
9. ə 'kɒp əv 'kɒfi ,hɒt ɪn ə 'prɒpə 'kɒfi ,pɒt	9. A cup of coffee hot in a proper coffee pot.
10. aɪl hæv ə 'prɒpə 'kɒp əv ,kɒfi ɪn ə 'prɒpə 'kɒfi ,kɒp	10. I'll have a proper cup of coffee in a proper coffee cup.
11. 'ðæts 'ɔ:l `jɔ: fɔ:lt	11. That's all your fault.
12. 'kɔ:l mi ət ə 'kwɔ:tə tə `fɔ:	12. Call me at a quarter to four.
13. 'pɔ:lz 'aɪz 'drɔ: `strɔ:z	13. Paul's eyes draw straws.
14. ɜv `nɜv 'dʒɒnt 'gɜv 'hʌm ə `lɜv	14. Oh, no, don't go home alone.
15. aɪ sə `pɜvz ,sɜv	15. I suppose so.
16. `nɜv ,smɜvkiŋ	16. No smoking.
17. `nɜv .bɜvnz ,brɜvkn	17. No bones broken.

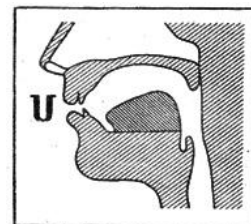
Задания

- Распределите слова по трем колонкам в зависимости от позиционной долготы гласного: wʒuk, vʒug, vʒut, bʒuld, tʒu, nʒu, pɔ:l, pɔ:t, mɔ:, lɒt, lɒg, gɒŋ.
- Измените следующие утвердительные предложения на вопросительные и вопросительно-отрицательные. Подготовьте их слитное чтение. Образец: It's cold today.
Is it cold today? Isn't it cold today?
 - It's foggy today.
 - It's windy tonight.
 - It's cold this winter.
 - It's wet this month.
 - It's rainy in York.
 - It's warm now.
- Дайте краткий утвердительный или отрицательный ответ на вопросы.
 - Is it late?
 - Is it cold today?
 - Isn't it rainy tonight?
 - It's windy this month, isn't it?
 - It's five o'clock, isn't it?
 - Isn't it nine o'clock sharp?
- Превратите общие вопросы в альтернативные.
 - Is it hot today?
 - Is the bag brown?
 - Is Jack eighteen?
 - Is he a manager?
 - Is Tom in?
- Задайте альтернативные вопросы к выделенным словам.
 - This man is his *brother*.
 - They have *two* sons.
 - It's *Tuesday* today.
 - The bag is *on* the table.
 - His *friends* are in the country now.
- Напишите предложения в транскрипции; обозначьте мелодию и ударения; отработайте их слитное чтение. Используйте High Fall где это возможно.
 - Why is John absent today?
 - What's up?
 - What a shame!
 - What cold weather!
 - Why are the clothes on the floor?
 - Is she busy or free today?
 - Are they actors or models?

LESSON 8

Фонема [ʊ] – краткий лабиализованный монофтонг заднего продвинутого вперед ряда высокого подъема широкой разновидности.

При произнесении [ʊ] язык оттянут назад; опущенный кончик языка отходит от нижних зубов; задняя спинка языка поднята к мягкому нёбу; губы заметно округлены, но не выдвинуты вперед. Английское [ʊ] сильно отличается от русского [y]. Русское [y] – более глубокий и закрытый гласный, так как задняя спинка языка поднимается значительно выше к задней части мягкого нёба. Русское [y] – гораздо уже, так как губы сильно округлены и выдвинуты вперед.



Упражнение 82

buk	book	tuk	took	rʊk	rook	wʊl	wool
gʊd	good	kʊk	cook	rʊm	room	wʊd	wood

Произношение частицы *to* перед инфинитивом

Частица **to**, находясь всегда в безударном положении, употребляется в одной из двух редуцированных форм: [tə], когда инфинитив начинается с согласного звука, например: [tə 'pʊf]; [tu], когда инфинитив начинается с гласного звука, например: [tu 'zʊpən].

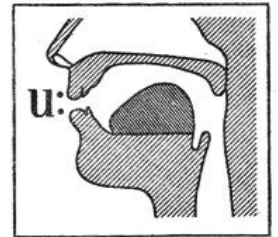
Ударение в сложных существительных

Сложные существительные, как правило, имеют одно ударение — на первом компоненте. Например: schoolbook ['sku:lbu:k], postman ['pɒstmən]. Однако, если второй компонент является двусложным или многосложным существительным, то на него падает слабое, так называемое «второстепенное» ударение. Например: newspaper ['nju:s,peɪpə]

Упражнение 83			
tə 'lʊk	to look	'kla:srʊm	classroom
tə 'pʊt	to put	'eksəsaɪzbʊk	exercise book
tʊ 'ɑ:sk	to ask	'nɒtɪbʊk	notebook

Фонема [u:] – долгий лабиализованный дифтонгоид заднего ряда высокого подъема узкой разновидности.

При произнесении [u:] язык оттянут назад и задняя спинка языка поднята к мягкому нёбу (немного глубже и выше, чем для [ʊ]), но не так глубоко и высоко, как для русского [у]; губы напряжены, сильно округлены, но не выдвинуты вперед, в отличие от русского [у]. Фонема [u:] – дифтонгоид: при артикуляции [u:] язык от менее высокого и слегка выдвинутого вперед положения переходит к более высокому и отодвинутому назад. Фонема [u:] часто встречается в сочетании с предшествующим сонантом [j], под влиянием которого она становится более передним звуком.



Упражнение 84				Упражнение 85			
du:	do	ʃu:	shoe	sku:l	school	ru:l	rule
tu:	two	dʒu:	Jew	su:n	soon	ru:d	rude
blu:	blue	tʃu:	chew	nu:n	noon		
Упражнение 86							
nju:	new	'dju:tɪ	duty	'mju:zɪk	music		
fju:	few	'bju:tɪ	beauty	'stju:dənt	student		
ju:	you	'ɪnstɪtju:t	institute	'nju:s,peɪpə	newspaper		
Упражнение 87							
[u:] – [ʊ] – [aʊ]							
bu:t – bu:k – bau				boot – book – bow			
ru:θ – ru:k – rau				Ruth – rook – row			
fu:d – fu:t – faʊl				food – foot – fowl			

Фонема [ʊə] – дифтонг. Ядро дифтонга – слегка лабиализованный гласный [ʊ] заднего продвинутого вперед ряда высокого подъема широкой разновидности.

Заканчивается дифтонг скольжением в направлении [ə].

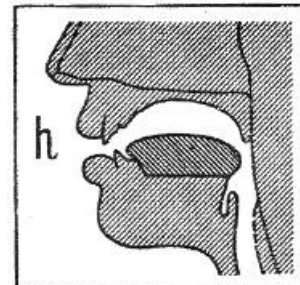
Упражнение 88			
pʊə	poor	'ju:ʒʊəl	usual
ʃʊə	sure	'kjʊəriəs	curious
pjʊə	pure	'plʊərəl	plural
kjʊə	cure	krʊəl	cruel
fjʊəl	fuel	'bʊəʒwɑ:	bourgeois

Упражнение 89 [u:] – [ʊ] – [ʊə]	
pu:l – pʊl – pʊə ʃu:t – ʃʊk – ʃʊə	pool – pull – poor shoot – shook – sure

Фонема [h] – глухой фарингальный щелевой согласный.

При произнесении [h] образуется широкая щель между оттянутым назад корнем языка и выдвинутой вперед задней стенкой глотки. Так как щель широкая, шум трения очень слабый, что создает впечатление легкого выдоха.

Фонема [h] часто заменяется русским [х], для произнесения которого образуется узкая щель между задней спинкой языка и мягким нёбом и который отличается сильным шумом трения.



Упражнение 90		Упражнение 91			
ai – haɪ	high	hi:	he	hɒt	hot
au – haʊ	how	hɪz	his	hʌt	hut
eɪ – heɪ	hay	hu:	who	hɑ:d	hard
æt – hæt	hat	hu:z	whose	'hæpɪ	happy
aɪ – haɪt	height	hu:m	whom	haʊs	house
		hɪm	him	'hauzɪz	houses
		hæz	has	'heɪpɪ	halfpenny
		hæv	have		

Reading material [ʊ-u:] [ʊə] [h]
--

1. hə'lɜv 'hæv 'hæpɪ aɪm tə 'mi:t ju hæv ə ju 'veri 'wel ,θæŋk ju	1. Hello! How happy I am to meet you. How are you? – Very well, thank you.
2. tel mi hu: ə ju aɪm 'hju: ,dju:k 'wɒt dʒi ,du: aɪm ə ,tju:tə	2. Tell me, who're you. – I'm Hugh Duke. What d'ye do? – I am a tutor.
3. 'lu: 'kɑ:nt 'seɪ 'bu: tə ə ,gu:s	3. Lou can't say boo to a goose.
4. 'dʒʌnt ju bi 'tu: ,su:n	4. Don't you be too soon.
5. ɪt wɪl 'du: 'bjʊ:tɪfʊli	5. It will do beautifully.
6. ju 'gru: 'tu: 'bɪg fə jə 'bu:ts	6. You grew too big for your boots.
7. ɪt 'lʊks ,gʊd	7. It 'looks ,good.
8. ðə 'kʊk 'tʊk ə 'gʊd ,lʊk ət ə ,kʊkəri bʊk	8. The cook took a good look at the cookery book.
9. 'hʊld jə 'hed 'haɪ	9. Hold your head high.
10. 'hæpɪ ,hɒlɪdeɪ	10. Happy holiday!
11. hi ɪz əz 'hʌŋgrɪ əz ə ,hʌntə	11. He is as hungry as a hunter.
12. hæv 'hɒrɪd əv hɪm	12. How horrid of him!
13. ,lʊk æt mi	
14. 'meɪk ,su:p fɔ: hɪm	13. Look at me.
15. ,kʊk wɪð əs	14. Make soup for him.
16. 'pʊt ðə ,bʊk ɪn ɪt	15. Cook with us.
17. 'dʒʌnt ,du: ɪt tu: ðəm	16. Put the book in it.
18. wi hæv ,sku:lz ,ɪnstɪtju:ts ənd ju:nɪz ɪn ðə sɪtɪ	17. Don't do it to them.
	18. We have schools, institutes and unis in the city

Задания

1. Образуйте сложные существительные, объединяя следующие пары слов.
class, room; work, book; house, wife; news, paper; text, book; home, land; mother, country

2. Дайте краткие утвердительные или отрицательные ответы на следующие вопросы.
1. Is your father a painter? 2. Are your friends students? 3. Is your mother a housewife?
4. Is it a small room? 5. Are you sitting by the window?

3. Закончите вопросы к данным предложениям.

1. Ben is her brother. Who ...? 2. This man is Tom Jones. Who ...? 3. His daughter is a dentist. What .. ? 4. Her uncle is an architect. Whose ...? 5. She is quite well. How ...?
6. This table is small. Which ...? 7. This is a new school. What ...?

4. Попросите друг друга посчитать от 1 до 9, от 13 до 19, от 8 до 12; до 7, до 11, до 20.

5. Напишите предложения в транскрипции; обозначьте мелодию и ударения.

1. Hello! How are you? 2. What's the news? 3. I'm fine, thanks. 4. What do you do for a living? 5. Look at the photos. Look at them. 6. Sing for Meg. Sing for her.

LESSON 9

Фонема [iə] – дифтонг; ядро дифтонга – нелабиализованный гласный [i] переднего отодвинутого назад ряда высокого подъема широкой разновидности.

Дифтонг заканчивается скольжением в направлении [ə]; губы слегка растянуты. Следует помнить, что предшествующий согласный не смягчается.

Упражнение 92					
iə	ear	dɪə	dear	'θɪətə	theatre
nɪə	near	sfiə	sphere	'θɪəri	theory
hiə	hear	ə'piə	appear	'riəli	really
klɪə	clear	'wiəri	weary	'niəli	nearly
Упражнение 93					
[i:] – [ɪ] – [iə]					
fi:t – fit – fiə			feet – fit – fear		
bi:t – bit – biə			beat – bit – beer		
ti: – tip – tiə			tea – tip – tear		

Фонема [ɛə] – дифтонг, ядром которого является нелабиализованный гласный [ɛ] переднего ряда среднего подъема широкой разновидности.

При произнесении [ɛə] язык выдвинут вперед, и средняя спинка поднята к твердому нёбу, но меньше, чем при [e]. Заканчивается дифтонг скольжением в направлении [ə].

Упражнение 94			
ɛə	air	'fɛəri	fairy
kɛə	care	tʃɛə	chair
wɛə	where	tə pri'peə	to prepare
hɛə	hair	'peərənts	parents
ðɛə	there		
Упражнение 95			
[e] – [ɛə] – [æ]			
pet – peə – pæt		pet – pair – pat	
bed – beə – bæd		bed – bear – bad	
'merɪ – 'mɛəri – 'mæri		merry – Mary – marry	
Упражнение 96			
[ɪə] – [ɛə]			
fɪə – feə	fear – fair	stiə – steə	steer – stair
miə – meə	mere – mare	tʃiə – tʃɛə	cheer – chair
diə – deə	dear – dare	hiə – heə	here – hair

Фонема [z:] – долгий нелабиализованный монофтонг смешанного ряда среднего подъема узкой разновидности.

При произнесении [z:] вся спинка языка, включая его кончик, равномерно приподнята и лежит максимально плоско в полости рта. Кончик языка касается основания нижних зубов. Напряженные губы слегка растянуты, чуть обнажают зубы.

Упражнение 97					
z:n	earn	'z:lɪ	early	bz:	bur
z:θ	earth	jz:	year	s3:	sir

z:k	irk	f3:	fur	h3:	her
Упражнение 98					
g3:l	girl	tʃ3:tʃ	church	's3:kl	circle
k3:l	curl	'dʒ3:mən	German	t3:n	turn
d3:t	dirt	'm3:tl	myrtle	θ3:d	third
v3:b	verb	t3:m	term	'θ3:tɪ	thirty
f3:st	first	l3:n	learn	'θ3:'ti:n	thirteen

Reading material	
[ɪə] [εə] [3:] fall rise	
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. `s3:tənli ,s3: 2. ðeɪ prɪ'f3: tə 'w3:k ɪn `t3:n 3. ɪts ən '3:lɪ ,b3:d ðət 'kætʃɪz ðə ,w3:m 4. 'mεəri 'wεəz 'feə ,heə 5. ɪts `leɪt tə 'teə jə ,heə 6. ɪts `blæk `waɪt 7. hɪz ʃ'hænsəm 8. ʃɪz 'veri ʃ'kleɪvə 9. 'maɪnd ðə ʃ'steɪp 10. 3v `ðεəz ,təm 11. `s3v ,sɔ:ri 12. `meni ,θæŋks 'fred 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Certainly, sir. 2. They prefer to work in turn. 3. It's an early bird that catches the worm. 4. Mary wears fair hair. 5. It's late to tear your hair. 6. It's black. – White. 7. He's handsome. 8. She's very clever. 9. Mind the step! 10. Oh, there's Tom. 11. So sorry. 12. Many thanks, Fred.

Задания

1. Возразите одним словом, используя нисходяще-восходящий тон.

1. This room is large. 2. There are three windows in this room. 3. You learn French. 4. It's summer now. 5. It's Sunday today. 6. You are American. 7. You are thirteen. 8. It's five o'clock.

2. Прочитайте предложения, используя составной тон «падение + подъем».

1. Don't translate this text in writing. 2. Sorry to hear that. 3. Nobody is absent today. 3. Oh, here's my bus. 4. Excuse me, are you twenty-one? – Certainly not!

3. Дайте отрицательную форму повелительного наклонения по образцу.

Образец: I'll go home. – 'Oh no, | `don't .go home.

1. I'll call her today. 2. I'll correct his mistakes. 3. I'll take this job. 4. I'll do it myself. 5. I'll put the web tablet on that desk. 6. I'll tell them about it.

4. Напишите предложения в транскрипции; обозначьте мелодию и ударения; отработайте их слитное чтение, используя Fall Rise.

1. You are busy on Tuesday. – Thursday! 2. Mind your English! 3. Look out! 4. Excuse me, are you Russian? – Certainly. 5. Don't close the door, please. 6. Thank you for inviting me! 7. I'm so sorry! – Never mind.

LESSON 10

Упражнение 99 [e] – [ɜ:] – [ɔ:]		Упражнение 100 [i:] – [ɜ:] – [ɔ:]	
bed – bɜ:d – bɔ:d	bed – bird – board	si: – sɜ: – sɔ:	sea – sir – saw
ben – bɜ:n – bɔ:n	Ben – burn – born	fi: – fɜ: – fɔ:	fee – fir – four
ten – tɜ:n – tɔ:n	ten – turn – torn	bi: – bɜ: – bɔ:	be – bur – bore
hed – hɜ:d – hɔ:d	head – heard – horde	ʃi:t – ʃɜ:t – ʃɔ:t	sheet – shirt – short
Упражнение 101 [ɔ:] – [ɜ]			
pɔ:k – pɜk	pork – poke	kɔ:l – kɜl	call – coal
bɔ:t – bɜt	bought – boat	klɔ:z – klɜz	clause – close
kɔ:t – kɜt	court – coat	wɔ:l – wɜk	wall – woke

Сочетание согласного с [r]

Сочетание любого согласного с последующим [r] произносится максимально слитно.

Необходимо следить за тем, чтобы кончик языка не касался альвеол при произнесении звука [r].

В данных сочетаниях оба звука могут влиять на артикуляцию друг друга.

Так, если [r] предшествуют альвеолярные [t], [d], они становятся заальвеолярными: [treɪn, draɪ].

Если сонанту [r] предшествует глухой согласный, он приглушает начало [r]: [kraɪ, θru:].

Упражнение 102					
preɪz	praise	braɪt	bright	tri:	tree
treɪn	train	braʊn	brown	fri:	free
draɪ	dry	praʊd	proud	θri:	three
tru:	true	gri:n	green	grɑ:s	grass
θru:	through	'prɜnaʊn	pronoun	brɔ:d	broad
kraʊd	crowd	θred	thread	strɒŋ	strong
kru:	crew	frend	friend	strʌk	struck
'krɪsməs	Christmas	dres	dress	greɪ	gray
gru:p	group	'preznt	present	træm	tram
grɜv	grow	stres	stress	'brʌðə	brother
stri:t	street	'præktɪs	practice		

Сочетание дифтонга с гласным [ə]

Сочетания ['aɪə], ['eɪə], ['ɔɪə], ['aʊə], ['zʊə] двусложны, так как состоят из дифтонга и гласной фонемы [ə]. Следует помнить, что средний элемент сочетания (т. е. второй элемент дифтонга) произносится очень слабо.

Упражнение 103					
'faɪə	fire	'laɪən	lion	'taɪə	tyre

'haɪə	hire	'daɪəgræm	diagram	'traɪəmf	triumph
'aɪən	iron	paɪə'nɪə	pioneer	'daɪələg	dialogue
'kwaɪət	quiet	dɪ'zaɪə	desire		
'waɪə	wire	'taɪəd	tired		
Упражнение 104				Упражнение 105	
'paʊə	power	'taʊəl	towel	'greɪə	greyer
'flaʊə	flower	'vaʊəl	vowel	'pleɪə	player
'taʊə	tower	'aʊə	hour	'leɪə	layer
Упражнение 106			Упражнение 107		
'ləʊə	lower	dɪs'trɔɪə	destroyer		
'sləʊə	slower	ɪm'plɔɪə	employer		
'jeləʊə	yellower	ə'nɔɪəns	annoyance		
'wɪdʒə	widower				
Упражнение 108					
'speliŋ	spelling	'eniθɪŋ	anything		
'si:lɪŋ	ceiling	'nʌθɪŋ	nothing		
'blɒtɪŋ,peɪpə	blotting-paper	'i:vniŋ	evening		
'sʌmθɪŋ	something	'mɔ:nɪŋ	morning		

Глагол «have»

Глагол *have/has* в значении «иметь» обычно произносится без ударения, но не редуцируется в безударном положении и произносится [hæv]
I have a cat. aɪ hæv ə ,kæt ||

В сочетании *have got* глагол *have* безударный и редуцированный.

She has got a dog. ʃi hæz 'gɒt ə ,dɒg||

Глагол *have/has* произносится под ударением в кратких ответах и с частицей *not*.

Yes, he **has**. I **'haven't** seen him. She **'hasn't** got a car.

Reading material the verb have, high rise and rise fall	
1. aɪ hæv ə 'haʊs ɪn ðə ,kʌntri	1. I have a house in the country.
2. hi hæz ə ,hæmstə ,dʌznt hi	2. He has a hamster, doesn't he?
3. 'hæri hæz 'gɒt ə 'mædʒɪk ,wɒnd ,hæznt hi	3. Harry has got a magic wand, hasn't he?
4. 'hæz 'mɛəri 'gɒt ə ,brʌðə 'nɜ:v ʃi ,hæznt	4. Has Mary got a brother? –No, she hasn't.
5. ɪt 'ɪznt ,bæd 'nɒt 'bæd	5. It isn't bad. – Not bad?
6. hɪz 'neɪmz ,tɒməs 'wɒts hɪz neɪm	6. His name's Thomas. – What's his name?
7. aɪ hæv 'faɪv ,sɪstəz 'du: ju	7. I have five sisters. – Do you?
8. 'stɒp ,tɔ:kɪŋ 'stɒp 'tɔ:kɪŋ 'ɔ:l ,raɪt	8. Stop talking. – Stop talking? All right.
9. 'teɪk ,maɪ kɑ: ju ^ɑ: kaɪnd	9. Take my car. – You are kind!
10. 'gɜ:v ðeə ,naʊ ɪts's 'tu: ^z:lɪ	10. Go there now. – It's too early!
11. ʃi 'tʃeɪndʒd hə ,neɪm ^tʃeɪndʒd ɪt	11. She changed her name. – Changed it?!

Задания

1. Отработайте чтение следующих слов с нередуцированными гласными в безударном слоге.

diagram ['daɪəgræm]

telegram ['telɪgræm]

October [ɒk'tɒvə]

dialogue ['daɪəlɒg]

architect ['ɑ:kɪtekt]

November [nɒv'vembə]

prologue ['prɒlɒg]

blackboard ['blækbɔ:d]

continue [kən'tɪnju:]

2. Отработайте чтение следующих предложений.

1) 'Let's 'sing a ,song. – 'Sing a 'song? `Yes, | `let's.

2) 'What's the ,day to.day? – 'What 'day? It's `Sunday (Monday, `Tuesday, `Wednesday, `Thursday, `Friday, `Saturday).

3) 'What ,month is it .now? – 'What 'month? It's `January (February, `March, `April, `May, `June, Ju`ly, `August, Sep`tember, Oc`tober, No`vember, De`cember).

3. Ответьте на вопросы.

1. What are the spring (summer, autumn, winter) months? They are 2. What are the week days? They are 3. What is our day off? It is 4. What's the day today? It is 5. What month is it now? It is 6. What month is between January and March? It is 7. What month is between April and June? It is 8. What months are between July and October? They are 9. What day is after Monday? It is 10. What day is before Sunday? It is ...

4. Напишите предложения в транскрипции; обозначьте мелодию и ударения; отработайте их слитное чтение.

1. I have a family. 2. Jim has got a villa by the sea, hasn't he? 3. Do you have a brother?

4. Her name is Mary. – What's her name? 5. He has two wives. – Does he? 6. Go away now! – Go away? Never! 7. He changed his appearance. – Changed it! (Rise Fall)

LESSON 11 English Alphabet

Печатные буквы	Рукописные буквы	Название букв	Печатные буквы	Рукописные буквы	Название букв
-------------------	---------------------	------------------	-------------------	---------------------	------------------

A a	<i>A a</i>	[eɪ]	N n	<i>N n</i>	[en]
B b	<i>B b</i>	[bi:]	O o	<i>O o</i>	[ʊ]
C c	<i>C c</i>	[si:]	P p	<i>P p</i>	[pi:]
D d	<i>D d</i>	[di:]	Q q	<i>Q q</i>	[kju:]
E e	<i>E e</i>	[i:]	R r	<i>R r</i>	[a:]
F f	<i>F f</i>	[ef]	S s	<i>S s</i>	[es]
G g	<i>G g</i>	[dʒi:]	T t	<i>T t</i>	[ti:]
H h	<i>H h</i>	[eɪtʃ]	U u	<i>U u</i>	[ju:]
I i	<i>I i</i>	[aɪ]	V v	<i>V v</i>	[vi:]
J j	<i>J j</i>	[dʒeɪ]	W w	<i>W w</i>	['dʌblju:]
K k	<i>K k</i>	[keɪ]	X x	<i>X x</i>	[eks]
L l	<i>L l</i>	[el]	Y y	<i>Y y</i>	[waɪ]
M m	<i>M m</i>	[em]	Z z	<i>Z z</i>	[zed] / [zi:]

ABCDEF G – HIJKLMN OP – QRSTUV W (2) – XYZ – Now you see – How I know the ABC

ABCDEF G–HIJKLMN–OPQRSTU–VWXYZ (2) –ABCDE–FGHIJ–KLMNO–PQRST–UVW–XYZ

Упражнение 109			
ɜ: – wɜ:	er – were	wɜ:m	worm
ɜ:k – wɜ:k	irk – work	'wɜ:ðɪ	worthy
ɜ:θ – wɜ:θ	earth – worth	wɜ:d	word
		wɜ:ld	world
Упражнение 110			
θrɪl	thrill	klɒθ	cloth
θret	threat	'klɜ:ðz	clothes
'θɜ:stɪ	thirsty	'gæðə	gather
nɔ:θ	north	tə'geðə	together
'sʌðən	southern	'rɑ:ðə	rather
rɪðm	rhythm	'fɜ:ðə	further
Упражнение 111			
окончание множественного числа существительных после th произносится:			
[s] после краткого гласного, согласного и буквы r		[z] после долгого гласного или дифтонга	
mʌnθ – mʌnθs	months	pɑ:θ – pɑ:ðz	paths
depθ – depθs	depths	tru:θ – tru:ðz	truths
bɜ:θ – bɜ:θs	births	bɑ:θ – bɑ:ðz	baths
leŋθ – leŋθs	lengths	maʊθ – maʊðz	mouths
deθ – deθs	death		

Упражнение 112			
'sɪŋə	singer	'rɪŋɪŋ	ringing
'sɪŋɪŋ	singing	'brɪŋɪŋ	bringing

Упражнение 113			
ˌbrɪŋ ɪt	bring it	ˌsɪŋɪŋ ɪt	singing it
ˌsɪŋ ɪt	sing it	ˌbrɪŋɪŋ ɪt	bringing it
'kʌmɪŋ ɪn	coming in	'rɪŋɪŋ ʌp	ringing up
'gɔʊɪŋ ɔn	going on	'sɪŋɪŋ ə ˌsɒŋ	singing a song
'teɪkɪŋ ˌaʊt	taking out	ˌθɪŋkɪŋ əˌbaʊt	thinking about

В предложении двухударные числительные от 13 до 19 могут под влиянием ритма терять одно из ударений, например: The 'first of ˌJanuary, | 'nineteen 'forty-ˌsix.

Reading material (Level Tone)

1. →John | is a'way on `holiday.
2. As 'far as I can →see | it's im`possible.
3. Well the 'best of →luck | to `all of you.
4. 2. II – 1933 – The 'second of ˌFebruary | 'nineteen 'thirty-ˌthree.
5. 4. IV – 1912 – The 'fourth of ˌApril | 'nineteen ˌtwelve.
6. 5. V – 1905 – The 'fifth of ˌMay | 'nineteen 'o ˌfive
7. 6. VI – 1900 – The 'sixth of ˌJune | 'nineteen ˌhundred.

Dialogue 1

(G is a grandfather; A is Alice, his granddaughter)

- | | |
|--|--|
| G: 'Who's ˌthere? | A: It's `me - ˌAlice. |
| G: ˌOh! 'Who's 'that ˌwith you? | A: ˌJane's here ˌtoo. |
| G: 'Come ˌin, `both of ˌyou. | A: 'Ted and ˌJim are `also ˌwith us. ˌOh! `Here they ˌare! |
| G: 'Come ˌin! 'Come ˌin `all of ˌyou.
ˌNow 'what's the ˌmatter? | A: It's your `birthday grandfather. |
| G: `Why? 'So it ˌis! | A: `Happy ˌbirthday! |
| G: `Oh, `thank you! 'Thank you `all! | |

Dialogue 2

A: 'Where are my ,glasses?

B: They're 'somewhere over ,there.

'Look on the ,table.

A: They are 'not `on the table.

B: ,Well, | look ,under the table.

A: They are 'not `under the table.

B: 'Are they in your `book, | or in your ,chair?

A: 'No they are ,not! They are 'not ,here.

B: 'Then they're 'somewhere 'out in the `garden.

A: ,No. | They are 'somewhere in this ,room.

B: 'In your ,pocket! `That's where they ,are.

A: 'No, they ,aren't. ,Oh! ,Here they are!

B: `Where? On `your ,nose! ,Well!

Задания

1. Подготовьте быстрое чтение предложений.

'George is a ,student.

'This is a ,story.

He is a ,good .student.

It is a ,short story.

He is a ,very .good .student.

It is a ,very short .story.

'Jack is 'not a ,good .student.

'That's 'not a ,short story.

He is 'not a ,very good .student.

It's a ,long story.

2. Поставьте словосочетания во множественное число

e.g. This depth – these depths. Look at this text. – Look at these texts.

that man
that mouth
that month
this length
this death
this path

Look at this

woman
mouse
tooth
child
goose
foot

3. Произнесите порядковые числительные.

24-й, 30-й, 14-й, 40-й, 60-й, 70-й, 9-й, 90-й, 50-й, 58-й, 80-й, 100-й, 175-й, 261-й, 1000-й;

4. Произнесите следующие даты по-английски.

5.IV-1947; 13.V - 1896; 1.IX - 1973; 20.XII - 1701; 28.II - 1900; 12. VII – 1925.

5. Напишите предложения в транскрипции; обозначьте мелодию и ударения; отработайте их слитное чтение, используя Level Tone.

1. Frankly speaking, I don't know him. 2. Maybe you are wrong ... 3. It's a small world ...



Betty Botter

'Betty , Botter | 'bought some , butter.
But 'Betty →said, 'This 'butter's , bitter.
If I 'put that in my , batter
It will 'make my , batter bitter.
'But a 'bit of 'better , butter
Will 'make my 'batter , better.'
'So she →bought a | 'bit of , butter,
'Better than her 'bitter , butter,
And she 'put it in her , batter
'And the , batter | 'wasn't , bitter.
'So it was , better,
'Betty , Botter | 'bought a 'bit of 'better , butter.

Peter Piper

'Peter 'Piper 'picked a 'peck of 'pickled , pepper.
A 'peck of 'pickled , pepper
Peter 'Piper , picked.
'If , Peter , Piper , picked
a , peck of , pickled , pepper
'Where `is the , peck of , pickled , pepper
that 'Peter 'Piper , picked?

Tutor

A , tutor | who 'tooted a , flute
'Tried to , tutor | 'two 'tooters to , toot.
'Said the 'two to the , tutor,
"Is it 'harder to , toot
or to , tutor | 'two 'tooters to , toot?"

The Moon

'I 'see the , moon,
And the 'moon 'sees , me.
'God 'bless the →moon
And 'God 'bless , me.

Prayer

, Now, I 'lay me 'down to , sleep.
I , pray the Lord | my , soul to keep.
And 'if I , die | be'fore I , wake
I , pray the Lord | my , soul to take.
And if I , live | for 'other , days
I , pray the Lord | to 'guide my , ways.

Peter

'Peter, 'Peter, `pumpkin , eater,
'Had a , wife and 'couldn't , keep her.
He 'put her in a 'pumpkin , shell
And 'there he 'kept her 'very , well.

Little Man

There 'was a little , man | and he' had a little , gun.
And the 'bullets were 'made of , lead, , lead, , lead.
He 'went to the , brook | and he 'shot a little , duck
'Right in the 'middle of the , head, , head, , head.

Miss Polly

Miss 'Polly had a , dolly
Who was , sick, , sick, , sick.
She 'called for the , doctor
To 'come , quick, , quick, , quick.
The 'doctor , came
With his 'bag and , hat
And 'rapped at the , door
With a 'rat-a-'tat- , tat.
He 'looked at the , dolly
And he 'shook his , head.
He , said, Miss , Polly,
'Put her 'straight to , bed!
He 'wrote on the , paper
For a , pill, , pill, , pill.
I'll be 'back in the , morning
With my , bill, , bill, , bill.

LESSON 12

Интонация обращения

Если слова обращения стоят **в начале предложения**, они бывают **ударными и выделяются в отдельную синтагму**, которая может произноситься с низким нисходящим тоном, с низким восходящим тоном, с ровным тоном или с нисходяще-восходящим тоном; в последнем случае слова обращения несут большую семантическую нагрузку:

Bob, | 'go to bed.

Michael, | 'go to the blackboard.

Brendon, | 'what's wrong with my lamp? → John, | you're late again.

В **середине предложения** слова обращения несут меньшую семантическую нагрузку, поэтому, как правило, они **не имеют ударения** или остаются **частично ударными; они не выделяются в отдельную синтагму, а являются лишь частью её**:

Now, Peter, | 'go on reading. Yes, mum, | I'm ready.

Слова обращения, стоящие в **конце предложения**, не выделяются в отдельную синтагму и могут **иметь полное или частичное ударение** или **быть безударными**, в зависимости от степени их семантической значимости:

Thank you, Helen. Spell this word, Michael.

Интонация приветствий

В английском языке выражения приветствия могут произноситься с разными мелодическими тонами. Официально звучит приветствие, произнесенное с низким нисходящим тоном:

Good morning.

Но это же приветствие можно произнести и с низким восходящим тоном, и с нисходяще-восходящим тоном, в зависимости от ситуации или настроения говорящего:

Good morning.

Good morning.

В конце разговора оба говорящих произносят слова прощания с повышением тона. Например:

Have a nice day!

Good-bye.

Mark the stress and intonation and read the sentences.

Ex. 1

1. Peter, are you at home?
2. Let's go shopping now, Mummy.
3. Good evening, gentlemen.
4. Margaret, make lunch for us.
5. Mary, where are my glasses?
6. Good morning, ladies and gentlemen.
7. Please Granny, make tea for me.
8. Hello, children. Let's begin the lesson.
9. Mummy, buy me this toy please.
10. Why are you at home, Johnny?
11. Mummy, what's the time? – It's five o'clock.
12. Johnny, say good-bye to Granny.
13. Hello, dear friends! Let's begin our party.



Ex. 2

1. Are they happy together? Why are they laughing?
2. How old are you? Have you got any close friends here?
3. What is your brother's name? Does he speak American English?
4. Is Kelly at work on Saturdays? What does she do?
5. What kind of films do they prefer? Are they fond of thrillers?
6. Is that John? Where does he live?

**Ex. 3**

1. Does he have a puppy or a kitten?
2. Is his father a journalist or a lawyer?
3. Does he have sheep or goats on his farm?
4. Does your father speak German or French?
5. Is Mary twelve or thirteen?
6. Are you Irish or English?

**Ex. 4**

1. Nobody is happy about it, are they? (sure)
2. Mike has got a lot of friends, hasn't he? (not sure)
3. Everybody is present today, aren't they? (sure)
4. Nobody is absent from the lesson, are they? (not sure)
5. Those are German magazines, aren't they? (sure)
6. Peter is never late for his classes, is he? (not sure)

- No, they aren't.
- Yes, he has.
- Yes, they are.
- No, they aren't
- Yes, they are.
- No, he isn't.

Ex. 5

1. I have four sisters. - Four?!
2. We have five cars. - Five?!
3. My Granny has no teeth. - No teeth?!
4. She has never married. - Never?!
5. Her grandfather is ninety-five. - Ninety-five?!

**Ex. 6**

1. He is a teacher. - Interpreter!
2. Mary is a teacher of German. - English!
3. London is on the Nile. - The Thames!
4. It's Saturday today. - Sunday!
5. Tom is free tonight. - Busy!
6. The film is great. - Boring!

**Ex. 7**

1. They have tigers, lions, elephants and giraffes in the zoo.
2. They have cows, horses, hens and geese in the country.
3. He was a farmer, a clerk, a waiter and a policeman.
5. There is a supermarket, a post office, a chemist's and a café in this street.
6. He has his English classes on Monday, Wednesday, Thursday and Friday.

TONGUE TWISTERS

Tongue twisters are the words put together that are difficult to say without making a mistake.

1. Never trouble trouble | until trouble troubles you.

It only doubles trouble | and troubles others too.

2. While we were walking, we were watching window washers

wash Washington's windows | with warm washing water.

3. Can you imagine | an imaginary menagerie manager |

imagining managing an imaginary menagerie?

4. Raleigh, are you already ready? Are you really ready, Raleigh?

Raleigh's really ready, Riley. Riley, Raleigh's already ready!

5. The storm starts | when the drops start dropping.

When the drops stop dropping, then the storm starts stopping.

6. To begin to toboggan, first buy a toboggan.

But do not buy too big a toboggan!

Too big a toboggan | is too big a toboggan | to buy to begin to toboggan.

7. I wish to wish the wish you wish to wish.

But if you wish the wish the witch wishes, I won't wish the wish you wish to wish!

8. A twister of twists | once twisted a twist.

And the twist that he twisted | was a three twisted twist.

Now in twisting this twist |if a twist should untwist,

The twist that untwisted | would untwist the twist!

9. Little lady Lily | lost her lovely locket. Lucky little Lucy | found the lovely locket.

Lovely little locket | lay in Lucy's pocket. Lazy little Lucy | lost the lovely locket!

10. Your Bob | owes our Bob a bob.

If your Bob doesn't give our Bob | the bob your Bob owes our Bob,

Our Bob will give your Bob | a bob in the eye!

11. Our Joe wants to know | if your Joe will lend our Joe | your Joe's banjo.

If your Joe doesn't lend our Joe your Joe's banjo,

Our Joe won't lend your Joe | our Joe's banjo | when our Joe has a banjo!

12. I know a boy named Tate | who dined with his girl at eight eight.

I'm unable to state | what Tate ate at eight eight | or what Tate's tête-à-tête ate at eight eight.

13. William always wears | a very warm woollen vest in winter.

Victor however | never wears woollen underwear | even in the Wild West.

14. Oh, the sadness of her sadness when she's sad!
Oh, the gladness of her gladness when she's glad!
But the sadness of her sadness | and the gladness of her gladness
Are nothing like her madness when she's mad!

15. We have two ducks. One blue, one black.
And when our blue duck goes 'quack-quack', our black duck quickly quack-quacks back.
The quacks Blue quacks | make her quite a quacker. But Black is a quicker quacker-backer!

16. I thought a thought. But the thought I thought | wasn't the thought I thought I thought.
If the thought I thought I thought | had been the thought I thought,
I wouldn't have thought so much.

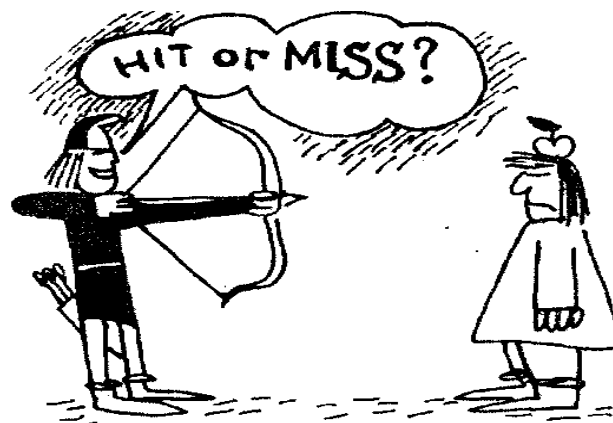
17. I saw a saw in Arkansas | that would out saw any saw I ever saw.
But if you've got a saw | that could out saw the saw I saw in Arkansas
I'd like to see your saw!

18. Bed spreaders spread spreads on beds.
Bread spreaders spread butter on breads.
And that bed spreader | better watch out how he is spreading
Or that bread spreader's | sure going to butter his bedding!

19. How many cookies could a good cook cook | if a good cook could cook cookies?
A good cook could cook as many cookies | as a good cook who could cook cookies.

20. If a doctor is doctoring a doctor, does the doctor doing the doctoring | have to doctor the
doctor | the way the doctor being doctored wants to be doctored | or does the doctor doctor the
way he usually doctors.

21. Bobby Bippy bought a bat, Bobby Bippy bought a ball.
With his bat Bob banged the ball, banged it bump against the wall.
But so boldly Bobby banged it | that he burst his rubber ball.
Now to drown his many troubles | Bobby Bippy is blowing bubbles.



RHYTHM PRACTICE

1. 'Yes, it's a 'fine , thing.
'Yes, it's a 'fine 'thing to , sing.
'Yes, it's a 'fine 'thing to 'sing in , spring.
'Yes, it's a 'fine 'thing to 'sing in 'spring in the , field.
2. She 'sells , eggs.
She 'sells 'hen's , eggs.
She 'sells the 'best 'hen's , eggs.
She 'sells the 'best 'hen's 'eggs 'every , Wednesday.
3. He was 'able to 'beat , Bill.
He was 'able to 'beat 'Bill at , billiards.
He was 'able to 'beat 'Bill at 'billiards and , baseball.
'Ben was 'able to 'beat 'Bill at 'billiards and , baseball.
4. You must , come.
You must 'come to , supper.
You must 'come to 'supper with , Russ.
You must 'come to 'supper with 'Russ and 'join in the , fun.
5. I 'shan't , dance.
I 'shan't 'dance at the 'garden , party.
I 'shan't 'dance at the 'garden 'party on my 'aunt's , farm.
I 'shan't 'dance at the 'garden 'party on my 'aunt's 'farm in , March.
6. They 'painted the , table.
They 'painted the 'table pale , grey.
They 'painted the 'table pale 'grey the other , day.
They 'painted the 'table pale 'grey the other 'day to 'save it from , stains.
7. Very , well, William.
Very , well, William, but 'why were you , worried?
Very , well, William, but 'why were you 'worried a , bout it?
Very , well, William, but 'why were you so 'very much 'worried a , bout it?
8. 'That's the 'man who had a , hat on.
'That's the very 'man who had a , hat on.
'That's the very 'man who had a 'felt hat , on.
'That's the very 'man who had a 'felt hat 'on when it was , hot.
9. I'd 'choose blue , shoes.
I'd 'choose blue 'shoes to take to , school.
I'd 'choose blue 'shoes to take to 'school to , use.
I'd 'choose blue 'shoes to take to 'school to 'use if I were , you.
10. 'All their 'daughters are , tall.
'All the four 'daughters are very , tall.
'All the four 'daughters of Mr. 'Crawl are very , tall.
'All the four 'daughters of Mr. 'Crawl are very 'tall and , talkative.
11. 'Where's the , watch?
'Where's the 'watch I 'put in my , pocket?
'Where's the 'watch I 'put in my 'pocket to 'take to the , shop?
'Where's the 'watch I 'put in my 'pocket to 'take to the 'shop be'cause it has , stopped?

12. How?
 'How have you 'found out?
 'How have you 'found out about it?
 'How have you 'found out about that row?
13. The 'nurse told 'nursery tales.
 'Nightly the 'nurse told 'nursery tales.
 'Nightly the 'nurse told 'nursery tales about gnomes.
 'Nightly the 'nurse told 'nursery tales about gnomes to the twins.
14. The 'end of the 'pier is near.
 The 'end of the 'pier is near I fear.
 The 'end of the 'pier is near I fear | and the 'mist hasn't cleared.
15. 'That's a 'rare pair.
 'That's a 'rare pair for Mary.
 'That's a 'rare pair for 'Mary to wear.
 'That's a 'rare pair for 'Mary to wear every day.
16. I was a,nnoyed.
 I was a'nnoyed at the boy.
 I was a'nnoyed at the 'boy for 'spoiling the toy.
 I was a'nnoyed at the 'boy for 'spoiling the 'toy which be'longed to Joy.
17. I'm 'sure that 'Muriel will be cured.
 I'm 'sure that poor 'Muriel will be cured.
 I'm 'sure that poor 'Muriel will 'soon be cured.
 I'm 'sure that poor 'Muriel 'injured at the 'tournament will 'soon be cured.
18. He is swimming.
 He is 'swimming in the river.
 He is 'swimming in the 'river with Tim.
 He is 'swimming in the 'river with 'Tim and his 'brother Jim.
19. Have a 'look at the book
 Have a 'look at this 'wonderful book
 Have a 'look at this 'wonderful 'book which I 'found near the brook.
 Have a 'look at this 'wonderful 'book which I 'found near the 'brook and 'gave to the cook
20. We ag,reed.
 We ag,reed to go.
 We ag,reed to 'go there to,gether.
 We ag,reed to 'go there to'gether and 'have a good time.
21. 'Hugh has 'hunted the house.
 But 'Hugh has 'hunted the whole house.
 But 'Hugh has 'hunted the whole 'house for his hat.
 But 'Hugh has 'hunted the whole 'house for his 'horrible hat.
22. I in,sist.
 I in'sist that you stay.
 I in'sist that you 'stay with us.
 I 'can't a'ccept your e,xcuse, I in'sist that you 'stay with us.

ORIGINAL CONVERSATIONAL ENGLISH IN DIALOGUES

Dialogue 1. Formal Introductions

Margaret: Mr. Wilson, I'd like you to meet Dr. Edward Smith.
Mr. Wilson: How do you do, Dr. Smith.
Dr. Smith: How do you do.
Margaret: Dr. Smith is an economist. He's just finished writing a book on international trade.
Mr. Wilson: Oh? That's my field, too. I work for the United Nations.
Dr. Smith: In the Development Program, by any chance?
Mr. Wilson: Yes. How did you guess?
Dr. Smith: I've read your articles on technical assistance. They're excellent.

Dialogue 2. Informal Introductions

Jim: Who's the tall girl next to Barbara?
Charles: That's Mary Anderson. Didn't you meet her at Steve's party?
Jim: No, I wasn't at Steve's party.
Charles: Oh! Then let me introduce you to her now... Mary, this is my cousin Jim.
Mary: Hi, Jim. Glad to meet you.
Jim: I'm glad to meet you. Can't we sit down somewhere and talk?
Mary: Sure, let's sit over there.

Dialogue 3. Coincidences

Allen: Haven't I seen you somewhere before?
Julia: No, I don't think so!
Allen: But your face is so familiar. Wait a second ... I know We were on the same flight to New York last month.
Julia: Oh yes! Now I remember. What a coincidence to meet in San Francisco!
Allen: →Well, you know what they →say – it's a small →world.

Dialogue 4. Time

Margaret: What time is it?
Tom: It's a quarter to five.
Margaret: Aren't we supposed to be at Jim's house by five o'clock?
Tom: Five or five-thirty. He said it didn't make any difference.
Margaret: Then maybe we could pick your suit up at the cleaner's.
Tom: Sure, we have plenty of time.

Dialogue 5. Birthdays

Patty: How old are you?
Susan: Nine... but I'll be ten on May the sixteenth.
Patty: I'm older than you! I'll be ten on May the fourteenth.
Susan: Are you going to have a birthday party?
Patty: Maybe. I'll have to ask my mother.

Dialogue 6. Recipes

Shirley: 'Would you 'like some 'cookies? I've just 'made them.

Louise: 'Thank you. 'Yes, I 'would.

Shirley: 'These are 'chocolate and 'those are 'almond-flavoured.

Louise: I →guess, I'll 'try a 'chocolate one 'first. 'Mmmm... 'this is de'licious.

'Are they 'hard to 'make?

Shirley: 'No, they are 'really quite 'easy. 'Wait a 'minute. I've 'got the 'recipe right 'here.

'See ... 'These are the in'gredients, and 'then you just 'follow the di'rections.

Louise: 'That 'does look easy. I 'think I'll 'make some to'night.

Dialogue 7. Weather

Karen: 'Brrrr! I'm 'cold. 'I 'thought it was sup'posed to 'get 'warmer today.

Ed: 'Yeah! 'I 'thought 'so 'too. 'That's what the 'weatherman 'said

Karen: It 'must be the 'wind that 'makes it so 'cold. I'm 'freezing!

Ed: 'Me 'too. 'Let's 'go in'side.

Karen: 'O 'K It's 'no 'fun 'standing out 'here 'even if the 'sun 'is shining.

Dialogue 8. Weddings

Bonnie: 'Guess 'what! 'Paul and 'Susan are en'gaged!

Janice: 'Really? 'When did 'that happen?

Bonnie: A 'week ago. They 'met 'last 'summer – and 'now, 'just 'think... they'll be 'married 'soon.

Janice: 'Have they 'set a 'date for the 'wedding?

Bonnie: 'No, 'not 'yet. But 'Susan 'said they'd 'like to 'get 'married in No'vember or De'cember.

'Then they'll 'go to Ha'waii for their 'honeymoon.

Dialogue 9. Animals

Connie: 'That's a 'beautiful 'cat. I 'wonder who it be'longs to.

Gary: It be'longs to the 'Browns. They 'live a'cross the 'street from 'us.

They have 'three 'cats, 'two 'dogs and a ca'nary.

Connie: They 'certainly must 'like 'pets. But 'how do 'all those 'animals 'get a'long with 'each 'other?

Gary: 'Don't 'ask 'me. 'Ask the 'Browns.

Dialogue 10. Safety

Peter: 'There's the 'shoe store we've been 'looking 'for. It's 'just a'cross the 'street.

Gail: 'Wait! You 'can't 'cross the 'street in the 'middle of the 'block.

You 'have to 'cross at the 'corner.

Peter: 'Oh, 'come 'on. 'Let's 'go a'cross 'here.

Gail: 'Look 'out! You 'nearly 'got 'hit by that 'car.

'Now do you 'see 'why you should 'cross at the 'corner.

Peter: I 'guess, you are 'right. I'll 'be 'more 'careful 'after 'this.

Dialogue 11. Happiness

Linda: `You .look .happy to ,day!
Frank: I ,am happy! I've 'just 'heard I 'passed my ,Physics exam.
Linda: Con'gratu'lations! I'm 'glad `somebody's ,happy.
Frank: ,Why? 'What's the ,matter?
Linda: 'Oh! I'm 'just ,worried I guess. I 'have to 'take my `History exam .next ,week.

Dialogue 12. Transportation.

Joyce: 'Shall we 'take a ,taxi or a ,bus to the .meeting?
Bill: We'd 'better 'take a ,bus. It's 'almost im,possible to 'find a ,taxi 'during `rush ,hour.
Joyce: 'Isn't that a ,bus stop over ,there?
Bill: ,Yes ... ,Oh, ,oh! 'There's a 'bus ,now. We'll 'have to 'run to `catch ,it.
Joyce: 'O ,K ... 'Oh, ,no! We 'just ,missed it!
Bill: `Never ,mind. There'll be a'nother one in .ten ,minutes.

Dialogue 13. Mistakes

Bruce: 'Where did ,John go?
Laura: He 'went to the ,drugstore.
Bruce: To the 'bookstore?
Laura: ,No, I 'said he 'went to the ,drugstore.
Bruce: ,Oh, I 'misunder,stood you. I 'thought you 'said ,bookstore.
Laura: 'How could you 'make a mis'take like ,that? 'Weren't you 'paying at'tention?

Dialogue 14. Musical Instruments

Anne: ,Listen! 'Somebody's 'playing the ,piano.
Betty: ,Yeah! It 'sounds ,nice, ,doesn't it? I 'wish `I could ,play a .musical ,instrument.
Anne: 'Don't you 'play the vio,lin?
Betty: ,No, but my ,sister does. 'Actually she is 'pretty ,good at it.
Anne: 'I 'took `flute lessons for a .couple of ,years, but I 'never 'learnt to `play .very ,well.
I 'guess, I 'don't have `any .musical ,talent.
Betty: 'Oh, ,that's .not .true. You ,sing 'very ,well. 'I 'can't 'even 'do ,that.

Dialogue 15. Effort

Debbie: 'I 'give ,up. I 'simply 'can't 'learn ,French.
Helen: 'Why do you 'say ,that? 'I 'think you are 'making a ,lot of .progress.
Debbie: 'No, I'm ,not. I 'try and ,try and I `still .can't .speak it .very ,well.
Helen: 'Learning ,any language 'takes a 'lot of ,effort. But ,don't .give .up.
'Why 'don't we 'practise these 'dialogues to,gether.
Debbie: 'Good i,dea. 'That 'just 'might ,help.

READING PRACTICE

TEXT 1

One area of the world is particularly prone to earthquakes. The Ring of Fire, as it is known, circles the Pacific Ocean. It is where some of the largest earthquakes occur.

The Ring of Fire affects countries in North and South America and in Asia. Because it is on the border of an ocean, large waves of water, or tsunamis, are often triggered by the quakes. It's a double disaster. Homes are destroyed where the earthquake strikes. People living in coastal regions that receive the waves are harmed also.

Although it is difficult to predict earthquakes, the large waves can be predicted. A warning system is in place in many countries along the Ring of Fire. This gives residents some time to evacuate. Unfortunately, though, the waves travel extremely fast. Whoever must leave the area only has a short amount of time.

TEXT 2

Dams are large concrete structures that are built across the middle of rivers. Their purpose is to hold back water, which often creates a lake behind the dam. They also control the flow of the river and produce electricity.

Dams can be beneficial because they can provide a stable source of water. This water can be used for farming, for drinking, and even as a habitat for fish and other animals. Additionally, machines are built into the dam that generate power. This power is created when the force of the water moves through the dam, causing a turbine to spin and create an electric current.

On the other hand, dams can cause problems for people who live behind them. Because a dam causes a river to swell and create a lake, anyone living near the river will have to relocate. Entire villages have had to be moved because of this reason.

TEXT 3

Many insects have the ability to taste things with different parts of their bodies. They have sensors in these body parts, usually in the form of tiny hairs. These act similarly to the taste buds in our tongues.

A fly is one type of insect that can taste things just by landing on it. This is because it has taste receptors in the hairs on its feet. In fact, when a fly rests upon a surface that is some kind of food, the fly's mouth will open automatically as a reflex action. Another insect that can perform the same function is a butterfly.

Some insects can taste things using the thin hairs on their antennae. Honey bees and wasps are two such creatures. In the same way that they taste things, they can also use these hairs to smell odours that pass through the air.

TEXT 4

Astronomers are constantly discovering new things in our solar system. Some of the newest findings involve water sources. These findings are of tremendous importance, as water is the key element for life to exist.

Some of these water sources have recently been found on objects that we've already learned quite a lot about. The moon, to which man has actually travelled, seems to have frozen pools of water present in a few areas. Mars, on which probes have landed on the surface, is believed to have enormous amounts of frozen water in its ice caps.

Other objects further from Earth are believed to contain water. Some of the moons of Jupiter and Saturn are thought to have very large, undersea lakes deep below their icy surface. Whether or not life exists in these places is yet to be revealed.

TEXT 5

Robots are beginning to enter the field of surgical medicine, even if only for a limited number of operations. There are great advantages to using robots in surgery.

Firstly, robots are useful for extremely delicate moves during an operation. A human surgeon's hand, while skilful, has only limited capability of making a precise incision or manoeuvre. A robot also allows operations to be carried out on a much smaller scale, leading to better results and less stress on the patient's body.

Secondly, robots do not suffer from fatigue. A machine can perform a particular operation numerous times and never tire. Surgeons, on the other hand, must complete their tasks before they lose their energy. Of course, robots cannot replace a human surgeon entirely, but they can provide assistance for specific techniques.

TEXT 6

Solar panels are a commonly used form of technology which harness power from the sun. They work by converting sunlight into electricity. However, most solar panels only convert about 20% of the incoming energy. This is because they can only capture certain wavelengths of light.

Advances are being made in the field of solar panel technology. Recently a solar cell was manufactured that can convert almost 45% of the rays' energy. The panel consists of different layers of material, and each layer can absorb a certain wavelength of light.

The panels also have lenses, which magnify the power of the sunlight. As the sunlight passes through the layers, it strikes conductors, which create electrical fields. These electrical fields produce a current of electricity.

TEXT 7

In medical schools, doctors use plastic models to teach students the specific names and functions of body parts. But one professor in the USA is using hands sculpted by a 19th century French sculptor.

The artist was very passionate about the human form. He created highly detailed hands from bronze. In addition to that, he was curious about medical conditions that affected hands. Because of this, he actually sculpted sets of hands that had been deformed by these conditions. Doctors can show these hands to students and test students' abilities to recognise the problems.

A computer program allows students to see where bones and blood vessels would be situated in the hands. The method is very useful for teaching diseases of the hand. It also doubles as a rich experience in fine art.

TEXT 8

A new study shows that children can remember faces they saw when they were just twelve months old. The two-and-a-half year study was conducted by two male scientists of equal age.

It was done by a very simple method. Families with one-year-olds brought their children to meet one of the researchers. He spent forty-five minutes with the children. They did not meet his colleague. Then, when the children were three and a half, they revisited the research facility. They were shown photographs of both men. The children focused on the man they didn't recognise. Their tendency was to study the stranger's face, as children often do when they meet new people.

The children couldn't say how they knew the familiar face.

The study, however, demonstrated that even as babies, our memories function remarkably well.

TEXT 9

A visit to the beach might mean building a sand castle. Can you imagine drawing a castle on a single grain of sand? An artist and a scientific researcher have joined forces to do just that.

The artist first used a 100-year-old device to reflect images of real castles onto paper. He then traced these images onto the paper and sent them to the researcher. The researcher used technology similar to microscopic lasers to copy each image onto a grain of sand. The process took four years of trial and error to complete. The specific type of instrument could draw an extremely thin line. In fact, the line was only a tiny fraction of the width of a human hair.

With the sand grain etched, the artist photographed the grain and enlarged the image. The technological marvel is a sight to see, and the applications for it are endless.

TEXT 10

It takes a great deal of effort to manage a farm. The basics may be easy to learn but some aspects of farming are quite complex. A certain level of farming education is therefore necessary. For instance, some farmers don't always know how to use fertilizer correctly.

Fertilizer helps plants grow and produce more fruit and vegetables. Too much of it, however, doesn't help the plant and causes pollution.

When farmers water their crops, some of that water runs off. This contains some of the fertilizer. It ends up in lakes and streams and eventually in the supply of water we drink and wash in.

A simple government programme can make a big difference in educating farmers. It can help make them aware of the environmental impact of farming. This in turn can help reduce water pollution.

TEXT 11

Jet lag occurs when we travel long distances by plane. Our sleep rhythms are thrown out of balance because we are moving into very different time zones so quickly. The further we travel, the stronger the effect is.

Our sleep patterns are deeply affected by sunlight. The light that strikes our eyes sends information to our brains. This data tells us we need to be awake or asleep. If sunlight changes drastically, for example, when we take a twelve-hour flight to a faraway place, it can take days to adjust.

The science behind this phenomenon tells us that we should regulate our exposure to sunlight when we travel. An app exists that can be added to a smartphone. It tells you when you need darkness, and when you need light. It can greatly reduce the amount of time it takes to correct jet lag.

TEXT 12

Outer space can have a strange effect on living things. A team of astronauts from Japan took seeds from a cherry tree with them on a space mission. After returning, they made an unusual discovery when they planted them.

The seeds had been taken from a famous old tree near a temple in Japan. The tree is thought to be over 1,000 years old. Normally, this type of cherry tree does not bloom until after ten full years of growth. When it does bloom, the individual flowers have about 30 petals.

The seeds that the astronauts had taken into space grew at a much faster rate. The trees bloomed after just four years of growth. Also, the flowers only contained about five petals each. Scientists

BRITISH MATRIX (TEXTS FOR READING)

1. Yes, No

- Oh, 'yes, 'yes, 'yes, 'yes, 'yes! 'I 'win!
- ,No, ,no, ,no, ,no, `no! `I win!
- 'No, 'I 'win!
- 'You ,cheat! `Mom, 'Bobby ,cheats!
- 'You, ,rat! 'Rat, 'rat, 'rat, ,rat!
- `Mommy, 'Bobby 'calls me ,names!
- ,Children, 'play ,nicely!

2.1 Romeo and Juliet

- I `love you, ,Juliet!
- 'No, 'no, 'no, →no!
- I ,love you, Juliet.
- →No, 'not →good.
- ,I? ,Love? `You? I 'love ,you. ,I `love you.
- ,Hmm... O,kay... 'Not ,bad, 'not ,bad...
- I ,love you.
- ,Very good! 'Very, ,very good! I 'love you, ,too, Romeo. →Next!

2.2 Romeo and Juliet

- I `hate you, ,Juliet!
- →Again.
- I ,hate you, Juliet.
- →No.
- I `hate you! ,I? ,Hate? ,You? ,Yes? ,No?
- 'Not ,bad...
- I ,hate you! ,You! I ,hate! ,Hate! ,Hate! ,Hate!
- `Excellent! “`Hate, `hate!” 'Simply `excellent! ,Thank you, Romeo! →Next!

3. Johnny + Drew = ?

- I'm `ready, ,Johnny, 'read your ,poem.
- ,Yes, ,people, ,yes, it's ,true – I 'love that 'pretty, 'pretty ,Drew. 'Yes, I 'love ,Drew; I 'love ,cinema, ,Shakespeare, ,pizza, and my ,ma. But, 'Drew does 'not ,love me. 'She loves ,Pete. And when I 'see ,her, I ,spit! 'Spit, 'spit, 'spit, ,spit!
- ,Poor boy! Your 'ma ,loves you, ,Johnny! 'Give her a `kiss!

4. Limerick

- A ,limerick | by 'my 'son ,Johnny.
- Mr ,Clark | has a ,lark. And Mr 'Rice has →filthy... ,sorry, 'fifty ,mice.
Mr 'Rice has 'fifty ,mice! Mr ,Rook | is a ,crook. And, Lady ,Dunn | has a ,gun.
They 'live in a 'bar in ~Africa... 'no, ,no, →in... in ,Zanzibar! They 'all 'live in a 'bar in ,Zanzibar!
- 'Very ,good, Johnny!
- →And, and Mr 'Doodle has a ,poodle. And Mr 'Pork is a ,dork!
- 'That's e,nough, Johnny! 'Go to your ,room!
- O,kay, mom...

5. The Picture

- Ah ,yes. The ,picture.
- 'This is 'Mary-,Ann. 'Always ,cute. This is ,Caroline. ,Always serious.
- A... `soldier? →This is...
- It's ,me. ,Yes. ,Always... ,well... `strong.
- ,You? 'Is it ,you? ,Really?
- ,Yes, it's `me. ,Young, ,uh? And 'that ,boy | is my 'little 'brother ,Billy.
'Always with a 'finger up his ,nose.
- The 'famous 'Bill the ,Finger? The ,actor?
- ,Yes, the 'famous ,Bill | and his 'famous ,finger. 'Hence the ,nickname.
- 'Oh! ,Now I understand!

6. Hate or Love?

- 'Oh, `stop it! You 'know I'm ,ticklish!
- I ,know, sweetie pie. 'What is `that? It's a 'new ta`ttoo. It's a ,portrait. It →is 'John `Lennon! `I ,see.
- You 'see ,what!? I ,love John Lennon. ' "All you 'need is →love"!
- `I ,know... 'Love, 'sweet 'love and 'nothing ,else.
- You 'have ,food? I'm 'so ,hungry, I could 'eat a ,horse.
- 'Look in the ,fridge.
- 'Where?
- In the re,frigerator. 'Where `else?
- O,K... in the ,fridge... but you've →got... you've 'got only 'beer and ,ketchup in there!
- ,Yes, I ,know. But 'all you 'need is ,love, ,right?
- ,You! I ,hate you!

7. Horror

- Oh `hi, `Jane! Still `angry ,at me? It was 'just a `joke...
- ,Hi, Bob! You 'know that I 'hate your ,jokes!
- →Sorry. You 'want to 'go for a ,movie?
- It de,pends. 'Which ,one?
- That 'new ,horror flick. I 'know that you 'like ,horror movies.
- ,Ah! 'Yes, I ,do. You 'mean the “Cut, 'Gut and 'Lots of ,Blood” 'starring 'Muma ,Crumann?
- 'That's the `one.
- The di'rector's 'simply a `genius! I 'love 'all of his ,movies! He's 'more than a ,genius!
- Of ,course, →he is...
- ,Bob!
- ,What?
- I 'don't 'like your ,tone!

8. Just a Cold

- ,So, 'what do you ,think?
- 'Eeny 'meeny 'miny →moe, 'catch the 'monster by the ,toe...
- 'Muma ,Crumann is 'just `great! The 'girl's the 'biggest 'star ,ever!
The ,cameraman | is ,brilliant! `Brilliant! I'm 'so im,pressed!
- ,Yeah... 'so am ,I. ,Tell me, who was that ,fat chap | with the 'big ,axe?
- You 'don't ,know? He's her ,father, of ,course. You 'have to 'watch ,closely | to under,stand.
- I `did, Jane. I 'swear I `did.
- ,Did you? I 'think I've 'heard you ,snore | 'once or ,twice.
- ,No, I 'did `watch it! →It's... I've 'just got a ,cold, 'that's ,all!
- 'Just a ,cold, ,eh? O,K. But, 'be 'very ,careful, mister! 'Very ,careful, because I'm ,watching you!
I'm 'watching you like a ,hawk!

9. Reading Updike

- 'Knock, `knock!
- 'Who's `there?
- It's the 'man you 'like to ,hate.
- All ,right, my 'hateful ,man, 'come ,in. 'What's ,up?
- `Not ,much. 'What are you ,doing? ,Reading? 'Are you all ,right?
- ,Yes, I am ,reading. It's ,Updike...
- ,Updike? 'John `Hoyer ,Updike? 'Son of 'Linda 'Grace ('Hoyer) 'Updike and 'Wesley ,Russell Updike?
- 'Born in 'Reading, Pennsylv,ania, in 'nineteen 'thirty-,two?

- 'Graduated from 'Harvard College in 'nineteen `fifty-,four?
- The 'famous ,novelist, ,essayist, ,critic, and 'overall re'fined inte,llectual? The 'cult ,author? The
`Up'dike!?
- 'Oh, ,stop it! You 'think that if I 'liked “Cut, 'Gut and 'Lots of ,Blood”, I 'can't read ,Updike?
- I ,can, and I ,do! And, I en'joy 'doing it 'very ,much! ,There!

10. Johnny the Fireman

- 'What is ,this, →Johnny?
- It's a 'book of →matches | and a 'can of `petrol, ,mom.
- I can ,see | that it is a 'book of 'matches and a 'can of `petrol, ,Johnny. But ^why?
'What are 'you `doing with them?
- I 'wanna be a `fireman. I 'like 'setting 'things on `fire. I `like ,fire. It's 'very 'bright and →nice...
- ,Now, Johnny, you're up'setting your ,mother.
We 'both ,know | that you will be'come a 'famous 'poet and ,author!
And 'don't 'say ,“wanna”; it's ,bad English!
- O,kay, mom. But, 'can I 'be a 'famous 'poet and a 'fireman and 'set 'things on ,fire?
,Please? ,Please? ,Please?
- 'No, you can `not, Johnny!
- But, ,mom...
- You're up'setting your ,mother, John. The dis'cussion is ,over! 'Go to your 'room and 'study
,Shakespeare!
- O,kay, mom...

11. Time To...

For 'everything there is a ,season, and a 'time for 'every ,purpose | under ,heaven:

A 'time to be →born, and a 'time to ,die; A 'time to ,kill, and a 'time to ,heal;

A 'time to 'break ,down, and a 'time to 'build ,up;

A 'time to ,weep, and a 'time to ,laugh; A 'time to ,mourn, and a 'time to ,dance;

A 'time to 'cast a,way stones, and a 'time to 'gather 'stones to,gether;

A 'time to ,seek, and a time to ,lose; A time to ,keep, and a 'time to 'cast a,way;

A 'time to ,tear, and a 'time to ,sew; A 'time to 'keep ,silence, and a 'time to ,speak;

A ,time for war, and a ,time for peace; A 'time to ,love, and a 'time to ,hate;

A 'time to 'cast a,way stones, and a ,time | to 'gather 'stones to,gether...

*Всему свое время, и время всякой вещи под небом: время рождаться, и время умирать;
время насаждать, и время вырывать посаженное; время убивать, и время врачевать;
время разрушать, и время строить; время плакать, и время смеяться;
время сетовать, и время плясать; время разбрасывать камни, и время собирать камни;
время обнимать, и время уклоняться от объятий; время искать, и время терять;
время сберегать, и время бросать; время раздирать, и время шивать;
время молчать, и время говорить; время войне, и время миру.*

12. The Butler Did It!

- A ,crime? A ,gain? ,Where?
- In the ,library, Holmes. The ,silverware’s gone!
- ,Ah, ,notice how it ,always ,happens in the ,library, Watson! ,Who was ,present?
- `Yours ,truly, Sir ,James, ,Lady ,Dunn, the ,judge, ,Colonel ,Stockton, the `banker, the `doctor, the `actress, the `French ,chef, the `butler...
- ,Say ,no →more, Watson! The →butler ,did it!
- I ,see. You’re a `genius, ,Holmes, but `still...
- It’s ele,mentary, my dear Watson. →Actually, the ,butler | is ,not a ,butler at ,all!
- →You | ,don’t `say!
- I ,recognized him ,right a ,way. The “ ,butler” | is the ,brilliant, but ,evil | Pro,fessor ,Marti,farti – the ,mastermind behind ↑every ,crime in the ,world! It was ,he | who ,stole the ,silverware.
- You ,mean Pro,fessor ,Mori,arti, Holmes. Mori,arti. ,Not ,Marti,farti.
- ,Marti,farti, Mori,arti. Wha,tever. A ,nother ,heinous ,crime is ,solved, →Watson.
- ,Now, `give me the ,violin – I ,want to ,play...
- ,Oh, I a,dore that man!

13. Asking for Trouble

- You ,want ,coffee or ,tea?
- I’m ,fine, ,thank you.
- ,You’ve been ,sitting at the com,puter | for ↑two ,hours.
 - I ,didn’t ,see you ,have ,breakfast | or ,take a `shower for that ,matter.
- I’ve been ,chatting. I’ve ,found this ,new ,chat room | and ,there’s this ,chap...
- It’s ,not `healthy, you know. You ,sit there | ,staring at the ,screen | and ,talking to yourself.
 - You ,never ,even ,combed your `hair. You ,look like a `madman.
- →Oh, you e,xaggerate! I ,don’t ,look like a ,madman! It’s →just that...
- ,Go ,take a ,shower | ,right ,now | and ,have ,something to ,eat!
- ,Oh ,really...
- ,Do it ,now | or you ,won’t ,know what `hit you, ,buddy! ,Are you ,asking for ,trouble?
- `All ,right, I’ll ,go | but I’ll be ,eating without an ,appetite!
- ,Just ,shut up and ,go! ,Don’t ,try my ,patience ,any ,longer...

14. A House

- 'What a 'gorgeous ,sunset! 'Just 'look at 'that ,view! It's `brehtaking!
- ,Thank you. 'We 'like it ,too.
- `Like it? 'That's 'what I 'call a ,serious understatement! I'm 'absolutely `loving it!
- ,Thank you. It's 'always 'nice to ,hear.
- 'Have you `bought the ,house?
- ,No, we could 'never have a,fforded it. 'Not ,these days. My 'parents ,left it to me.
- 'Lucky ,you. It's ,such a beautiful place. And 'so ,peaceful.
- `Yes, it `is. And 'down ,there, we 'even have a 'private ,beach.
- You've 'got a 'river?
- `No, it's a ,lake. 'Look 'over ,there – we have a ,boat | and a 'private ,mooring.
- `That beauty is ,your boat? 'I'm gonna ,die... 'By the ,way, 'what ,lake is it?
- It's 'Lake ,Green. And, of ,course, it's 'full of ,trout... 'Do you ,like fishing?
- I ,love it.
- We 'also have 'two →horses, a →pony, and a ,donkey. 'Can you 'ride a 'horse?
- ,Yes, I ,can.
- 'How about a 'ride to'morrow `morning?
- 'I'm 'so ex'cited I can 'hardly ,wait!
- ,Look, the 'first ,star!
- “'Twinkle, 'twinkle 'little →star...” – “'How I 'wonder 'what you ,are...”

15. What's The Difference?

- Good ,morning, Jim! 'Can you 'help me with the com'puter a,gain?
- ,Uh, ,sure, but 'those 'chaps 'never 'brought it ,back...
- `Yes, they ,did. It's 'sitting on my `desk!
- 'No ,way! They 'couldn't have 'got ,past me | without my ,seeing them.
- But I'm ,telling you – it's 'right ,there. I've 'just ,seen it.
- Oh, `may,be, you've 'seen a 'ghost or ,something...
- 'Are you 'going to ,help | or 'should I 'ask 'somebody ,else?
- Ah 'well... 'let's ,go...
- 'Here it `is!
- `Where?
- 'Right `here – in `front of you!
- I'm 'not ,blind. I 'told you they 'never 'brought it 'back from the ,shop. It's 'not ,here.
- If 'you're 'making some 'kind of ,joke, it's 'not ,funny. 'What's ,this in your opinion!?
- It's 'only a ,monitor.

– A ,monitor, a com,puter... 'What's the `difference? 'Just 'help me 'turn it ,on – I've 'got `work to do!

– 'Oh, ,Good Lord!

16. Avocados

– 'Anything ,else?

– O,kay... 'let me 'see those avo,cados | in the ,back. 'Are they `ripe?

– 'Not ,really. They're a 'bit ,hard. 'What do you ,want them for? A guaca,mole or a ,salad?

They're 'just ,right for a salad...

–,Neither. I 'eat them ,straight | with some 'salt and 'black ,pepper. My ,roommate | 'taught me 'that in ,college.

–'Just like ,that, ,uh?

– ,Yep. And with some 'nice ,bread. 'French ba,guette | would 'just 'do ,fine.

–'How do you ,do that? You 'make →an 'open ,sandwich | or ,what?

– `No, you 'cut it 'open with a ,knife, 'take out the ,core, 'salt and ,pepper it | and 'eat it with a ,tea spoon.

Very ,simple | but 'very de,licious.

– `Hmm... I should `try it. You 'got me ,curious.

– You 'won't re,gret it. ,Trust me. 'You'll get 'hooked 'just like ,me.

– `Oh. O,kay. 'Thank you for your ,recipe!

– You're ,welcome.

17. Sandwich

– The 'roast beef `sandwich, ,please.

– 'Half or ,full?

– `Half, ,please.

– 'What ,kind of bread?

– 'What d'you ,have?

– ,Wheat, ,rye, ,ciabatta, ,French...

– `French, I ,think. ,Yes, ,that one – it 'looks ,good.

– 'What 'kind of ,cheese would you like?

– 'Make it ,Swiss.

– To,mato, ,lettuce, ,pickles, ,onions?

– ,Yes, ,everything. `Hold ,on. 'Do you 'have alf,alfa sprouts?

– 'Let me ,check... 'yes, we `do.

– 'Use alf,alfa then, in'stead of the ,lettuce, please.

– `O,K. 'Mayonnaise or ,mustard?

– 'Both 'mayonnaise and `mustard, ,please. 'And 'black ,pepper.

– ,That's it?

– →That's it.

– →Next!

18. What's Up?

- →Hey, 'what's `up, ,mate?
- 'Not `much, ,mate. 'Got my'self a 'new com,puter. 'Have a `look.
- ‚Wow! 'That's 'fancy ‚stuff! A 'real 'mean ma,chine! A 'dual 'core 'processor and ‚all!
- It's 'special de'signed for ‚gaming. It's a ‚powerhouse. It's 'got the 'latest 'everything and ‚more. 'Millions of 'real 'brilliant ‚gadgets.
- `Cool, ,man. 'Where did you 'get the ‚money? 'Rob a ‚bank? It 'costs at the 'very 'least 'ten ‚grand.
- 'Fifteen ‚K | in a 'store near ‚you. But for ‚me, it was ‚free.
- 'No ‚way, mate! Or, 'maybe, 'Bill 'Gates 'turned 'out to be your 'long lost ‚uncle | and 'gave it to 'you as a `gift? “‚Luke, I'm your ‚father! 'Here's some 'small ‚change for you...”
- 'Not ‚really. But, the 'Force was ‚with me | and this 'young ‚Jedi | 'got 'hired as a ‚game tester.
- A ‚what?
- A 'game ‚tester. They 'pay me to 'test their com,puter games.
- 'That's `loony, ,mate! They 'pay you to ‚play? 'No `way, ,mate!
- ‚Way! And, they 'gave me this com,puter. I'm sup'posed to be ‚giving them ‚feedback | on the ‚games they develop. There may be 'bugs in the ‚software, and they 'pay 'testers like 'me to `find them.
- 'Does it 'pay ‚well?
- It 'ain't ‚bad | for 'just 'sitting a'round and ‚playing. I 'used to 'do it for 'free `anyway...
- 'May the `Force be with you, ,mate!

19. Beam Me Up, Scotty!

- 'Looks 'like our 'buddy `Steve got ‚rich. 'Probably 'won the ‚lottery or something. I 'saw him 'drive a,round | in a 'red Lambor`ghini the other ‚day. It 'must be 'worth at `least half a ‚mil.
- ‚Yeah, I ‚know. I 'talked to him ‚yesterday | and 'even had a `ride in that rocket of his.
- ‚So, 'what's his `story?
- 'You 'won't be ‚lieve it.
- ‚Try me.
- O,K. You 'know that our ‚Stevie | 'never in his 'life had a ‚job. 'So, he 'sits a'round all 'day in his ‚underwear | 'watching `“Star Trek” | and 'browsing the ‚paper. About a ‚week ago | he 'goes through the ‚Auto Trader | and he 'sees that `ad. A `Lambor,ghini for a 'hundred ‚pounds. And 'being as 'stupid as he ‚is | he 'just 'calls the `number. The 'chap on the 'other side ‚says “‚Yeah. 'Come ‚over | and 'bring the `money”. 'Stevie 'says to him,self “‘What the `heck, it's `only a ten minute ‚drive, 'what am I 'gonna `lose?” You ‚with me so far?
- 'Yes, I ‚am. 'Go ‚on.
- 'Let's have a `beer ‚first. I had a 'tough ‚day. 'Want a ‚beer?

– ‚Sure. ‚Beam me ‚up, Scotty!

20. Live Long and Prosper!

– ‚Thanks for the ‚beer, ‚man. ‚Go ‚on with the ‚story, ‚will you?

– ‚So, you ‚like it so ‚far, ‚uh?

– You ‚bet I do! The sus‚pense is ‚killing me. I‚m on my ‚toes | ‚waiting for the ‚punch ‚line!

– All ‚right then, it ‚gets ‚even ‚better. ‚Our ‚Captain ‚Kirk ‚gets there; the ‚chap ‚gives him the ‚owner’s
‚title | and the ‚keys, and ‚off our ‚Stevie ‚goes | in his ‚new ‚Lambor‚ghini.

– ‚No, you ‚must be ‚kidding.

– I ‚kid you ‚not, ‚man. The ‚story, ap‚parently, is that the ‚chap was in the ‚middle of a ‚very ‚ugly di‚vorce
I ‚mean | ‚ugly. ‚Ugly as they can ‚get. He and his ‚ex-‚wife | ‚fought over that ‚Lambor‚ghini | for ‚years.

‚Finally, the ‚judge ‚rules | that the ‚chap must ‚sell the ‚car | and ‚give the ‚money to his ‚ex.

– ‚Oh, ‚no!

– Oh, ‚yes, my ‚man! ‚Oh, ‚yes! So, the ‚chap ‚tells the ‚judge, ‚very ‚quietly, ‚mind you,

“‚Yes, your honor! Of ‚course, your honor!”

He ‚sells his ‚car to our ‚friend | for the ‚one ‚hundred ‚pounds | and ‚sends the ‚check to his ‚ex.
The ‚curtain ‚falls. ‚End of ‚story.

– ‚My, oh ‚my, oh ‚my! ‚Looks like the ‚stupid ‚ones | have ‚all the ‚luck in the ‚world!

– ‚Let’s ‚drink to our ‚lucky ‚Captain ‚Steve | and his ‚new ‚spaceship!

– ‚Live ‚long and ‚prosper!

21. What Do You Think?

– ‚Have ‚you ‚seen the ‚American ‚presidential de‚bate last night? It was ‚quite a ‚show.

– I‚m ‚sorry to ‚say I ‚have.

– You ‚don’t ‚seem to be ‚very im‚pressed.

– Im‚pressed I ‚was. By their in‚credible stu‚pidity! The Re‚publican ‚candidate ‚kept ‚talking about “‚nu-
killer” ‚weapons. He ‚can’t ‚even ‚say “‚nuclear”. I ‚don’t be‚lieve he went to Harvard. ‚Probably ‚slept ‚all
the ‚way ‚through it

– ‚Well, ‚brains are ‚not his ‚strong side. I ‚give you ‚that. ‚What about the ‚other chap? The ‚Democrat.

– The ‚Democrat, ‚right! He’s ‚got ‚more ‚money in ‚his pocket | than ‚Bill ‚Gates and ‚Donald ‚Trump
together. The ‚other ‚day, they ‚showed his ‚ranch | in Cali‚fornia | and it was the ‚size of ‚New ‚Zealand.
‚And he “‚stands for the ‚poor”. ‚Yeah, ‚right...

– I →see. ‚What about ‚our new Prime Minister, then? ‚What do you ‚think of ‚him?

– ‚Well, his ‚suit looks OK. His ‚haircut’s ‚perfect. His ‚teeth ‚sparkle. ‚What ‚else do we ‚need? He’s a
‚darling!

– You ‚seem to be in a ‚very ‚critical ‚mood today, my ‚friend.

– ‚Well, you’re ‚right. Today I‚m a ‚bit ‚grouchy. But it’s ‚all agame | and youknow it.

– 'Yes, in'deed I ,do, my friend. But 'sometimes this 'game is 'very 'interesting to ,watch...

22. The Magic Word

– 'My 'car ,died on me. 'Just 'round the ,corner.

– ,Obviously, you 'need a ,new one. 'Yours is a 'piece of `junk.

– It's `not a piece of ,junk. It's a 'vintage ,classic. It's a 'Bentley ,sixty eight | with 'all the o'iginal ,parts.

– ,All?

– →Well, ,almost all. ,Sure she .needs some .repairing, but 'all in ,all, she's in ,fine shape.

– 'Fine shape, ,right. 'Then 'my 'wheelchair-bound ,grandmother is in 'fine shape, ,too.

'What are you 'gonna `do, if 'next 'time it 'dies on you in a ,fast lane?

– 'Well, I 'don't ,take fast lanes. She's 'not 'that ,fast...

– 'Is 'that sup'posed to be ,funny? I'm 'not ,laughing, you know. It's 'pretty `serious. 'You can `kill yourself.

– I'm ,not going to kill myself. I'll 'change the ,battery, the ,plugs, and the ,fuel filter |

and she's 'going to be 'just like ,new

– ,Fine, 'suit your ,self.

– 'O,K... – "O'K" ,what?

– 'Can I 'borrow your ,car | for a 'couple of ,days?

– ,And? – "And" `what?

– The 'magic ,word. – ,Please...

23. Abracadabra

– 'Harry, ,Harry, ,Harry, ,Harry, you 'have the 'right ,haircut, the 'right ,scar, the 'right ,looks.

You 'even have a ,wand. But, you 'do not ,have...

– 'Sir?

– You 'still 'do 'not 'know how to ,say...

– ,What, sir?

– You 'cannot pro'nonce the ,word...

– 'Yes, I `can, I `can!

– 'Do not inte,rrupt me, ,Harry! You're 'pushing me to the ,limit! Just 'shut your ,mouth | and ,sit there!

'I'm 'two 'hundred 'years ,old, I have a `very bad ,temper | and I can ,smack you, if you 'do it a `gain! You 'get my 'drift?

– ,Yes, sir! I ,do, sir!

– O,K, ,now, as 'I was 'saying before I was 'so `rudely inte,rrupted, ,you, Harry, can't not 'properly pro'nonce the 'word "abracadabra". You 'want to →try it | 'once a ,gain, Harry?

– ,Yes, Professor ,Doubledork!

– ,Do it then. – 'Abraca ,labra... 'abracama ,cabra... 'abracasha ,mabra... →abra...

– 'Get out of my ,face, `you, 'little ,twit! ,Out, ,out! 'How do you in'tend to de'feat the 'all-,powerful | 'Lord ,Ugliwart, if you 'cannot 'say the 'simple 'word "→ablaca... →avraca..." 'Oh, 'never ,mind!

'Go and ,study, Harry! ,Study! ,Shame on you! 'No des'sert for you to` night, ,Harry!

October

The month is amber,
Gold, and brown.
Blue ghosts of smoke
Float through the town,

Great V's of geese
Honk overhead,
And maples turn
A fiery red.

Frost bites the lawn.
The stars are slits
In a black cat's eye
Before she spits.

At last, small witches,
Goblins, hags,
And pirates armed
With paper bags,

Their costumes hinged
On safety pins,
Go haunt a night
Of pumpkin grins.



SPEECH PRACTICE

INTRODUCTORY COURSE

Read and translate the words. Learn them.

1. Professions

What do you do (for a living)? What is your profession? What is your occupation? What is he?

- | | | | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. accountant | | | |
| 2. actor / actress | 15. dancer | 28. lawyer | 42. programmer |
| 3. artist / painter | 16. dean | 29. locksmith | 44. salesperson |
| 4. architect | 17. director | 30. manager | salesman |
| 5. barber /
hairdresser | 18. doctor | 31. mechanic | shop-assistant (Br) |
| 6. builder | 19. driver | 32. miner | 45. sailor |
| 7. businessman
businesswoman | 20. engineer | 33. model | 46. scientist |
| 8. carpenter | 21. farmer | 34. musician | 47. secretary |
| 9. clerk /
office worker | 22. fashion-designer | 35. nanny
child minder | 48. security guard |
| 10. coach | 23. guide | babysitter (Am) | 49. singer |
| 11. composer | 24. headmaster /
headmistress | 36. nurse | 50. soldier |
| 12. conductor | 25. housewife | 37. officer | 51. surgeon |
| 13. cook | 26. interpreter /
translator | 38. photographer | 52. teacher / tutor |
| 14. dentist | 27. journalist
reporter | 39. pilot | 53. waiter / waitress |
| | correspondent | 40. policeman /
police officer | 54. (hostel) warden |
| | | 41. postman | 55. worker |
| | | | 56. writer / author |

Usage Notes

I. artist

1. художник (тот, кто профессионально рисует или пишет картины);

It's not always easy to earn a living as an artist.

2. артист (тот, кто профессионально занимается искусством);

Many of the artists in the show donated their fee to charity.

3. *informal* тот, кто очень хорошо что-то делает; *He's no ordinary baker, the man's an artist.*

painter

1. художник; *a landscape painter / a portrait painter* 2. маляр;

II. director

1. один из топ-менеджеров, возглавляющих компанию; *a former director of British Airways.*

2. режиссер; *Who is the director of this film?*

3. человек, отвечающий за определенную деятельность или возглавляющий отдел в компании; *Greta has been appointed project director. financial/sales/personnel director*

III. headmaster/ headmistress (Br) - директор (директриса) школы;



IV. translator - переводчик; **interpreter** - устный (синхронный) переводчик;
V. journalist - журналист (пишет статьи или готовит передачи для СМИ)
reporter - репортер (журналист, специализирующийся на текущих событиях, новостях)
correspondent

1. журналист, специализирующийся на определенной теме или определенном регионе)
Our correspondent in South Africa sent this report. | the political correspondent for The Times;
2. тот, кто пишет письма; *I'm not a very good correspondent, I'm afraid.*

VI. nanny - няня, которая занимается воспитанием ребенка в семье;
child minder (Br) /babysitter (Am) приходящая няня, которая присматривает за ребенком, пока родителей нет дома; **nurse** - медсестра; *The nurse is coming to give you an injection.*

VII. tutor

1. репетитор; 2. преподаватель, работающий индивидуально со студентами в британских университетах и колледжах;

VIII. Mind the use of prepositions.

1. **work in, at** + place / **in** + area of work; *I work in/at a factory. Kim works in publishing.*
2. **work for** + name of company; *I'd like to work for Vodafone.*
3. **work as** + job; *How long have you worked as a teacher?*
4. **work on** + project; *Now we are working on a new design.*
5. **work with** + person / equipment; *Do you work with Jim? We have to work with chemicals.*

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Fill in the name of the profession.

1. I want to become aand write for newspapers or magazines.
2. Einstein was a..... 3. When she married she quit work and became a..... 4. If you have a toothache, you'd better see a 5. My hair needs cutting, I should call my 6. This is the..... who wrote that article about punk rock. 7. I don't know the town, will you be my? 8. Who is the..... of this faculty? 9. If you are lost ask a..... to help you. 10. This man is the of our volleyball team. 11. He was offered the position of the..... in this company. 12. When everybody came, the family opened the envelope and read aloud the will. 13. Naomi Campbell was aand demonstrated clothes. 14. The delivers letters in the morning. 15. Maggie is a, she looks after other people's children. 16. He is a very good His photos are excellent. 17. Students who need money for study often work as at restaurants or cafes. 18. If you study at the faculty of foreign languages, you can become either a or an 19. work under the ground. 20. Kazimir Malevich is a famous Russian 21. He entered a musical school, he wants to become a 22. Paul McCartney isn't only abut also a of many Beatles' songs. 23. I want to speak to the of this school. 24. When a child, he wanted to become a and help to keep order and catch criminals. 25. He was a during the war and brought down many German planes. 26. Brad Pitt is a famous American and his wife Angelina Jolie is an too. 27. The bus took the money and gave me a ticket. 28. According to the Bible, Jesus was a before he became thirty. 29. Our lock is out-of-order, let's call a30. The at the service centre said that our car would be ready in a week. 31. He has joined the army, so he is a now. 32. They are and grow corn. 33. He feels very bad, we'd better call a

Ex. 2. Complete the sentences. Speak about yourself.

1. My friend wants to be a.....
2. My granny was a.....
3. When I was a child, I dreamt to be a.....
4. I could never be a.....

Ex. 3. Fill in correct prepositions.

1. After the university he worked a journalist.
2. Jim began workingIBM last year.
3. She worksthis university and her husband worksan office.
4. A locksmith has to work numerous tools.
5. Jake has been workingtrade all his life.
6. They are building a country house, now they are working ...wiring.
7. He has a talent for workingpeople.
8. I have never wanted to work a big company.
9. His son works banking.
10. This artist workswater colours.
11. Stephen King is workinghis new novel now.

2. Animals, Birds and Insects

- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------|
| 1. ant | 15. donkey / ass (<i>old</i>) | 30. kangaroo | 45. sparrow |
| 2. bear | 16. duck | 31. leopard | 46. squirrel |
| 3. bee | 17. eagle | 32. lion | 47. swallow |
| 4. beetle | 18. elephant | 33. monkey | 48. swan |
| 5. bug | 19. elk | 34. mosquito | 49. tick |
| 6. butterfly | 20. fox | 35. owl | 50. tiger |
| 7. camel | 21. frog | 36. parrot | 51. turkey |
| 8. cat (kitten) | 22. giraffe | 37. peacock | 52. tortoise |
| 9. cheetah | 23. goat | 38. penguin | turtle |
| 10. cock (Br) | 24. goose | 39. pig / swine (<i>old</i>) | 53. whale |
| rooster (Am) | 25. hamster | 40. pigeon / dove | 54. wolf |
| 11. cow (calf) | 26. hare | 41. rabbit | 55. woodpecker |
| 12. crocodile | 27. hedgehog | 42. roe | |
| 13. deer | 28. hen (chicken) | 43. sheep (lamb) | |
| 14. dog (puppy) | 29. horse | 44. snake | |

Ex. 4. What animals make these noises?

“OINK” – , “BAA” – , “MEOW” – , “WOOF” – , “MOO” – , “COCKADOODLEDOO” –

Ex. 5. Translate the words, use them to complete the sentences. Look up their pronunciation.

bark, bleat, cluck, croak, crow, growl, grunt, hoot, mew, moo, neigh, quack, purr, roar.

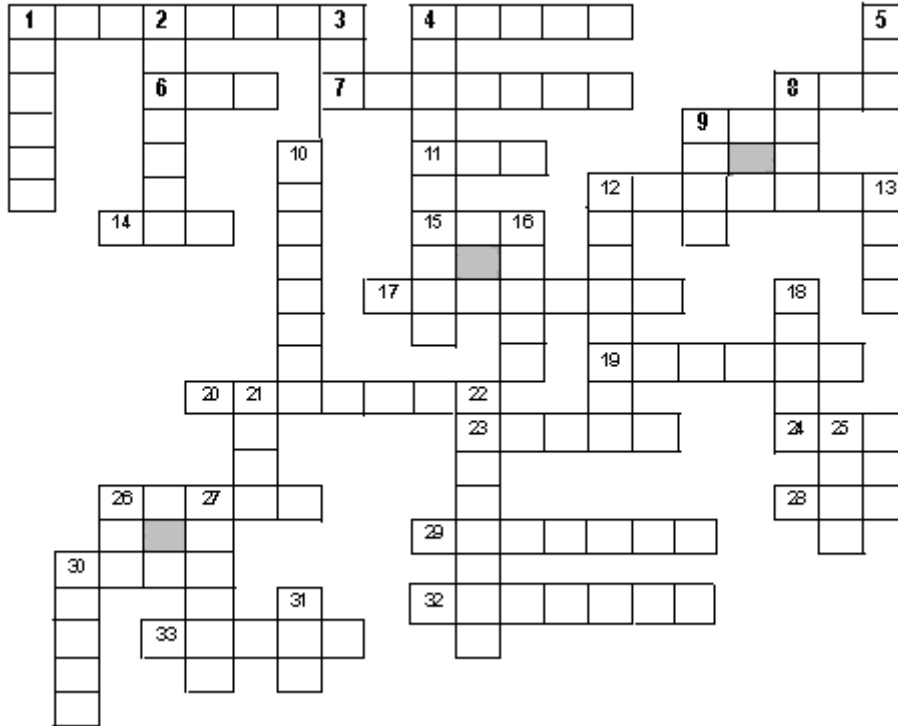
1. Cats when they are hungry and when they are happy.
2. Dogs or when they are angry.
3. Lions
4. Sheep and goats
5. Horses
6. Pigs
7. Cows
8. Frogs and ducks
9. Cocks, hens and owls

Ex. 6. Complete the sentences with the names of the animals. Consult the dictionary.

hens, frogs, ducks, butterflies, hares, kittens, cows, snakes, wolves, bears, horses, lambs, birds, goats, fish, puppies, pigs, chickens;

1. fly and swim.
2. flutter.
3. hop.
4. slither.
5. trot or gallop.
6. Cats have and dogs have
7. have foals.
8. Sheep have
9. have calves.
10. have piglets.
11. and have cubs.
12. have ducklings.
13. lay eggs from which hatch.
14. Tadpoles turn into
15. Caterpillars turn into

Ex. 7. Do the crossword *Animals*.



Across: 1. Always with a bag. 4. The biggest in the sea. 6. What grace! 7. He can't change his spots. 8. Man's best friend. 9. A busy honey-maker. 11. A swine that can be plural. 12. A smart town's bird. 14. Once she laid a golden egg. 15. Walks by himself. 17. A bird in a tailcoat. 19. A big-eared fellow. 20. Quicker than wind. 23. You can find him on the symbol of the USA. 24. Something between a deer and a camel. 26. It's the last straw that broke the's back. 28. In a red fur coat. 29. All its beauty is in its tail. 30. There's a Russian opera called «..... Lake» 32. He sings «cock-a-doodle-doo» in American English. 33. The plural of *goose*.

Down: 1. A future mice-hunter 2. What a neck! 3. The wisest. 4. A tree's dentist. 5. So snug in the rug! 8. Sounds very dear. 9. Winnie-the-Pooh 10. It was young 100 years ago. 12. A nut cracker. 13. Sometimes in sheep's clothing. 16. Big and yellow. 18. Another pig. 21. White when it snows, grey when it rains. 22. Don't touch me! 25. The king. 26. Gives us milk. 27. Rhymes with 'funky' 30. It hisses and slithers. 31. Don't make an ... of yourself!

Ex. 8. Choose the correct explanation.

I. Don't make an ass of yourself.

1. Не притворяйся.
2. Не веди себя так странно.
3. Не выставляй себя на посмешище.

II. He killed two birds with one stone.

1. Он добился цели.
2. Он разрешил две проблемы одним махом.
3. Он хорошо поохотился.

III. Let's take the bull by the horns.

1. Давай приступим к делу. 2. Давай продолжим, то, что начали. 3. Давай покончим с этим.

IV. He has butterflies in his stomach.

1. Он нервничает. 2. У него болит желудок. 3. Он на вершине блаженства.

V. Don't let the cat out of the bag.

1. Не давай ему волю. 2. Не проговорись. 3. Не выноси сор из избы.

VI. It's raining cats and dogs.

1. Моросит дождь. 2. Идет грибной дождь. 3. Дождь льет как из ведра.

VII. That cat won't jump.

1. Этот номер не пройдет. 2. Это неправда. 3. Это нечестно.

VIII. It's a pretty kettle of fish.

1. Это все вранье! 2. Ну и дела! 3. Вот это результат!

IX. They smelled the rat.

1. Они заподозрили неладное. 2. Они испугались. 3. Они удивились.

X. He can't say "boo" to a goose.

1. Он плохо говорит по-английски. 2. Он не может ничего сказать об этом.
3. Он не способен никого обидеть.

XI. He is a wolf in sheep's clothing.

1. Он элегантно одет. 2. Он жестокий человек. 3. Он враг, скрывающийся под видом друга.

XII. Can the leopard change his spots?

1. Может ли дикий зверь стать ручным? 2. Может ли человек изменить свой характер?
3. Может ли человек измениться к лучшему?

Ex. 9. Read the blogs and say if you are an animal person or not.

I'm not just an animal person

I have nothing against animals in general and I really enjoy wildlife programmes on TV. Working animals like guide dogs are very important, of course, but I can't see the point of keeping pets. To me, they just make a mess and cost you a lot of money. And some pet owners treat their animals like children, dressing them up and feeding them the best meat or fish. It's just crazy! What really gets me is when people set up a blog 'written' by their dog or cat. Why do they pretend that an animal has opinions to share with the rest of the world? As I see it, if you want to communicate, talk to a person, not a pet.

I couldn't live without my pet

Sorry, I couldn't disagree more! I have three cats and two dogs and I get a lot out of keeping them. I don't spoil them or treat them like humans, but they mean a lot to me. What I like about them is the fact that they are very loyal. I live alone and so I don't have much contact with people day to day. Looking after my animals is an important part of each day. Don't forget that there are a lot of people out there just like me. I take your point about animals 'writing' blogs, though, that is very silly.

Questions for discussing

1. Do you have a pet? What is it like?
2. What pet would you like to have? Why?
3. What pets can be dangerous?
4. What are advantages and disadvantages of keeping pets?
5. What do you think of keeping animals in the zoos or using them in the circus?

Ex. 10. Speak on the topic: What do you think of keeping pets?

Follow the plan:

1. State the problem
2. Express your opinion
3. Give arguments and examples
4. Make a conclusion

Ex. 11. Read the texts and explain the origin of the English names of the days of the week and the months. Find out the origin of the corresponding Russian names.

The Days of the Week

The names of the days of the week are very old, they were chosen long ago, in the days when people worshipped a different god each day. **Sunday** (the first day of the week according to the English calendar) was the Sun's day and the next day was the Moon's day or **Monday**. **Tuesday** was called after Tiu, the god of war. **Wednesday** was the day of Woden, the highest god of Teutonic peoples. Thor was the thunder god, his day was called **Thursday**. Woden's wife wanted to have a special day of her own. Her name was Freya, so her day was called Freya's day or **Friday**. Saturn was the Roman god of fields; his day was Saturn's day or **Saturday**.

Note: Tiu ['ti:u:], Woden ['wɒdn], Thor [θɔ:], Freya ['freɪə], Saturn ['sætən].

The Names of the Months

The English names of the months are of Latin origin. The ruler of Rome, Julius Caesar, arranged the year in six months of 31 days and six of 30 days. The first month of the year in those days was March. It was King Charles IX of France who, in 1563 decided that the year should begin on January the first. **January** was named after Janus, the god of Time and War, **February** after Februs, in honour of whom, in ancient Rome a great festival 'Februa' was celebrated.

March was called after Mars, the god of War. **April** got its name from the Latin word "aperire", which means "to open". It is the month when the earth opens itself and nature returns to life. **May** was named after the goddess Maia, the daughter of Atlas and the mother of Mercury. **June** takes its name from Juno, the wife of Jupiter. **July** was named after Julius Caesar. The month of **August** took its name from Augustus, the first Roman emperor. **September, October, November and December** are the 7th, the 8th, the 9th and the 10th months in the Julian calendar and they were given their names by the number they represent.

Note: Janus ['dʒeɪnəs], Maia ['maɪə], Juno ['dʒu:nʊ], Julius Caesar ['dʒu:lɪəs 'si:zə],

Jupiter ['dʒu:pɪtə], Augustus [ɔ:'gʌstəs].

Ex. 12. Read the rhymes.

Solomon Grundy

'Solomon , Grundy | 'born on , Monday,
'Christened on , Tuesday,
'Married on , Wednesday.
'Ill on , Thursday, 'worse on , Friday,
'Died on , Saturday, 'buried on , Sunday
'That was the , end | of 'Solomon , Grundy

Months

'Thirty 'days have Sep , tember,
, April, , June and No , vember.
'All the 'rest have 'thirty-`one,
'February has 'twenty-`eight a , lone.
Ex'cepting , leap year, 'that's the , time
When 'February's , days | are 'twenty- , nine.

Ex. 13 Translate the homophones and words similar in pronunciation into Russian and learn them. Омофоны – это разные по значению слова, одинаково звучащие, но различающиеся на письме (напр., «плод» и «плот»).

- | | | | |
|----------------------|----------------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. air, ear, heir; | 6. fair, fare, fear; | 11. peace, piece; | 16. tide, tied, tired; |
| 2. bare, bear, beer; | 7. hair, hare, hear, here; | 12. quiet, quite; | 17. to, two, too; |
| 3. buy, bye, by; | 8. line, lion; | 13. tail, tale; | 18. wear, were, where; |
| 4. chair, cheer; | 9. Mary, marry, merry; | 14. than, then; | 19. wood, would; |
| 5. dare, dear, deer; | 10. pair, pear, peer; | 15. their, there; | 20. write, right, rite. |

Ex. 14. Choose the correct form.

1. The (air, ear, heir) is clean and fresh. 2. The rabbit has long (airs, ears, heirs). 3. Let me whisper in your (air, ear, heir). 4. He was the only (air, ear, heir) to the throne. 5. The (bare, bear, beer) was warm and watery. 6. The (bare, bear, beer) trees looked sad. 7. The (bare, bear, beer) was big and brown. 8. He likes bitter (bare, bear, beer). 9. It was a dress with a (bare, bear, beer) back. 10. She is standing (buy, bye, by) the window. 11. They come (buy, bye, by) train. 12. Let's (buy, bye, by) some bread. 13. Good-(buy, bye, by)! Have a nice day! 14. There were no passers-(buy, bye, by) outside. 15. Don't be upset, (chair, cheer) up! 16. He said ("Chairs!", "Cheers!") and drank his wine. 17. Sit down on this (chair, cheer) and wait. 18. How (dare, dear, deer) you speak to me like that! 19. Oh, (dare, dear, deer)! What can the matter be? 20. (Dare, Dear, Deer) friends! Let's begin our party! 21. These (dare, dear, deer) are very beautiful. 22. Her (hair, hare, hear, here) is (fair, fare, fear). 23. He was pale with (fair, fare, fear). 24. The bus (fair, fare, fear) isn't high. 25. We saw the musical 'My (Fair, Fare, Fear) Lady'. 26. I don't (hair, hare, hear, here) you. 27. The (hare, hear, here) is (hair, hare, hear, here).

28. We saw a (line, lion) at the zoo. 29. They want to (marry, mary, merry) tomorrow. 30. Hello, (Mary, Marry, Merry)! 31. I'll eat a (pair, pear, peer) of (pairs, pears, peers). 32. He was born a (pair, pear, peer). 33. Give me a (peace, piece) of paper. 34. Leave me in (peace, piece)! 35. It was very (quiet, quite) in the room. 36. It was (quiet, quite) warm in the room. 37. Don't tell me (tails, tales)! 38. The dog's (tail, tale) is black and short. 39. Her little daughter likes to listen to a fairy (tale, tail) before going to bed. 40. He is taller (than, then) John. 41. What shall we do (than, then)? 42. Look (their, there). Look at (their, there) faces. 43. I'm (tide, tied, tired), I've worked (to, too, two) much. 44. (Wear, Were, Where) is my (peace, piece) of cake? 45. I shan't (wear, were, where) these jeans. 46. What (wood, would) you like to eat, Fanny? 47. What (wood, would) did they go to? 48. This (wood, would) is very beautiful. 49. Do you (write, right, rite) with your (write, right, rite) or left hand? 50. (Write, right, rite) down your homework, please. 51. That's (write, right, rite)! 52. Australian aborigines have very interesting (writes,

rights, rites) and traditions. 53. You have a (write, right, rite) to make one phone call. 54. They don't know (there, their) own (writes, rights, rites) and duties! 55. Rest in (peace, piece).

UNIT 1. GETTING ACQUAINTED

UNIT 1. GREETINGS

ITEM 1. HELLO! HOW ARE YOU?

- Hello! How are you?
- Fine! How are you?
- Fine, thank you.
- Hello! How are you?
- Hello! How are you?
- Hello! How are you?
- Hello! How are you?
- Hello! How are you?
- Fine, fine! Thank you. Fine.

ITEM 2. HOW IS MR. ROBERTS?

- Good morning! How are you?
- All right. How are you?
- All right. Thank you.
- How is your wife?
- She's fine.
- How is your son?
- He's fine.
- How are the children?
- They're fine.
- How is the job?
- It's fine.
- How is Mr. Roberts?
- He is in hospital.
- Oh, no! Oh, no! Oh, no!

ITEM 3. I HAVE A COLD

- How are you doing?
- Not too bad. And how are you?
- Really bad.
- What's wrong?
- I have a cold.
- That's too bad.
- How is Jane?
- She's fine.
- How is Bill?
- He's fine.
- And the kids?
- They are fine.
- How is college?
- That's fine.
- How's Nick?
- He is sick.
- Oh, no!
- How are you?
- Not too bad.
- How are you?
- Not so bad. How are you?
- Really bad.
- What's wrong?
- I have a cold.

- That's too bad. Too bad. Really bad.
- I'm sorry to hear that. That's too bad.

ITEM 4. HI! HOW ARE YOU?

- Hi! How are you?
- Fine, thanks. And you?
- Just fine. Just fine.
- Hi! How are you?
- Fine, thanks. And you?
- Just fine. All right. Just fine. All right.

ITEM 5. HELLO, JANE!

IT'S BEEN A LONG TIME.

- Hello, Jane! It's so good to see you again.
- It's so good to see you.
- Hello, Jane! It's so good to see you again.
- It's so good to see you.
- It's been a long time. I'm glad to see you.
- So am I. I haven't seen you for a long time. How have you been?
- It's been a long time. I'm glad to see you.
- So am I. I haven't seen you for a long time. How have you been?
- Just fine. Just fine. I'm fine, thanks.
- I'm fine, thanks.

UNIT 2. INTRODUCTIONS

ITEM 1. MR. WILSON, I'D LIKE YOU TO MEET DR GIBSON

- Mr. Wilson! I'd like you to meet Dr. Gibson.
- How do you do, Dr. Gibson.
- How do you do.
- It's nice to meet you.
- Nice to meet you too.
- Mr. Wilson!
I'd like to introduce Dr. Gibson.
- I'd like to introduce. I'd like to introduce.
I'd like to introduce Dr. Gibson.
- I'd like you to meet Mr. Wilson. (2)
- Nice to meet you.
- Nice to meet you.
- Nice to meet you.
- Nice to meet you too. Nice (3) to meet you.

ITEM 2. TIM! THIS IS MY COUSIN JIM.

- Tim, this is my cousin Jim.
- Hi!
- Hello!
- I'm so glad to meet you.
- Thank you. I'm glad to meet you too.

ITEM 3. I'M GLAD TO MEET YOU.

I'VE HEARD SO MUCH ABOUT YOU.

- I'm delighted to meet you.
I've heard so much about you.
- Thank you. I'm glad to meet you.
- I'm glad to meet you.
I've heard so much about you.
- Thank you. I'm glad to meet you.
- I'm delighted to meet you. I've heard so much about you. So many nice things.
- So many nice things about you. I'm glad to meet you. I've heard so much about you.
I've heard so many nice things. I've heard so many nice things about you.
- Thank you. I'm glad to meet you.

ITEM 4. HELLO! I'M TOM BENSON.

- Hello! I'm Tom Benson.
- Hi! I'm Jill Swenson.
- Pleased to meet you.
- Pleased to meet you.
- Nice to meet you. (4)
- I'm so glad to meet you.
- Thank you. I'm glad to meet you.
I'm delighted to meet you.
- Thank you. I'm glad to meet you too.

ITEM 5. WHAT'S YOUR NAME?

- What's your name?
- John Martins.
- What's your first name?
- John.
- What's your last name?
- Martins.
- How do you spell it?
- M A R T I N S
- How do you pronounce it?
- Martins.
- Where are you from?
- Canada.

UNIT 3. SAYING GOOD-BYE

ITEM 1. GOOD-BYE, MR. HAZELTINE!

- Good-bye, Mr. Hazeltine! I hope to see you again sometime. Have a nice day.
- Thank you. The same to you.
- Good-bye, Mr. Hazeltine! I hope to see you.
I hope to see you again sometime. Sometime.

ITEM 2. I REALLY MUST BE LEAVING.

- I really must be leaving.
Thank you for inviting me.
- It was my pleasure.
Give my regards to your family.
- And give my regards to yours.

ITEM 3. SEE YOU TOMORROW.

- Good-bye! See you tomorrow. Good bye!
See you tomorrow. Bye-bye! Bye-bye! See you tomorrow. Bye-bye! So long!
- Bye! See you on Monday.
- So long! See you tomorrow.
- Bye-bye! See you around. See you. See you around. Good-bye!
- See you on Monday.
- See you on Tuesday.
- See you on Wednesday.
- See you on Thursday.
- See you on Friday.
- See you at the weekend.
- See you.

ITEM 4. HAVE A NICE WEEKEND.

- Have a nice weekend.
- Thanks, you too.
- Have a good time.
- Thanks, you too.
- Have a good day. Have a very good day.
Have a good day.
- Thanks, you too.
- Have a nice weekend.
- Thanks, you too.
- See you on Monday.
- Have a good time.
- Thanks, you too.

ITEM 5. I'VE GOT TO GO HOME.

- It's getting dark. I've got to go home.
- It's getting dark. I've got to go home.
- I've really got to go. I've got to go home.
- I really must be leaving.
- I really must be leaving.
- It's getting late. I really must be going.
- It's getting dark.
- It's getting very, very, very dark.
- It's getting dark. It's getting late.
It's getting very, very late.

ITEM 6. THANK YOU. I HAD A GREAT TIME.

- Thank you. I had a great time.
- My pleasure.
Say hello to your family for me.
- I will.
- So long, Ann. Say hello to Ben. (2)
- I will. Good-bye, Bill! Give my love to Jill.
Good-bye, Bill! Give my love to Jill.
- I will.
- It was nice seeing you again.
It was a lovely, lovely party.
- Thanks, it was nice seeing you.(2)

ITEM 7. WE'RE GONNA MISS YOU.

- We're gonna miss you. We really are. (2)
- I'm gonna miss you. I really am. (2)
- Good-bye! Good-bye! Take care. Take care.

- Thanks. You too.
- Good-bye! Good-bye! Take care. Take care.
- Thanks. You too.
- Have a nice vacation. Keep in touch. (2)
- You too. You too. You too. Keep in touch.

Notes:

1. When you are asked *Hello, how are you?* you should answer it and then ask the same question in return. If you don't ask a return question, it will sound quite unfriendly as if you don't want to continue the conversation.
2. *Hello* is an interjection, used for greeting, answering the phone, calling somebody's attention or showing surprise or confusion. The most used international spelling variant is *hello*; *hallo* is British and old-fashioned; *hullo* is also British, but informal.

ADDITIONAL PHRASES

Read, translate and learn the phrases.

How are you keeping?	Let me introduce myself.
How are you getting on?	Meet my friend.
How is it going?	How are things with you?
Have you met my friend Bill?	I haven't seen you for ages.
How's life? - A bit tired, otherwise all right.	I'm from Russia. – Whereabouts in Russia?

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Respond quickly.

1. Hi! – 2. How are you? – 3. How do you do? – 4. Glad to meet you. – 5. It was a lovely, lovely party! – 6. Give my love to your sister. – 7. I'm from Canada. – 8. I have a cold. – 9. I haven't seen you for ages! – 10. I really must be leaving. 11. How's life? – 12. Have a nice weekend. – 13. This is Harry. He's my ex-classmate. – 14. I'm gonna miss you. – 15. Spell your name, please. – 16. Give my regards to your family. – 17. Where are you from? – 18. It was nice seeing you. – 19. See you around. – 20. Hello! – 21. Thank you for inviting me. – 22. What's your name? – 23. How is university? –

Ex. 2. Supply initial phrases.

1. – Nice to meet you. 2. – So long! 3. – Hi, Fred! 4. – Fine, thanks, and you? 5. – Take care. 6. – How do you do. 7. – I will. 8. – Whereabouts in Australia? 9. – Me too. 10. – C-L-A-R-K. 11. – I'm from New Zealand. 12. – Thanks, you too. 13. – It was my pleasure. 14. – That's too bad! 15. – And give my regards to yours.

Ex. 3. Translate into English.

1. Привет, как дела? – Хорошо, а у тебя? 2. Я из Новой Зеландии. – Правда? А откуда конкретно? 3. Пока! – Увидимся в понедельник. 4. Как жизнь? – Немного устал, а так все хорошо. 5. Передавай привет сестре. – Обязательно. 6. Рад с Вами познакомиться. – Я тоже. 7. Боюсь, мне пора уходить. – Был рад Вас повидать. Берегите себя. 8. Разрешите представиться. Я Дэниэл Бойд. – Очень приятно. Произнесите свое имя по буквам, пожалуйста. 9. Мы будем по тебе скучать. Не пропадай. 10. Я простыл. – О, нет! Очень жаль. 11. Желаю хорошо провести время. – Спасибо, тебе тоже. 12. Это Джессика. Она моя подруга. – Привет, Джессика. Как дела? 13. Вы откуда? – Я из Франции. 14. Я столько слышал о Вас. Столько хорошего. – Спасибо. 15. Сколько лет прошло! Как у тебя дела? 16. Надеюсь увидеть Вас когда-нибудь снова. 17. Как тебя зовут? 18. Спасибо за приглашение! – Это мне было приятно. 19. Увидимся в выходные. 20. Становится поздно. Мне надо идти. – До свидания. 21. Как твой брат? – Спасибо, неплохо. 22. Джек в больнице. – Жаль это слышать. 23. Давно тебя не видел. 24. Приятных каникул! – Тебе тоже.

Ex. 4. Translate the dialogues into English.

Dialogue 1

- Привет! Как дела?
- Спасибо, прекрасно! Как ты?
- Неплохо. Немного устал, а так все хорошо.
- Как твои родители?
- У мамы все хорошо, а отец в больнице.
- О, нет. Как жаль! Мне жаль это слышать.
- Все в порядке, он уже поправляется.
- Передавай ему привет от меня.
- Обязательно передам.

Dialogue 2

- Смотрите, ведь это же мой кузен Джим! Привет, Джим! Столько лет прошло!
- Привет. Сто лет тебя не видел. Как жизнь?
- Спасибо, хорошо. Как ты жил все это время?
- Прекрасно! А ты все еще холостой?
- Нет, я женат.
- Я рад это слышать. А кто та хорошенькая девушка рядом с Барбарой?
- Это моя жена. Давай, я тебя сейчас ей представлю. Мэри, это мой кузен Джим.

Dialogue 3

- Это был чудесный вечер. Спасибо за то, что пригласили меня.
- Это я получил удовольствие! Было приятно повидать вас снова. Передавайте привет семье.
- Спасибо, передам. Становится поздно. Боюсь, мне пора идти.
- До свидания! Надеюсь, как-нибудь увидимся.
- До встречи! Берегите себя!
- Спасибо! Не пропадайте!

Dialogue 4

- Какая удача! Вы должно быть Джейн Вилсон.
- Правильно. А как вас зовут?
- Я Келли Мартинс. Здравствуйте!
- Здравствуйте! Я двоюродная сестра вашего мужа.
- Приятно познакомиться.
- Мне тоже. Я столько хорошего слышала о вас!
- Спасибо! Вы откуда?
- Я из Соединенных Штатов.
- Да что вы говорите! Из каких мест?
- Из Калифорнии.
- Здорово!
- Извините, но мне пора идти. Становится темно.
- До свидания. Увидимся завтра.
- Я прекрасно провела время.
- Я рада это слышать.

Ex. 5. Do the tasks.

1. Introduce yourself. Introduce your seatmate. Introduce your friend.
2. Think of your new name, nationality and profession. Get acquainted with the others.

Ex. 6. Match the symbols with their names and read the Internet addresses.

1) / 2) t_s 3) t-d 4) www. 5) @

a. underscore b. at c. dot d. dash e. forward slash

enquiry@smile.co.uk www.smile.co.uk/demo sun_flower@rambler.ru

sales-up@mate.com www.bbc.co.uk/worldservice

COUNTRIES, CAPITALS, LANGUAGES AND NATIONALITIES

Read, translate and learn the names of some countries, capitals, languages and nationalities.

№	COUNTRY	CAPITAL	ADJECTIVE	LANGUAGE	NATIONALITY	
					ALL	ONE
1.	Australia	Canberra	Australian	English	the Australians	an Australian
2.	Austria	Vienna	Austrian	German	the Austrians	an Austrian
3.	Belgium	Brussels	Belgian	French, German	the Belgians	a Belgian
4.	Brazil	Brasilia	Brazilian	Portuguese	the Brazilians	a Brazilian
5.	Bulgaria	Sofia	Bulgarian	Bulgarian	the Bulgarians	a Bulgarian
6.	Canada	Ottawa	Canadian	English, French	the Canadians	a Canadian
7.	China	Beijing (Peking)	Chinese	Chinese	the Chinese	a Chinese two Chinese
8.	Denmark	Copenhagen	Danish	Danish	the Danish / the Danes	a Dane
9.	Egypt	Cairo	Egyptian	Arabic	the Egyptians	an Egyptian
10.	Finland	Helsinki	Finnish	Finnish	the Finns	a Finn
11.	France	Paris	French	French	the French	a Frenchman two Frenchmen
12.	Germany	Berlin	German	German	the Germans	a German two Germans
13.	Great Britain	London	English British	English	the English the British	an Englishman two Englishmen
the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland – the UK						
14.	Greece	Athens	Greek	Greek	the Greeks	a Greek
15.	India	New Delhi	Indian	Hindi, English	the Indians	an Indian
16.	Ireland	Dublin	Irish	Irish , English	the Irish	an Irishman two Irishmen
17.	Italy	Rome	Italian	Italian	the Italians	an Italian
18.	Japan	Tokyo	Japanese	Japanese	the Japanese	a Japanese two Japanese
19.	Mexico	Mexico City	Mexican	Spanish	the Mexicans	a Mexican
20.	the Netherlands Holland	Amsterdam	Netherlandish Dutch	Netherlandish Dutch	the Netherlanders / the Dutch	a Netherlander a Dutchman two Dutchmen
21.	New Zealand	Wellington	New-Zealand	English	the New-Zealanders	a New-Zealander
22.	Norway	Oslo	Norwegian	Norwegian	the Norwegians	a Norwegian
23.	Poland	Warsaw	Polish	Polish	the Poles	a Pole
24.	Portugal	Lisbon	Portuguese	Portuguese	the Portuguese	a Portuguese two Portuguese
25.	Russia	Moscow	Russian	Russian	the Russians	a Russian

26.	Spain	Madrid	Spanish	Spanish	the Spanish / the Spaniards	a Spaniard
27.	Sweden	Stockholm	Swedish	Swedish	the Swedish the Swedes	a Swede
28.	Switzerland	Bern	Swiss	French, German	the Swiss	a Swiss two Swiss
29.	Turkey	Ankara	Turkish	Turkish	the Turks	a Turk
30.	the USA	Washington	American	English	the Americans	an American
the United States of America						

JAZZ CHANTS

Learn the chants.

Sally Speaks Spanish

'Sally 'speaks ` Spanish,
But 'not 'very ` well
When she `tries to ,speak ` Spanish
You 'really 'can't 'tell
'What 'language she's ` speaking
Or ` trying to speak
The 'first time I `heard ,her
I 'thought it was ` Greek.

How Is His English?

His 'English is ` wonderful
He 'speaks 'very ` well
His 'accent is ` perfect
You 'really 'can't 'tell
That he 'isn't a 'native
Of the 'U'S `A
There's 'only `one ` problem -
He has ` nothing to say

Tell Me Your Name

`Tell me your ,name again, ,please
`Tell me your ,name
'Tell me your `first ,name
'Tell me your ,last name
`Spell your ,name for me, ,please
`Spell your ,name
Pro `nounce your .name for me
`Please, ` say it again
'What a ` beautiful name!
'What a ` lovely name!

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Choose the correct form

Note: He is _ Russian. = He is **a** Russian. **But:** He is **a** Russian from St Petersburg.

- Where do live? a) English b) the English c) Englishmen
- Is he ?
a) Frenchman or German b) a Frenchman or a German c) the French or the German
- This interpreter is from Copenhagen. a) a Dane b) Danish c) Dutch d) Dutchman
- We were met by at the airport. a) two Japaneses b) two Japans c) two Japanese
- Washington is the capital of a) USA b) the America c) the USA d) the USSR
- Shakespeare lived in
a) Great Britain b) the Great Britain and Northern Ireland c) UK d) Scotland
- I am, aren't I? a) a Turkish b) a Turk c) the Turkish d) Turk
- These scientists are either
a) Norwegian or Sweden. b) Belgian or French c) Polish or Bulgarian.
- None of them speak English, do they? a) Australia b) New-Zealand's c) Canadian
- Both of them like coffee. a) Brazilian b) Brasilian c) Brazil d) Brasilia
- My friend went to last week. a) Tokio b) Tokeo c) Tokyo
- All the world admires the beauty of Alps.
a) Swiss b) the Swiss c) the Swedish d) Switzerland
- made a great contribution to the victory in World War II.
a) Russian b) the Russian c) the Russians
- Amsterdam is the capital of
a) Netherland b) Netherlands c) the Netherlands d) the Holland

Ex. 2. Fill in the gaps with the names of nationalities or countries.

- Indira Gandhi ['ɪndɪrə 'gændɪ] is an prime minister, killed by terrorists.
- Pablo Picasso ['pæblɔ pɪ'kæssɔ] is a painter, the founder of cubism.
- Homer is an ancient poet, the author of the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey*.
- Mao Tse-tung ['maʊtsɛ'tʊŋ] is a political leader.
- Jacque-Yves Cousteau [ʒæk i:v ku:'stɔ] is a sea explorer, the inventor of the aqualung
- Salvador Dali ['sælvədɔ: 'dɑ:lɪ] is a painter, the

most famous surrealist. 7. Dante Alighieri is an poet and philosopher, the author of *The Divine Comedy*. 8. Hans Christian Andersen is a fairy tales writer. 9. The famous Hollywood actress Audrey Hepburn who starred in *Breakfast at Tiffany's* was born in 10. Hamlet is a prince of 11. Bryan Adams is a rock-singer. 12. Bruce Lee is a Hollywood actor and kung fu fighter of origin. 13. Friedrich Nietzsche ['fri:drɪk 'ni:tʃə] is a philosopher. 14. Fryderyk Chopin ['frɪdrɪk 'ʃɒpən] is a composer and pianist. 15. Vitus Bering ['vaɪtəs 'beərɪŋ] is a navigator of origin, the explorer of Arctic. 16. Hercule Poirot ['eəkju:l 'pwa:rʊ] is a detective. 17. Albrecht Dürer ['ælbrekt 'dʒʊərə] is a Renaissance [ri'neɪsəns] painter and engraver. 18. Michelangelo [ˌmaɪkəl'eɪndʒɛlə] is an painter and sculptor. 19. Thor Heyerdal [θɔ: 'heɪəda:l] was a anthropologist, who made ocean voyages on the primitive rafts *Kon-tiki* and *Ra* to prove his theories. 20. Stanislaw Lem is a science fiction writer, the author of 'Solaris'. 21. James Bond is a spy. 22. Sigmund Freud ['sɪgmənd frɔɪd] is an psychologist and psychotherapist, the founder of psychoanalysis. 23. Robert Frost is an poet. 24. Archimedes [ˌɑ:kɪ'mi:di:z] is an ancient mathematician and inventor. 25. Julius Caesar ['dʒu:lɪəs 'si:zə] is a general and dictator. 26. Levi Straus ['li:vai straʊs] is a inventor of jeans. 27. Christopher Columbus is an traveller who thought he discovered the short cut to India. 28. Johann Wolfgang Goethe [dʒɔv'æŋ 'wɒlfɡæŋ 'gɜ:tə] is a poet, dramatist and novelist, the author of the drama *Faust*. 29. Rembrandt is a famous painter. 30. Tutankhamen [tu:t(ə)n'ka:mən] is an pharaoh. 31. Nicole Kidman is a Hollywood actress of origin. 32. Pele ['peleɪ] is a footballer, one of the greatest of all time. 33. Jerome David Salinger is an writer, the author of *The Catcher in the Rye*.

Ex. 3. Translate into English.

1. Англичане – хорошие спортсмены. 2. Посмотри на этих англичан. 3. Этот инженер – англичанин. 4. Он из Великобритании. 5. Он из Лондона. 6. Японцы трудолюбивы. 7. Вы говорите по-японски? 8. Наш повар из Японии, он японец из Токио. 9. На корабле 4 японца. 10. Это японский зонтик. 11. Он говорит по-португальски, наверное, он из Лиссабона. 12. Эти переводчики – испанцы или португальцы? – Ни те, ни другие, они турки. 13. Швейцарские часы знамениты во всем мире. 14. Швейцария очень красива, особенно Швейцарские Альпы. 15. Эти швейцарцы - хирурги? 16. Греки гордятся своей историей. 17. Это греческое слово? 18. Он в Греции. 19. Этот бизнесмен – грек из Афин.

Ex. 4. Translate into English.

1. В нашей группе три китайца из Пекина, два египтянина из Каира и шесть турков из Анкары. 2. Китайцы изобрели бумагу. 3. Египтяне построили пирамиды. 4. Ты любишь турецкий кофе? 5. Я не пью китайский чай. 6. Он ни в Китае, ни в Турции. Он в Египте. 7. Эти итальянцы хорошо поют. 8. Эти девушки - итальянки или француженки? 9. Они говорят по-русски. Это русские. 10. Италия недалеко от Франции. 11. И французы, и итальянцы очень эмоциональны. 12. Немцы любят порядок. 13. Эти немцы – адвокаты? 14. Эта официантка – или немка, или англичанка. 15. Он из Германии. 16. Он говорит на австралийском или канадском английском? 17. Канадцы живут в Северной Америке.

Ex. 5. Translate into English

1. Это австралийские спортсмены.
2. Австралия – самый маленький континент.
3. Попробуй знаменитый голландский сыр.
4. Исторически, Голландия – провинция Нидерландов.
5. У него датский паспорт.
6. Эти голландцы – моряки.
7. Эти датчане – полицейские.
8. Мы не говорим ни по-датски, ни по-голландски.
9. И голландцы, и датчане живут в Европе.
10. Эти поляки живут в Варшаве.
11. Здесь 3 поляка и 7 болгар из Софии.
12. Они не говорят по-польски.
13. Ты покупаешь новозеландское масло?
14. Он из Вены или из Брюсселя?
15. Это индийцы из Дели.
16. Эти норвежцы из Осло не говорят по-арабски.
17. Они шведы или финны?
18. Зачем он изучает финский?
19. Он австриец, не так ли?

Ex. 6. Choose the correct explanation.

1. **Greek gift** – подарок 1) дорогой; 2) скромный; 3) опасный; 4) антикварный.
2. **Greek meets Greek** – 1) встреча равных; 2) олимпийские игры; 3) переговоры; 4) тесен мир
3. **It's Greek to me** - 1) мне все равно; 2) по моему мнению, это настоящее искусство; 3) мне это не понятно; 4) мне это не нравится.
4. **Chinese compliment** – 1) притворный интерес; 2) неожиданная похвала; 3) пространный, цветистая похвала; 4) тонкий комплимент.
5. **Chinese puzzle** – 1) запутанное дело; 2) военная хитрость; 3) шифровка; 4) иероглифы.
6. **Irish coffee** – кофе 1) без сахара; 2) со сливками и виски; 3) с молоком; 4) без кофеина;
7. **Scotch verdict** – 1) поспешное решение; 2) оправдательный приговор; 3) половинчатое решение; 4) произвольное решение.
8. **Scotch mist** – 1) изморось; 2) привидение в замке; 3) мираж в горах; 4) горный туман.
9. **Scotch on the rocks** – 1) шотландец; 2) виски со льдом; 3) шотландский рок; 4) клейкая лента.
10. **Welsh uncle** – 1) богатый дядюшка; 2) незваный гость; 3) аферист; 4) дальний родственник.
11. **Welsh rabbit** – 1) тушеный кролик; 2) гренки с сыром; 3) десерт; 4) застенчивый человек.
12. **Australian ballot** – 1) бюллетень для тайного голосования; 2) голосование по почте. 3) опрос общественного мнения; 4) голосование поднятием рук;
13. **English breakfast** – 1) ранняя еда; 2) плотный завтрак; 3) завтрак второпях; 4) холодная еда.
14. **German silver** – 1) нержавеющей сталь; 2) мельхиор; 3) серебро; 4) бижутерия.
15. **Dutch courage** – 1) дерзость 2) трусость 3) бравада 4) пьяная удаль
16. **Double Dutch** – 1) двойная порция пива; 2) пьяный голландец; 3) тупица, глупец; 4) чепуха.
17. **Dutch comfort** – 1) слабое утешение; 2) темное пиво; 3) неудобство; 4) спиртные напитки.
18. **Dutch concert** – 1) пение без аккомпанемента; 2) нестройное пение; 3) концерт самодеятельности; 4) фальшивое пение.
19. **Egyptian darkness** – 1) сумерки; 2) затемнение; 3) крошечная тьма; 4) затмение.
20. **Indian ink** – 1) тушь; 2) яркая краска; 3) красные чернила; 4) акварель.
21. **Turkish delight** – 1) красивая девушка; 2) рахат-лукум; 3) кальян; 4) турецкий табак.
22. **Indian summer** – 1) золотая осень; 2) жаркое лето; 3) дождливая пора; 4) середина лета.
23. **Swiss roll** – 1) самокат; 2) дорожный каток; 3) морская качка; 4) сладкий рулет.
24. **French window** – 1) решетчатое окно; 2) иллюминатор; 3) застекленные двери в сад; 4) глазок.
25. **French fries** – 1) жаркое; 2) жареные лягушки; 3) жареное мясо; 4) жареный картофель.
26. **Russian roulette** – 1) опасная игра; 2) мясной рулет; 3) карточная игра; 4) аттракцион.

GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

Learn the geographical names.

continents: Africa, Antarctica, Australia, Europe, Asia, Eurasia, North America, South America

oceans: the Atlantic Ocean, the Arctic Ocean, the Indian Ocean, the Pacific Ocean.

seas: the Baltic Sea, the Black Sea, the Caspian Sea, the Mediterranean Sea.

lakes: Lake Baikal, Loch Ness, Lake Michigan.

rivers: the Amazon, the Danube, the Mississippi, the Nile, the Rhine, the Thames, the Volga.

canals & channels: the Panama Canal, the Suez ['su:ɪz] Canal; the (English) Channel;
the Gulf of Mexico.

mountains: the Andes, the Alps, the Caucasus, the Cordilleras, the Himalayas, the Urals;
Elbrus [elb'ru:s], Everest, Mont Blanc, Kilimanjaro.

islands: the Canaries (= the Canary Islands), the Hawaiian Islands (= the Hawaii), the Bahamas,
the Bermudas, the British Isles, Corsica, Cyprus, Sicily, Iceland, Haiti, Madagascar.

geographical areas: the Equator, the Arctic, the Antarctic, the North Pole, the South Pole,
the Far East, the Middle (Near) East, the Crimea.

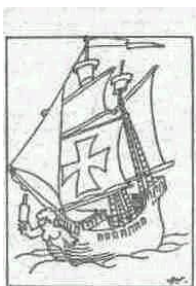
Ex. 7. Fill in the geographical names.

1. The continents of and are separated by the Bering Strait.
2. The Canal is between North and South America.
3. The are a group of islands to the north-west of Africa.
4. The flows into the North Sea; the Mississippi flows into the
5. Egypt is in the East, while Japan is in the East.
6. is the highest mountain in Africa.
7. The French name of the is La Manche.
8. The are the part of the mountains in South America.
9. Vitus Bering was one of the explorers of the
10. The is the sea between Africa and Europe.
11. If you want to travel from Europe to America, you'll have to cross the
12. The connects the Mediterranean with the Red Sea.
13. The Red Sea is between and
14. is an island in the Caribbean Sea.
15. The flows through Germany and the flows through Brazil.
16. The were acknowledged as a boarder between Europe and Asia only in the middle of the 18th century.
17. was discovered by Russian seamen in 1820. It was the last continent to be discovered.
18. The area around the South Pole is called the
19. The Tropic of Cancer crosses the and the Islands.
20. The Tropic of Capricorn crosses the continents of, and
21. became the 50th state of the USA in 1959.
22. Corsica, and are the islands in the
23. The is the imaginary line, which divides the Earth into the northern and southern hemisphere.
24. Lake is the deepest in the world.
25. The island of is near the eastern coast of Africa.
26. Vienna is on the
27. The is the largest ocean in the world.
28. Sweden is washed by the
29. is a Scottish lake famous for its monster.
30. The Seychelles are a group of islands in the

Ex. 8. Answer the questions.

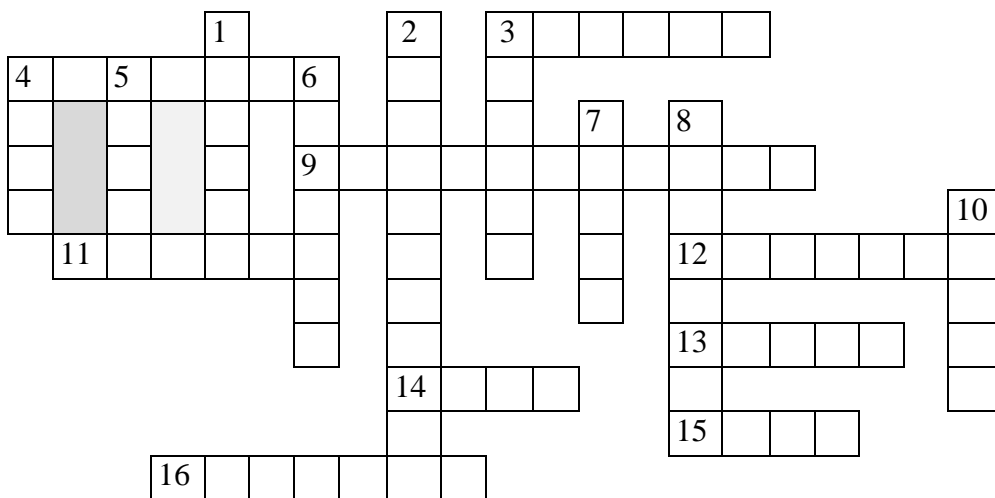
1. What mountain chain separates Europe from Asia?
2. What sea lies between Europe and Africa?
3. What ocean is between Asia and Africa?
4. Where is the South Pole?
5. Where are the Cordilleras?
6. What is the highest mountain in Africa?
7. What's the capital of Denmark?
8. Where is Tokyo?
9. What ocean washes the eastern coast of America?
10. Where is Everest?
11. What river flows into the Gulf of Mexico?
12. What is the capital of Egypt?
13. Who lives in Great Britain?
14. What language do the Egyptians speak?
15. What is the other name of Holland?
16. Who lives in Holland?
17. What river flows through Western Europe into the Black Sea?
18. What are the most mysterious islands in the world?
19. What island lies to the south-east of Africa?
20. What language do the Mexicans speak?
21. What town is the headquarters of the NATO?
22. What canal connects the Mediterranean with the Red Sea?
23. What oceans does the Panama Canal connect?
24. Where is Elbrus?
25. Where would you like to travel? Why?

Ex. 9. Read the text and find the Seven Seas on the map.
What Are the Seven Seas?



When we talk of the "Seven Seas", we use a phrase that old-time sailors used to describe all the seas and oceans of the world. Some people think that the Seven seas are the North and South Pacific, North and South Atlantic, the Arctic, the Antarctic and the Indian Oceans. But the phrase doesn't really describe these oceans. In ancient times, people called the following the Seven Seas: *the Bay of Bengal, the South China Sea, the Arabian Sea, the Persian Gulf, the Red Sea, the Mediterranean Sea and the Atlantic Ocean.*

Ex. 10. Do the crossword puzzle.



ACROSS:

3. an almost landlocked sea of northern Europe;
4. the «quiet» ocean;
9. the land of famous watches and cheeses;
11. the 50th American state;
12. a German-speaking country;
13. the European "high boot";
14. our native continent;
15. the canal between Egypt and Arabia;
16. the imaginary line dividing Earth into two parts.

DOWN:

1. the black continent;
2. the most famous African volcano;
3. the country of world-famous carnivals;
4. a person from Warsaw;
5. the people of this country built a great wall in the north to protect themselves from their enemies;
6. where the Volga flows
7. the mountains where the biggest golden nugget in Russia was found;
8. the islands that gave name to a small yellow bird;
10. the capital of the country of pyramids.

Ex. 11. Read and translate the text.

Columbus Day (the second Monday in October)

The identity of the first Europeans to visit the shores of America is uncertain. The Irish may have reached what is now Canada in the ninth or tenth century. But it was only with the voyage of Christopher Columbus in 1492 that effective European exploration and colonization of the New World began.

Little is known about the commander of the momentous 1492 expedition. Columbus was born in Genoa in 1451. He arrived in Portugal in 1476 after narrowly escaping death during a naval battle. The young seaman made a number of voyages under the Portuguese flag and visited England, the African Gold Coast, the Madeira Islands, and the Azores.

On August 3, 1492, Columbus and his 90-member crew sailed from Spain aboard *the Nina, Pinta* and *Santa Maria*. They carried with them a letter from Ferdinand and Isabella (the king and queen of Spain) addressed to the Grand Khan of China. The expedition maintained its westward course and on October 12, they landed the Bahamas, but they thought they had reached the East Indies. Columbus made three more voyages to the New World but he believed he had discovered a new route to the Orient. The landing of Columbus was not only a great feat but an event that was to change the history of the world.

Celebrations of Columbus Day in the United States are countless. Most localities sponsor special programs to mark the day, and every school holds exercises on that day. Parades, patriotic ceremonies, and addresses are popular ways of honoring Columbus.

Mark the sentences as true, false or not given.

1. *Momentous* means *very important*.
2. Columbus was born in Spain.
3. Sailing to America was his first sea voyage.
4. He came from a noble family.
5. Ferdinand and Isabella were his parents.
6. Columbus wanted to get to China.
7. Columbus gave the name to the Bahama Islands.
8. Not many people celebrate Columbus Day now.
9. Columbus Day is celebrated on the second of October
10. There are fancy dress parties on that day at schools.
11. The discovery of America changed the world history.

Ex. 12.

Complete the joke with the words: *Swiss, German, English, Italian, French*.

Use each of these words two times.

HEAVEN is the place where the police are, the chefs are, the mechanics are, the lovers are, and everything is organized by the

HELL is the place where the police are, the chefs are, the mechanics are, the lovers are, and everything is organized by the

Ex. 13. Read and translate into Russian. Comment.

No man is an island entire of itself; every man is a piece of the Continent, a part of the main ...
Any man's death diminishes me because I am involved in Mankind;
and therefore never send to know for whom the bell tolls;
it tolls for thee.

John Donne (1572-1631), English poet, philosopher, essayist, preacher.
In 1621 became the dean of St Paul's Cathedral.

Ex. 14. Speak on the topic. So many countries, so many customs.

Follow the plan:

1. Introduce the topic (variety of customs, holidays and traditions)
2. Describe one holiday or tradition that you like, and another which you dislike or indifferent to.
3. Explain why. Give arguments and examples.
4. Make a conclusion

Passport control at the airport:

- Nationality?
- Russian.
- Occupation?
- No, no, just visiting.

TEST REVISION

Do the tasks and check with the key.

Task 1. Translate into English.

1. Который час? Какие новости? Что случилось? 2. Спасибо за хороший совет. Ваши советы всегда полезны. 3. Откройте книги на странице сорок четыре и прочитайте текст четырнадцать. Упражнение девятнадцать на следующей странице. 4. – Это мои очки, а где твои? – Они на второй полке сверху. 5. – Где ножницы? – Они в коробке. 6. – Где носовые платки? – Они в ящике стола. 7. – Где часы? – Они на столе. 8. – Где деньги? – Они в сумке. 9. – Представь меня этим шведам. – Это не шведы, а финны. Они бизнесмены из Хельсинки. – А переводчик? – Он русский. 10. Он говорит и по-китайски и по-японски, но он турок из Анкары. 11. – Давай поедem в Стокгольм поездом. – Об этом не может быть и речи! 12. – Посмотри на этих норвежцев. – Это датчане. Они из Копенгагена. 13. Этот адвокат – голландец, его жена – француженка.

Task 2. Fill in articles where necessary

1. ... Professor Jones was met by ... students. professor was met by ... students of our group.
2. We have ... kittens at home. ... kittens are great friends.
3. There are ... mistakes in your test. Correct ... mistakes, please.
4. ... Doctor Clark is in ... hospital now. Call ... doctor and go to ... bed.
5. What ... luck! What ... pity! What ... pleasure! What ... deep snow! What ... fine weather!
6. What ... fun! What ... bad news! What ... nice cat! What ... good advice!
7. He was found by ... police and sent to ... prison. ... prison was in ... small town in ... north.
8. His lawyer went to ... prison to meet his client.
9. Let's go there by ... train. ... train leaves from ... Platform Eight.
10. ... United States is ... country in ... North America.
11. I never take ... sugar in ... tea. ... tea isn't sweet at all, where is ... sugar?
12. ...cakes are wonderful. Give me ... second cake, please.
13. He read ... letter from ... beginning to ... end. Look at ... beginning of ... text.
14. ... elephant is ... one of ... biggest animals in ... world.
15. How was ... film? – Awful! We left in ... middle.
16. It was by ... chance that I took ... bus sixty-four. ... bus went to ... airport.
17. She got ... job in ... bank in ... Liverpool. ... bank is in ... centre of ... town.
18. It's ... interesting work. It's ... good job. It's ... hard life.
19. ... Uncle Tom plays ... guitar after ... supper. . Jim wants ... new guitar.
20. I'll do it with ... pleasure. It's ... pleasure to talk to you.
21. You did ... same mistake again. He did it by ... mistake.
22. What ... good health ... Aunt Emily has! Have you got ... aunt?
23. You are making ... great progress. ... progress we've made is great.
24. ... moon was shining brightly in ... sky. ...night was warm and calm.
25. ... Netherlands are in ... Central Europe. ... Amazon is in ... Brazil.
26. ... monkeys are ... funny animals. – What ... nonsense!

27. They went ... side by ... side and disappeared round ... corner.
28. He played ... football when he was at ... school. ... school wasn't far from her house.
29. They fell in ... love at ... first sight and lived ... long and happy life.
30. Does he live in ... Urals or in ... Crimea? – He lives in ... Far East.
31. ... life is impossible without ... air. ... air was cold and wet.
32. Let's go on ... foot, we aren't in ... hurry. – It's out of ... question.
33. To tell ... truth, we had to learn ... poem by ... heart.
34. Don't lose ... heart. I am with you.
35. Let's go to ... cinema in ... evening. Let's take ... rest for ... while.
36. They are ... brother and ... sister. Have you got ... brother or ... sister?
37. My brother is ... teacher. He is still at ... work. He is still in ... school.

TEST REVISION KEY

Task 1

1. What's the time? What's the news? What's the matter? 2. Thanks for good advice. Your advice is always useful. 3. Open your books at page forty-four and read text fourteen. Exercise nineteen is on the next page. 4. – These are my spectacles (glasses), and where are yours? – They are on the second shelf from the top. 5. – Where are the scissors? – They are in the box. 6. – Where are the handkerchiefs? – They are in the drawer. 7. – Where is the watch? – It's on the table. 8. – Where is the money? – It's in the bag. 9. – Introduce me to these Swedes. – These are not Swedes, these are Finns. They are businessmen from Helsinki. – And the interpreter? – He is (a) Russian. 10. He speaks both Chinese and Japanese, but he is a Turk from Ankara. 11. – Let's go to Stockholm by train. – It's out of the question. 12. – Look at these Norwegians. – They are Danish. They are from Copenhagen. 13. This lawyer is Dutch (a Dutchman), his wife is French (a Frenchwoman).

Task 2

1. Professor Jones was met by students. The professor was met by the students of our group.
2. We have kittens at home. The kittens are great friends.
3. There are mistakes in your test. Correct the mistakes, please.
4. Doctor Clark is in the hospital now. Call the doctor and go to bed.
5. What luck! What a pity! What a pleasure! What deep snow! What fine weather!
6. What fun! What bad news! What a nice cat! What good advice!
7. He was found by the police and sent to prison. The prison was in a small town in the north.
8. His lawyer went to the prison to meet his client.
9. Let's go there by train. The train leaves from Platform Eight.
10. The United States is a country in North America.
11. I never take sugar in tea. The tea isn't sweet at all, where is the sugar?
12. The cakes are wonderful. Give me a second cake, please.
13. He read the letter from beginning to end. Look at the beginning of the text.
14. The / An elephant is one of the biggest animals in the world.
15. How was the film? – Awful! We left in the middle.
16. It was by chance that I took bus sixty-four. The bus went to the airport.
17. She got a job in a bank in Liverpool. The bank is in the centre of the town.
18. It's interesting work. It's a good job. It's a hard life.
19. Uncle Tom plays the guitar after supper. Jim wants a new guitar.
20. I'll do it with pleasure. It's a pleasure to talk to you.
21. You did the same mistake again. He did it by mistake.
22. What good health Aunt Emily has! Have you got an aunt?
23. You are making great progress. The progress we've made is great.
24. The moon was shining brightly in the sky. The night was warm and calm.
25. The Netherlands are in Central Europe. The Amazon is in Brazil.

26. _ Monkeys are funny _ animals. – What _ nonsense!
27. They went _ side by _ side and disappeared round the corner.
28. He played _ football when he was at _ school. The school wasn't far from her house.
29. They fell in _ love at _ first sight and lived a long and happy life.
30. Does he live in the Urals or in the Crimea? – He lives in the Far East.
31. _ Life is impossible without _ air. The air was cold and wet.
32. Let's go on _ foot, we aren't in a hurry. – It's out of the question.
33. To tell the truth, we had to learn a/the poem by _ heart.
34. Don't lose _ heart. I am with you.
35. Let's go to the cinema in the evening. Let's take a rest for a while.
36. They are _ brother and _ sister. Have you got a brother or a sister?
37. My brother is a teacher. He is still at _ work. He is still in the school.

November

The stripped and shapely
Maple grieves
The loss of her
Departed leaves.

The ground is hard,
As hard as stone.
The year is old,
The birds are flown.

And yet the world,
Nevertheless,
Displays a certain
Loveliness—

The beauty of
The bone. Tall God
Must see our souls
This way, and nod.

Give thanks: we do,
Each in his place
Around the table
During grace.



UNIT 2. DESCRIBING PEOPLE

Describing People

Donna. Well, she's kind of a lively, talkative person in her late teens. She's fairly tall with a good figure. She's got a heart-shaped face with a small sort of turned-up nose. So, attractive, really. She's got long black wavy hair and blue eyes with very long eyelashes. Her complexion is ... well, she's olive-skinned. Her lips are very full and she's got dimples, dimples on her cheeks.

Colin. He's a very big guy, you know, well-built, with very broad shoulders. Not fat really, really just well-built. He's in his early thirties. He's got a long face with thin lips. Oh, and a small scar on his chin. He's got very short fair hair with long sideburns and a moustache. Eyes? I haven't really noticed the colour, he wears glasses. He's got thick eyebrows and a kind of a long straight nose.

Janet? She is so sophisticated, well-dressed, expensive hairstyle and so on. I'd say she is in her late thirties or early forties, but she looks younger. She is about average height and very slim. Her hair is very blonde, dyed, I think, but I'm not sure about that. It's always very neat, not long. She's got pale grey eyes with thin eyebrows. Her face is always sunburnt and very well-made-up. It's an attractive face, not very beautiful, but very attractive, you know what I mean - high cheekbones, a small chin. Oh, and yes, there's a beauty spot on her left cheek. She is a very calm and reliable sort of person, very sociable and always very, very polite.

Robert? Oh, Robert's a wonderful person, really. He is elderly, but not old, still very lively and amusing. He is probably in his early seventies. He's got white hair, receding a bit, and a small white beard. He is medium-built, a little overweight, perhaps. He's got very nice large brown eyes and he always seems to be smiling. A lot of wrinkles round the eyes, laughter lines, I think you call them. He's got a very high lined forehead which makes him look very intelligent, which he is, of course.

VOCABULARY

1. Appearance

good-looking, pleasant-looking, pretty, handsome, charming, *She is nice to look at.*

to have a good / slender / plump / stout / graceful / well-cut / well-shaped figure;

to be strongly built (slightly built, well built); to be narrow-shouldered (broad-shouldered);

to be long-legged; to be stooping;

to have thick / thin / wavy / straight / dyed / curly / blonde / red / dark / hair, to be bald;

to have (wear) a haircut / crew cut, to wear one's hair long (short, shoulder-length), fringe;

to wear a plait/ a pony tail; to have (wear) a beard (a moustache, sideburns), to be clean shaven;

to have a common / round / oval face, to have regular/ irregular / rough / delicate features;

to have a high / open / low forehead, to have a pale / rosy / fair / dark / tanned complexion;

to have blue / wide-set / close-set / deep-set / slanting / small / large / expressive eyes;

to have long / short / curving eyelashes, to have thick / thin / bushy / arched / straight eyebrows;

to have a long / short / straight / aquiline / turned-up / snub (= *short and turned-up*) nose;

to have hollow / plump / rosy cheeks; to have a pointed / double / round / square chin;

to have thin / full / well-shaped lips, to have even / uneven teeth;

She is blue-eyed and rosy-cheeked. He is fair-haired and round-faced. She is snub-nosed.

to have smooth skin, to have freckles;

to have a dimple in / on one's chin, to have dimples on one's cheeks;

I'm like Mum in appearance. They look alike. They are as like as two peas. He's the image of his father. She is very different from her elder sister.

2. Character

absent-minded, bright, capable, clever, honest, hospitable, intelligent, just, kind-hearted, naughty, light-minded, reliable, selfish, serious, slap-dash, sociable, stubborn, trustful, well-read, witty.

3. Age: What's your age? How old are you?

to be (under, nearly, over, about) 17, a fourteen-year-old boy (girl);

to be under age yet, to come of age; *e.g. In a month she'll come of age.*

to be in one's teens, a teenager (13 – 19); *He in his teens. They are in their teens.*

to be in one's early thirties (30 – 33), to be in one's mid thirties (34 – 36),

to be in one's late thirties (37 – 40); *She is in her late thirties.*

to be elderly, to be middle-aged, to look one's age, to be (of) the same age; *He is middle-aged.*

She doesn't look her age. They are (of) the same age. Jim is the same age as Dave.

Jim is as old as Dave. She is 3 years older (younger) than me. She is 3 years my senior (junior).

Learn the poem.

November (by Thomas Hood)

'No `sun – 'no `moon!

'No `morn – 'no `noon –

'No `dawn – 'no `dusk –

'No `proper `time of `day –

'No `sky – 'no `earthly `view –

'No `distance | 'looking `blue –

'No `road – 'no `street –

'No `«t'other `side of `way» –

'No `end | of `any `Row –

'No indi `cations | 'where the `Crescents `go –

'No →top | to any `steeple –

'No recog `nition | of fa `miliar `people!

'No `warmth, 'no `cheerfulness, 'no `healthful `ease,

'No `comfortable `feel | in `any `member –

'No `shade, 'no `shine, 'no `butterflies, 'no `bees –

'No `fruits, 'no `flowers, 'no `leaves, 'no `birds –

'No – `vember!

morn = morning; t'other = the other

Crescent – a street having a shape of a crescent (*Badgery Crescent* in London)

Row – a street formed by two rows of houses

Ноябрь

Ни теней, ни огня,

Ни рассвета, ни дня,

Ни луны и ни солнца в помине,

Ни небес, ни земли,

Ни просвета вдали,

Ни границ, ни предметов, ни сини,

Ни дорог, ни ручьёв,

Ни начал, ни концов,

Ни озябшего шпиля часовни,

Ни приезда гостей,

Ни веселых затей,

Никуда и не выбраться ровно,

Ни письма, ни газет,

Ни блаженства, ни бед,

Ни вестей ни с востока, ни с юга,

Ни пчелы, ни цветка,

Ни живого листка,

Ни тепла, ни утех, ни досуга,

Но туман, но разлад,

Но слова невпопад – но-ябрь!

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. A. Practise the pronunciation of the words.

Handsome, stout, figure, broad-shouldered, straight, curly, shoulder-length, plait, pony tail, bald, moustache, beard, rough, delicate, forehead, eyebrows, eyelashes, bushy, aquiline, double, freckles, appearance, image, pink, height.

B. Translate into Russian: index finger, little finger, middle finger, ring finger, thumb; big toe, long toe, middle toe, fourth toe, little toe.

Ex. 2. Read and translate the phrases.

1. We asked him for help but he just gave us the finger. 2. She twisted her husband round her little finger. 3. I'll keep my fingers crossed for you. 4. We all worked hard and Brenda didn't move a finger. 5. I jump when she snaps her fingers. 6. My fingers itch to fight with him.

Ex. 3. Paraphrase using the vocabulary of № 1.

1. He has no hair on his head. 2. Alice is quite good-looking. 3. She has a short and turned-up nose. 4. Harry has a strong athletic body. 5. His face is quite ordinary. 6. Meg's hair is short. 7. Her uncle has hair above his mouth and on his chin. 8. Her hair reaches her shoulders. 9. His skin was brown. 10. Marcia has exactly the same appearance as her mother. 11. She weighs 90 kilos. 12. Jenny has a small waist and long legs. 13. Sam was tall and had big shoulders. 14. She had yellow spots on her face. 15. He had bushy eyebrows, a long nose and a big mouth.

Ex. 4. Say the opposite.

1. Dan was broad-shouldered and strongly built. 2. Mrs Morris was old and ugly. 3. Dr Shackley had a narrow forehead, thin eyebrows and large wide-set eyes. 4. His father was absolutely bald. 5. Jim was clean-shaven and looked younger. 6. He had a broad face, plump rosy cheeks and a round double chin. 7. Jessica had a tanned complexion and dark curly hair that she wore very short. 8. She had small dull light-blue eyes. 9. They are very different from each other. 10. She has thin pale lips and uneven teeth. 11. Her nose is long and straight. 12. Russ is short and stout, his hair is black and he wears it shoulder-length. 13. He has rough features and bad skin.

Ex. 5. Translate into English.

Ларри выглядел очень молодо. У него была приятная внешность. Его лицо было загорелым, черты лица не особенно красивыми, но правильными. У него был довольно высокий лоб и над ним масса тёмных волос. Его глаза казались большими. Цвет глаз я не мог определить, так как он смеялся. Я обратил внимание на его руки. Они были длинными, но для своей величины не широкими, красивой формы и одновременно сильными.

Грей был в действительности чуть выше Ларри, но стройный Ларри казался рядом с ним мальчиком. Грей был скорее эффектным, чем красивым. У него был короткий курносый нос и ясные, ярко-голубые глаза. Красивые густые черные волосы были гладко причёсаны. Он был очень сильный и нравился девушкам.

Третьим за столом был Эллиот. Ему было около пятидесяти. Он был элегантным мужчиной с хорошей фигурой. Его светлые волосы слегка поседели.

Ex. 6. Paraphrase the sentences using the vocabulary of № 2.

1. My grandmother likes to receive guests. 2. Jim does very well at school. Everything comes easy to him. 3. His elder brother can never tell a lie. 4. My uncle often forgets things, sometimes he is so deep in his thoughts that he takes no notice of what is going around. 5. People respect his father and often go to him when they have a problem. 6. It's practically impossible to make my little nephew change his mind. 7. Fred thinks only of himself. 8. Her son starts to shout and kick every time he wants something he can't get. 9. His niece likes to communicate with different people and easily makes friends. 10. He has a good sense of humour and is always ready to joke. 11. Sam never takes anything seriously. 12. Her mother believes everything people tell her. 13. Justin does everything carelessly. 14. He knows all about literature. 15. He is able to solve very difficult intellectual problems. 16. She is always ready to help and support others.

Ex. 7. Say the opposite.

1. Mr Hide doesn't like to meet new people. 2. Hank is very attentive. 3. Pauline is light-minded. 4. Her cousin is a liar. 5. George is slow. 6. Mark is suspicious of other people. 7. Her son is well

behaved. 8. He has never opened a book in his life. 9. Aunt Clara is quite generous. 10. He can be easily persuaded. 11. David is stupid. 12. He doesn't understand humour. 13. She has a cruel heart. 14. Pamela's parents never have guests.

Ex. 8. Translate into Russian.

1. His boss says John is very **efficient**. 2. I think Meg is too **tense** and **sensitive**. 3. Try to be more **sensible**. 4. I'd like to have a **loyal** friend. 5. We find Patricia very **confident** and rather **aloof**. 6. I'm afraid Jerry is too **impatient** and **rude** to become a good teacher. 7. She is so kind and **sympathetic**. 8. His mother-in-law is said to be a **sullen** and **quarrelsome** woman. 9. He's **good-natured** and **easy-going**. 10. Englishmen are often considered **cool** and **reserved**. 11. He isn't very **tactful**. 12. Jake is rather **narrow-minded** and **envious**, you know. 13. Liz is quite **frank** and **broad-minded**. 14. He is very **organized** – he keeps everything in his flat in perfect order. 15. My granny is kind and sympathetic; I often go to her when I'm in trouble and she would always listen to my problems and offer a **shoulder to cry on**. 16. Fred is rather a **home-loving** guy and doesn't like to go out. 17. My younger sister is so **untidy**, she is always leaving her clothes and belongings lying around.

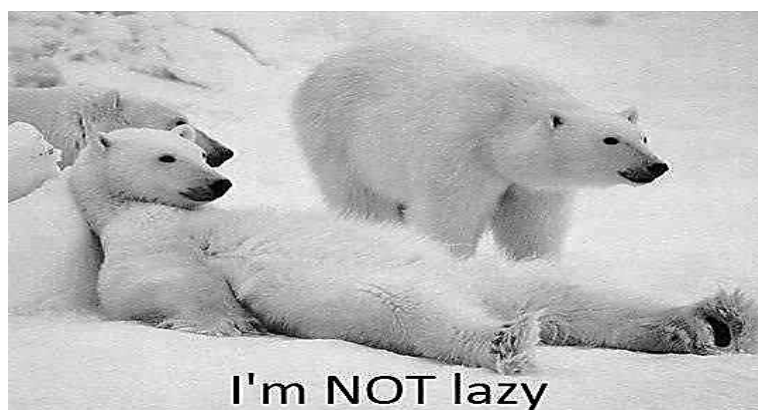
Ex. 9. Translate into English.

1. Мой брат упрямый и капризный. Иногда он сводит меня с ума. 2. Она слишком доверчива. 3. Он эгоист и очень нетерпим к другим людям. 4. Её мама гостеприимна. 5. Моя бабушка добрая и прекрасно готовит. 6. Майк очень умный и начитанный. Он учится в университете. 7. Не будь таким упрямым. Послушай совета своих родителей. 8. Он слишком легкомысленный и безответственный. Не удивительно (No wonder), что у него проблемы с учёбой. 9. Ник остроумный и общительный. У него много друзей. 10. Мэри гордится своим отцом. Он юрист, очень надёжный, честный и справедливый. 11. Он слишком серьёзный и не очень общительный. 12. Тебе нужно быть серьёзнее, ты слишком легкомысленный и небрежный. 13. Джим очень способный и умный, но немного рассеянный.

Ex. 10. Read the text and translate the words in bold.

Sharing Doesn't Always Come Easy

Well, I've had to share a flat with many different types of people over the years, as I'm single and still a student at university. One of my first and worst flatmates was a real **party animal** – he was out nearly every night socializing. He used to sleep all day – definitely a **night owl**. Probably the worst thing was that he kept talking endlessly – a real **chatterbox**. After this experience I decided I wanted to share a flat with somebody quieter. So my next flatmate was a bit of a **bookworm**, and spent all his evenings reading. He was a **vegetarian**, which caused a bit of difficulty when we wanted to prepare meals together. He liked to take care of himself and was a kind of a **fitness freak**, spending a lot of his time working out. My last but one flatmate was a **workaholic**; he would spend at least twelve hours in the office every day. But at the weekends he turned into a real **couch potato** spending all his time horizontal in front of the TV and eating all sorts of junk food available. My last flatmate was probably the best – he couldn't sit still; he was a **DIY enthusiast** and used to fix everything round the house. He was also a **globetrotter**, and he took every chance to travel. So I was on my own most of the time especially on holidays.



I'm NOT lazy

I'm HIGHLY motivated to do NOTHING

Ex. 11. Paraphrase using the vocabulary of № 3. Say each sentence in all possible ways.

1. What is your age? 2. Her cousin is fifteen years and ten months old. 3. His niece will be eighteen next month. 4. Her brother is twelve. 5. My mother is forty-five. 6. Her uncle is twenty-nine and her aunt is twenty-six. 7. His mother is thirty-one. His father is thirty-one too. 8. My grandpa is seventy-two, but he is rather young in spirit.

Ex. 12. Translate into English.

1. Сколько лет твоему отцу? 2. Моя сестра еще несовершеннолетняя. 3. Джону около пятидесяти. 4. Моей маме за сорок. 5. Её мать – пожилая женщина. 6. Я и моя соседка по парте одного возраста. 7. Мой брат младше меня на пять лет. 8. Папа старше мамы на два года. 9. Её мама – женщина средних лет, но она не выглядит на свой возраст. 10. Его брату между тридцатью и сорока. 11. Мэри немного больше двадцати. 12. Стив ещё подросток. 13. Через несколько дней он станет совершеннолетним.

Ex. 13. Translate into Russian.

1. She was on the right side of forty, at least ten years younger than her husband. 2. The boy was no older than thirteen. 3. They had a son and a daughter, both under three years of age. 4. Now, at thirty-eight he has grown heavy and bald, and might be taken for forty-five. 5. Jake outlived his wife by twenty years. 6. His thirtieth birthday fell on a Thursday. 7. She'll be nineteen on her next birthday. 8. Winslow was ageing fast. 9. He has just turned twenty. 10. David judged him to be about his own age. 11. She guessed his age at about twenty-four. 12. In age we were less than a year apart. 13. I'm twice your age. 14. He was approaching 86 when he died.



Ex. 14. Translate into Russian.

A.1. Emma has long wavy hair with a centre parting (center part – AmE). She wears her hair pushed back behind her ears. 2. Ron has short spiky fair hair. He's got a five o'clock shadow and sideburns. 3. Kathy has straight shoulder-length hair, a side parting (side part – AmE) and a short fringe (short bangs – AmE). 4. Sue has bobbed blonde hair with a wispy fringe. 5. Richard is clean-shaven with greying hair and a receding hairline. 6. Jake is slightly tanned with wavy hair and a roman nose. He has a stubble, a double chin and wears half moon spectacles (reading glasses – AmE).

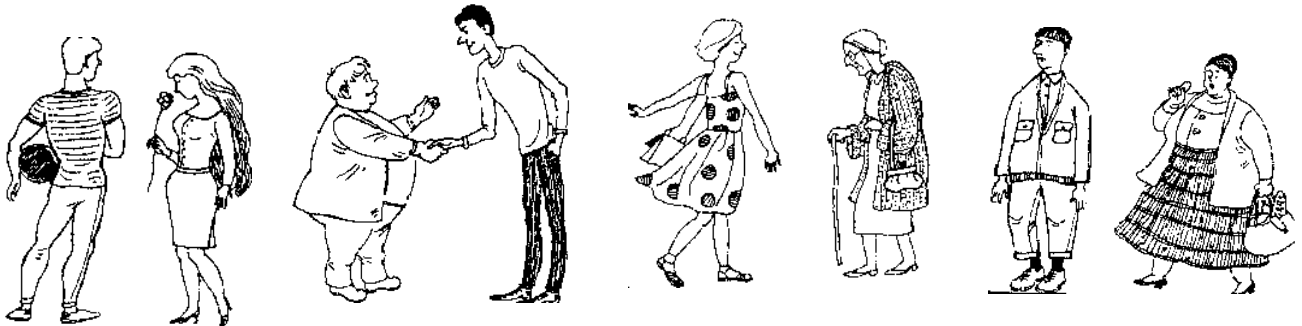
B. 1. Suddenly Roy's face, which had been grave, set and haunted, lit up with his most lively and impish smile. 2. He was choking with laughter. 3. The colour rushed into his face, as if he was about to sneeze. 4. She rubbed her nose, as if it tickled. 5. His nose was stuffed and he had to use his handkerchief to blow it. 6. He had big teeth that stuck out in front. 7. I stared at them in open-mouthed surprise. 8. Dan raised his eyebrows slightly. 9. She blinked her eyelids against the

sunlight and shielded her eyes with one hand. 10. Her hair, often tied into a tail, was braided in two plaits now. 11. He was in his sixties but his thick black hair didn't show grey at all.

Ex. 15. Speak on the topic. What makes a person attractive?
Follow the plan:

1. Make an introduction
2. Express your opinion
3. Give arguments and examples
4. Give a conclusion

Ex. 16. Describe the people.



Jim Mary Charles Ben Linda Aunt Jane Jack Maggy

Ex. 17. Describe the people.

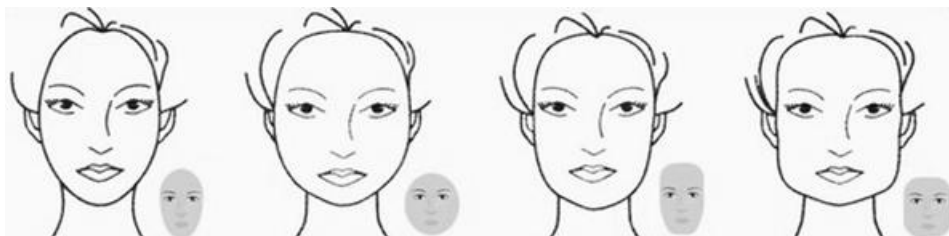


Eric Mrs Smith Ann Sam
 Barbara Eve Liz Brenda

Comment on the phrase: What makes us human beings is irony and compassion.

Ex. 18. Read and translate the texts. Learn some useful word combinations.

REVEALING FACES (The shape of your face can give a clue to your personality)



SMALL FACE

You don't enjoy people intruding into your personal life and invading your privacy and can be rather secretive. Reflective and intelligent, yours is a passionate but firm personality, although you find these two traits in conflict at times. A tendency to be cautious means you don't trust too easily, but you do value a circle of close friends and family members.

OVAL FACE

A good decision-maker, you have strength of character, lots of energy, and usually finish what you start. Affectionate and outgoing by nature, you can be a bit gullible.

SQUARE FACE

You expect a lot from other people, but give as much in return. You're stubborn, strong-willed and quick to learn, but your staying power runs out when you lose interest. Highly sensitive to criticism, you're aggressive under pressure.

THIN FACE

You don't suffer fools gladly and have an offbeat sense of humour. Energetic but able to balance action with thought, you're not one who follows the crowd. You enjoy competition in the love stakes and opt for a partner who's companionable as well as attractive.

HEART-SHAPED

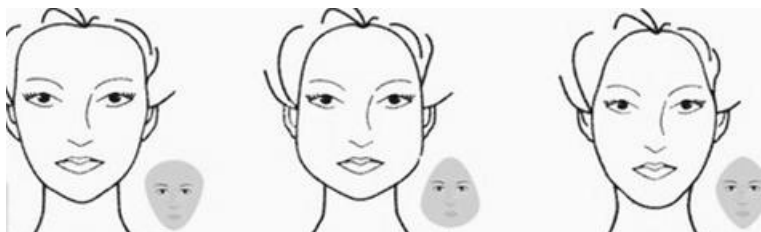
Practical rather than a thinker, you have a degree of charm that can be devastating. Your romantic judgement can sometimes let you down, though. You appear placid and cool in most situations, but this hides a quick temper when crossed. Relationships may suffer if your partner can't live up to your high expectations.

BROAD FACE

A strong sense of your own importance means you like to be taken seriously by friends. You can be kind and sympathetic, but won't waste it on those you feel don't deserve it. Affectionate and loving rather than passionate, yours is an energetic and intelligent nature with optimism high on your list of the important things in life.

ROUND FACE

Short and round shows you're slightly erratic and romantic. You're positive about your own aims, generous and an excellent host with close friends. You prefer mental activity to physical and there's a lazy streak that comes out now and then if you don't check yourself.



Ex. 19. Fill in the table with definitions: *generous, hardworking, mature, naïve, kind, confident, silly, mean, naughty, unfriendly, funny, immature, introvert, pompous, extravert, nice, cunning, versatile, smart, lazy, insecure, ambitious, strong, noisy, stubborn, easy-going, arrogant, shy, honest, sensitive, moody.*

1.	A person whose feelings change too quickly.
2.	This person is not very confident and worries a lot about how he/she behaves, looks like, what he/she does
3.	A person who gives more of something, especially money, than is usual or expected; a helpful person
4.	A person, who behaves in a very proud and unpleasant way towards other people, because they believe they are more important than others
5.	An adult who behaves like a child
6.	A person feels very nervous and doesn't usually talk in a big company
7.	Gentle and caring; warm-hearted
8.	A person who believes that people are honest and kind and that everything is easy in life
9.	A person who behaves badly and doesn't do what he/she is told
10.	A person who prefers to say only truth
11.	Friendly and pleasant
12.	A person who can deceive to have a benefit for him/herself
13.	This person likes to be loud, to talk loudly, to laugh loudly, to shout
14.	Intelligent
15.	This person does what he wants and doesn't like to change his mind
16.	A person who knows a lot about different subjects and has a plenty of skills; a well-rounded person
17.	This person prefers to spend time with people
18.	A person who feels comfortable only alone
19.	This person always has plans for the future and strives to make them happen
20.	A couch-potato, a homebody; a person whose hobby is to do nothing
21.	This person doesn't usually use his/her brain
22.	This person is not easily annoyed, worried or upset
23.	A person who feels sure about his/her actions, ideas and abilities
24.	This person thinks he/she is more important than he/she really is
25.	A workaholic; a person who works and studies hard
26.	A grown-up person
27.	Confident, determined, not easily worried by other people
28.	This person usually behaves in such a way that makes everyone laugh
29.	Stingy; not willing to spend money
30.	A person who understands other people's feelings; this person can easily be offended
31.	The person who doesn't want to be friends with anybody

Comment on the phrase:

“Character is like a tree and reputation like its shadow. The shadow is what we think of it; the tree is the real thing” – Abraham Lincoln

Ex. 20. Fill in the gaps with the adjectives from the table of exercise 19.

- 1) When it comes to spending money, Sally becomes so angry. She is very _____.
- 2) Brave people are usually very _____ about what they do and how they do it.
- 3) The law in Germany is so strict, because it helps Germans not to feel _____ This way they are sure, that nobody will be able to harm them.
- 4) I hate when you are so _____. What a couch-potato!
- 5) It is so great, when a person can do so many things and know a lot about the world as my friend does. He is a very _____ person.
- 6) _____ people cannot make decisions on their own; they do not want to think about their future and usually live with their parent even when they are 30 years old.
- 7) Don't be so _____! Don't you see he is a liar? How can you believe his words?
- 8) This friend of yours is too _____. He overestimates his qualities. He is arrogant in his every move, even his clothes are too glamorous.
- 9) Young people are usually more _____ than old ones. They have lots of plans for the future and try to do as much as possible to make their dreams come true.
- 10) Being a school teacher is very difficult. Some children can be _____ – they run, shout and don't listen to the teacher.

Ex. 21. Study the table. Describe some people you know answering these questions.

Model:

My best friend is sociable and moody. She is tall and long-legged with dark wavy hair and a few wrinkles. She likes dancing, dogs and science fiction.

What's he/she like?	What does he/she look like?	What does he/she like?
friendly and sporty	pretty with long brown hair and green eyes	studying languages and travelling
quiet and strange	good-looking and slim	reading and painting
selfish and stupid	tall, beautiful and very sexy	playing sports and going out
lazy and rude	short, fat and bald	football and video games
sweet and shy	attractive with blue eyes and very short blonde hair	fishing and watching old black and white films
polite and nervous	old and very attractive with white hair and brown eyes	drinking beer and watching TV
cool and interesting	handsome with curly grey hair and big eyes	singing and going to the theatre
awful and unfriendly	young and suntanned with wavy black hair	cycling and going to nightclubs
sad and nice	tall, broad-shouldered with a lovely smile	cats and rainy autumn days
ambitious and selfish	attractive with graying hair and sad hazel eyes	Christmas, making snowmen and playing snowballs
warm and friendly	plump with full lips and a dimple on one cheek	lying on the sofa and doing nothing
childish and noisy	very beautiful with green	arguing and saying stupid things

	eyes and long eye-lashes	
sensitive and tactful	rather plain with dull eyes	browsing the internet and chatting with friends

ENGLISH TO JAZZ

Listen and repeat. Practise the phrases.

UNIT 4. GIVING AND RECEIVING

COMPLIMENTS

ITEM 1.

YOU LOOK WONDERFUL TODAY

- You look wonderful today.
- Thank you. So do you.
- You look wonderful today.
- Thank you. So do you.

- That's a nice colour on you.
- Thank you. I'm glad you like it.
- That's a nice colour on you.
- Thank you. I'm glad you like it.

- You look great.
- So do you.
- You look great. You look wonderful.
- You look beautiful today.
- So do you. So do you.
- Great. Wonderful. Beautiful.
- You look great.
- So do you.
- That's a beautiful colour on you.
- Thank you. I'm glad you like it.

ITEM 2.

THE DINNER WAS DELICIOUS

- The dinner was delicious.
- The dinner was delicious.
- Thank you. I'm glad you enjoyed it.
- Delicious. Delicious. It was delicious.
- Thank you. I'm glad you enjoyed it.
- I enjoyed it very much. I really did.
- I enjoyed it very much. I really did.
- The dessert was especially good.
- Where did you get it?
- I got it at Baskin Robins.

ITEM 3. WHAT A GREAT HOUSE.

- What a great house. It's gorgeous.
- It's terrific.
- Thank you.
- Is it new?
- No, it isn't. We just redecorated.
- Well done. Very well done.
- I'm very glad you like it.

- What a great house. It's gorgeous.
- It's terrific.
- Thank you.
- Is it new?
- No, it isn't. We just redecorated.
- Well done. Very well done.
- I'm very glad you like it.

ITEM 4.

YOU SPEAK RUSSIAN VERY WELL.

- You speak Russian very well.
- Oh, no. Not really.
- Yes, you do. You really do.
- You really do speak Russian quite fluently.
- Thank you. You are very kind.
- No, I mean it. I really mean it.
- I mean it. I mean it. I really mean it.
- Thanks a lot. You're very kind.
- You really are very kind.
- You play tennis very well.
- Oh, no. Not really.
- Yes, you do. You really do.
- You really do play tennis very well.
- Thank you. You're very kind.
- No, I mean it. I really mean it.
- I mean it. I mean it. I really mean it.
- You really are very kind.

ITEM 5. IT'S BEEN A LONG TIME.

- It's been a long time.
- You look marvellous.
- You haven't changed a bit.
- Neither have you. Neither have you.
- You look as young as ever.
- So do you. So do you.
- It's been a long time.
- You look marvellous.
- You haven't changed a bit.

Give compliments to each other using the conversational phrases from *English to Jazz*.

ENGLISH TO JAZZ

Listen and repeat. Practise the phrases.

UNIT 9.

GIVING AND RECEIVING THANKS

ITEM 1. THANK YOU SO MUCH

- Thank you so much.
- Thank you so much.
- You're welcome. You're welcome.
You're always welcome.
- Thank you ever so much. I appreciate it.
- I do. I do appreciate it. I really do.
- I'm glad you like it.
- Thank you. Thank you ever so much.
- You're welcome. I'm glad you like it
I'm very glad you like it.

ITEM 2. NO TROUBLE AT ALL

- Thanks a lot for everything.
- Thanks a lot for the trouble.
- It is no trouble at all. No trouble.
- No trouble at all.
- Thank you for your time. For your
time. Thank you for your time.
- It was very nice of you.
- It was a pleasure.

ITEM 3. THAT WAS VERY KIND OF YOU

- That was very kind of you.
- I was happy to oblige.
- That was so kind of you.
- I'm glad I could help. I'm so glad.
- That was awfully kind of you.
- Kind of you. Kind of you.
- So kind of you.
- I was happy to oblige.
- That was so kind of you.
- I'm glad, I could help. I'm glad I
could help. I'm so glad.

ITEM 4. ANY TIME

- Thanks, thanks again.
- Any time. It's my pleasure.
- Thanks.
- Don't mention it. I enjoyed doing it.
- Thank you. Thanks.
- Thank you. Thanks again.
- Any time. Any time.
- It's my pleasure. Any time.
- Thank you for listening.

- Thank you for listening.
- And good-bye. – And good-bye.
- Bye-bye!

Translate into English using the phrases

- Мы давно не виделись.
Вы прекрасно выглядите!
- Спасибо, вы тоже.
- Вы совсем не изменились.
- Вы тоже.
Вы выглядите как всегда молодо.
- Спасибо за помощь.
Вы были очень добры.
- Не стоит благодарности.
Я был рад помочь.
- Еще раз спасибо.
Я действительно ценю это.
- Обращайтесь в любое время.
Увидимся.
- Вечер был чудесный.
Спасибо за приглашение.
- Это я получил удовольствие.
- Обед был великолепный,
особенно хорош был десерт.
- Я рад, что вам понравилось.
- Боюсь, я сделал много ошибок
- Совсем нет. Ты очень хорошо
говоришь по-французски.
- О, нет. Вы очень добры.
- Но я действительно так думаю.
- Большое спасибо за понимание.
Я ценю это.
- Все в порядке, не думай об этом.
- Какой великолепный дом!
- Я рад, что вам нравится.
- Он новый?
- Нет, мы просто сделали ремонт.
- Очень хорошо сделано!
- Спасибо, вы очень добры.
- Я действительно так считаю.
- Вы были ужасно добры.
- Большое спасибо за беспокойство.
- Никакого беспокойства.
- Был рад помочь.
- Боюсь, мне пора идти.

- Не пропадайте.
 - Конечно.
 - До свидания, желаю хорошего дня.
 - Спасибо, вам тоже.
- Передавайте привет семье.

December

First snow! The flakes,
So few, so light,
Remake the world
In solid white.

All bundled up,
We feel as if
We were fat penguins,
Warm and stiff.

The toy-packed shops
Half split their sides,
And Mother brings home
Things she hides.

Old carols peal.
The dusk is dense.
There is a mood
Of sweet suspense.

The shepherds wait,
The kings, the tree—
All wait for something
Yet to be,

Some miracle.
And then it's here,
Wrapped up in hope—
Another year!



UNIT 3. FAMILY

Family Life in Britain

A "typical" British family used to consist of mother, father and two children. But in recent years there have been many changes in family life. For example, since the law made it easier to get a divorce, the number of divorces has increased. That's why 24% of British children live with only one parent, usually their mother.

The contemporary British child doesn't have a lot of companionship from brothers and sisters, because the average family has only one or two children. Most British children live with their parents at least until they finish school at the age of seventeen or eighteen. Then many go away to college, leaving some parents sad and lonely in their empty nest and others enjoying their release from parental responsibilities.

But many adults stay with their parents during their college years or return home after graduation. Today's parents can't even be sure that their married children have moved out forever. After a divorce they may return to the parental home temporarily or even on a long-term basis.

Older people take pride in their independence, enjoy their freedom and don't want to be a burden to their children. The telephone, the car and the airplane keep them in close contact even when they live in different parts of the country.

Members of family – grandparents, aunts, uncles, cousins – keep in touch, but they see less of each other than they used to. This is because people often move away from home town to work and so the family becomes scattered. Christmas is the traditional season for reunions.

Although the family group is smaller nowadays than it used to be, relatives often travel many miles in order to spend the holiday together. Family parties may be all the more joyous when they bring together relatives who haven't seen each other for a while.

Text 2. Aunt Emily

Of all my relatives, I like my aunt Emily the best. She's my mother's youngest sister. She has never married, and lives alone in a small village near Bath. She is in her late fifties, but she's quite young in spirit. She has a fair complexion, thick brown hair, which she wears in a bun, and dark brown eyes. She has a kind face, and when you meet her, the first thing you notice is her smile.

Her face is a little wrinkled now but I think she is still rather attractive. She is the sort of person you can always go to if you have a problem. She is a very active person. She likes reading and

, gardening, and she 'still 'goes for 'long 'walks 'over the , hills. She's ex'tremely , generous, but 'not 'very 'tolerant with 'people who 'don't a , gree with her. I 'hope, I'm as con'tented as , she is | when 'I'm , her age.

VOCABULARY

1. Relations by birth: mother (mummy, mum; mom (AmE), father (daddy, dad), sister, half-sister, brother, half-brother, son, daughter, (identical) twins, grandparents, grandfather (grandpa), grandmother (granny, grandma), grandson, granddaughter, grandchildren, great-grandmother, great-grandfather, great-grandchildren, uncle, aunt, cousin, second cousin, nephew, niece, close relatives, distant relatives.

2. Relations by marriage: husband, wife, father-in-law, mother-in-law, son-in-law, daughter-in-law, sister-in-law, brother-in-law, parents-in-law, step-mother, step-father, step-son, step-daughter, stepchildren, step-brother.

3. Word combinations

to be a relation to smb, to have a world of relatives, on one's mother's (father's) side;

Who is this man to you? Is he a relation to you? – Yes, he's a relative on my mother's side

name, surname, patronymic, nickname, namesake, neighbour, close friend, acquaintance, to get acquainted with, classmate, groupmate, flatmate, seatmate, workmate, colleague;

to be single, to be a bachelor, to divorce smb, to be divorced, ex-wife, ex-husband, widow, widower, to be engaged, engagement, fiancée, bride, fiancé, bridegroom, marriage, wedding, steady girl-friend, steady boy-friend, partner;

4. Word combinations

to marry (smb), to get married, to be married (to smb), a married couple, the head of the family; *Tom and Susan married last year. They got married last year. He married her last year. They are married now. Susan is married to Tom. Who is Tom married to?*

to have a baby, to be born, to be an only child, the pet of the family, in one's childhood, to keep house, to be an excellent housewife; *She isn't much of a housewife. We are four in the family.*

to be respected by colleagues, to be proud of, to have a heart of gold; to have much / little in common, to have a friendly family, to be on friendly terms, to be easy to deal with; *He is easy to deal with.*

to be just out of school, to do well at school / in English; *Mike is just out of school.*

to retire, to be retired, to die, to be dead;

His granny is retired. She retired last year. He died. He is dead.

5. Note: We use

Mr (Mr. AmE) ['mɪstə] to address a man;

Mrs (Mrs. AmE) ['mɪsɪz] to address a married woman;

Miss to address a girl or an unmarried woman;

Ms [mɪz] to address a woman when we don't know or it isn't important if she is married or not.

All those are only used with **full names** or **last names (surnames)**:

Hello, Mr Gray. The next candidate is Mrs Betty Smith.

Come in, Miss Brown. Meet Ms Mary Jones.

Sir and **madam** (**ma'am** [mæm] AmE) is a way of addressing a man or a woman to show respect:
Are you ready to order now, sir? Can I help you, madam?

6. Learn the proverbs and popular phrases. Use them in your conversation.

1. Blood is thicker than water.
2. Like father, like son.
4. A friend in need is a friend indeed.
3. Every family has a black sheep.
5. What are friends for?
6. It's easy to be wise after the event.
7. Don't keep a dog and bark yourself.
8. When the cat is away, the mice will play.
9. Never look a gift horse in the mouth.
10. Never judge a book by its cover.
11. Beauty is only skin deep.

Sing the song.

Happy Birthday to You

Happy birthday to you	May your birthday be bright	And we love you, we do
Happy birthday to you	From morning till night	And we love you, we do
Happy birthday, dear Mary	Happy birthday, happy birthday	Happy birthday, happy birthday
Happy birthday to you	Happy birthday to you	Happy birthday to you

JAZZ CHANTS

Do You Know Mary?

'Do you 'know 'Mary?
'Mary , who?
'Mary Mc , Donald
Of `course, I do
'Do you 'know her 'little , brother?
Yes, of `course I do
I 'know her , brother and her , mother
and her 'father `too
'Do you 'know her 'older , sister?
'Yes, of `course, I do
I 'know her 'older 'sister , Betty
and her 'younger 'sister `Sue
'Do you 'know her 'aunt , Esther?
'Yes, of `course, I do
I 'know her , aunts and her , uncles
and her 'cousins `too
'Do you 'know her 'husband , Bobby?
'Yes, of `course, I do
I 'know her , husband and his , brother
and his 'father , too

Baby Bobby

'Betty's 'baby's 'name is , Bobby
'Baby 'Bobby is a 'bad, 'bad , boy
'Bobby is a 'bad, 'bad , baby
He 'drives 'everybody , crazy
'Bobby is a 'bad, 'bad , baby
'Baby 'Bobby is a 'bad, 'bad , boy
'Bobby 'broke his 'mother's , glasses
, Bobby, , baby, 'why did you 'do , that?
'Bobby 'lost his 'father's , keys.
, Bobby, , baby, 'why did you 'do , that?
'Bobby 'threw the 'paper in the 'kitchen , sink
'Daddy got 'very, 'very , angry
He 'cut all the 'buttons off his 'father's , shirt
'Daddy got 'very, 'very , angry
'Bobby is a 'bad, 'bad , baby
'Baby 'Bobby is a 'bad, 'bad , boy

Big Bill Bell

He's , here
, Who's here?
, Bill's here
'Bill `who?
'Bill `Bell
, Bill , Bell?
'Who's `he?
You , know him
I , do?
Of `course, you do
He's a `friend of yours
He , is?
Of `course, he is
, Big Bill.
'Big 'Bill , Bell
'Oh, you 'mean `Bill?
Big Bill?
, That's , right. , That's , him
You 'know him 'very , well
, Sure I do
'Big 'Bill , Bell. 'Big 'Bill , Bell
I 'know him' very , well

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Find English equivalents for the following words and phrases in text 1.

- 1) бабушки и дедушки, дяди и тети, двоюродные братья и сёстры поддерживают отношения;
- 2) оставляя родителей грустными и одинокими;
- 3) гордятся своей независимостью;
- 4) семья становится разьединённой;
- 5) после развода они могут вернуться в родительский дом;
- 6) они не хотят быть обузой для своих детей;
- 7) традиционное время для воссоединения;
- 8) многие взрослые остаются с родителями;
- 9)

ещё более радостными; 10) временно или надолго; 11) с тех пор, как стало юридически легче получить развод; 12) уехали навсегда; 13) освобождение от родительских обязанностей; 14) иметь дружеские отношения; 15) наслаждаются своей свободой; 16) возвращаются домой после окончания учёбы; 17) современный британский ребёнок; 18) во время учебы в колледже; 19) по крайней мере пока не закончат школу; 20) сегодняшние родители даже не могут быть уверены; 21) родной город.

Ex. 2. Answer the questions.

1. What similarities do British and Russian families have?
2. Are there any differences?
3. Would you like to leave your hometown to study or to work?
4. Would you like to live together with a lot of your relatives? Why or why not?
4. What kind of family do you want to have?

Ex. 3. Find English equivalents for the following words and phrases in text 2.

1. ей давно за пятьдесят; 2. она довольна 3. из всех моих родственников; 4. активный человек; 5. молода духом; 6. долгие прогулки по холмам; 7. она не была замужем; 8. чрезвычайно щедрa; 9. младшая сестра моей мамы; 10. живёт одна; 11. она такой человек; 12. я надеюсь; 13. она любит читать и заниматься садоводством; 14. в маленькой деревне; 15. она всё ещё привлекательна; 16. не очень терпима к людям; 17. светлый цвет лица; 18. густые русые волосы; 19. вы всегда можете обратиться к ней, если у вас проблема; 20. которые она носит в пучке; 21. первое, что вы замечаете; 22. немного морщинистое; 23. которые с ней не соглашаются.

Ex. 4. Correct the statements if necessary.

1. Aunt Emily is in her early forties. 2. Her niece is very fond of her. 3. Aunt Emily lives in LA. 4. She is the sort of person that likes to laugh at other people's problems. 5. Aunt Emily feels young in spite of her age. 6. She likes to ride her motorbike over the hills. 7. The first thing you notice is her smart clothes. 8. She doesn't like when people don't agree with her. 9. She wears a haircut. 10. Her niece thinks she's ugly. 11. Her skin is fair. 12. Aunt Emily is divorced. 13. The skin on her face is very smooth and young. 14. She likes to laze in bed all day long. 15. Aunt Emily is extremely greedy. 16. Her niece wants to be as pleased with life as her aunt is when she is her age.

Ex. 5. Complete the sentences in your own way.

1. Of all my relatives ... 2. ... quite young in spirit. 3. When you meet ... the first thing you notice is ... 4. I think ... is still rather attractive. 5. She has ... hair which she wears ... 6. ... is the sort of person ... 7. ... go(es) for ... walks ... 8. ... a very active person. 9. ... not very tolerant with people who ... 10. I hope ...

Ex. 6. Explain in Russian and translate into English.

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Свекор | 2. Свекровь |
| 3. Зять | 4. Невестка |
| 5. Тесть | 6. Тёща |
| 7. Деверь | 8. Золовка |
| 9. Шурин | 10. Свояченица |
| 11. Свояк | 12. Сват и сватья |

Ex. 7. Fill in the blanks using the vocabulary of № 1 and № 2.

1. Her mother's parents, her, live in the country.
2. My Julia is my father's sister.
3. Their daughter's husband, their, is a dentist.
4. My favourite girl-cousin is my mother's youngest
5. Rachel has just married Ted and they live with Ted's mother, Rachel's
6. My youngest is my brother's son Danny, who is four.
6. Jake is her, that is her mother's second husband.
7. Susan's brother's wife, her, is easy to deal with.
8. Not long ago twin girls were born in their son's family, so now they have two
9. Some people refer to the US or its government as Sam.
10. It was very hard for Polly to be patient with her
- Tom Sawyer.
11. Earnest Hemingway had four who were on friendly terms with each other.
12. Queen Elizabeth's Princess Diana was very popular all around the world.
13. The singer Moby is a relative of the American writer Herman Melville, the author of the famous novel *Moby Dick*.
14. Little Red Riding Hood went through the forest to visit her
15. *Cinderella* tells about a wicked who treated her husband's daughter very badly.
16. She has two elder sisters and a brother. They are all married and have children, so she has a lot of
17. Mike's Dad married a woman with a son, so now Mike has a
18. Meet my sister's They married last year.
19. Brenda and David Carson are They are as like as two peas.
20. Harry Potter's were killed and he was brought up in the family of his

Ex. 8. Practise the pronunciation of the words.

Surname, patronymic, colleague, acquaintance, fiancée, bachelor, retire, pretty, widower, divorced, housewife, steady, marriage, groupmate, deal, heart.

Ex. 9. Complete the sentences using the vocabulary of № 3 and №4.

1. Her husband's name is also Stephen. He is my
2. My cousin and I have much..... We are friendly
3. He isn't my friend, he's just anof mine.
4. Nora is an housewife and cooks
5. Frieda's father is a strong-willed person and a good decision-maker. He is theof their family and he is very much respected by his
6. Her husband has recently died and she's anow.
7. Bill used to be a married man, but last year he his wife and now he is
8. She is sociable and kind and easy.....with.
9. Is this man any to you? – Yes, he is my
10. I have aof relatives on my mother's
11. Eve is just out of..... She wants to a university.
12. My granny worked at this hospital for thirty years. She a year ago and now lives in the country.
14. Ken is an child and his parents love him very much.
15. This puppy is theof my brother's family.
16. They are and are going to marry soon.
17. Don't look into your 's workbook.
18. Her father's name is Pyotr, so Petrovna is her
19. Jean isn't considering marriage yet, but she has aboyfriend.
20. Are you invited to Paul and Susan's

Ex. 10. Paraphrase the sentences.

1. She does the work about the house very well. 2. Her father makes all the important decisions in their family. 3. My uncle's daughter has neither brothers nor sisters. 4. He lives next door. 5. They met long ago. 6. His mother's mother is very kind. 7. Peter and Kathy are going to marry. 8. His uncle's wife has died. 9. Jack and I work together. He has no family of his own, but he spends all his free time with a girl. Her name is Maggy. 10. Greg and Nick are brothers and were born on one day. 11. They sit at one desk in the classroom and have the same name. 12. Andrew has a lot of acquaintances. 13. Everybody in the family loves this kitten. 14. We were in the same class at school. 15. They became husband and wife ten years ago. 16. Eve shares a flat with me. We have the same tastes and interests. 17. Mrs Bendal's colleagues think well of her. 18. My mother's sister had a husband, but now they don't live together. 19. Larry has just left school. 20. Her father's father doesn't work any more. He quit five years ago. 21. Lily has lots of relatives. They are related to her father. 22. Daniel and Rachel started a family 3 years ago.

Ex. 11. Say the opposite.

1. Henry is alive. 2. They don't know each other. 3. We live far from each other. 4. My grandpa seldom goes out. 5. Her father still works. 6. Linda left school a long time ago. 7. My elder brother is single. 8. Sandra isn't much of a housewife. 9. Nobody loves him in our family. 10. You have much in common. 11. We work at different places. 12. They have different names. 13. Stanley has very few relatives. 14. Jane's colleagues don't think much of her.

Ex. 12. Translate into English.

A.1. Кем вам приходится этот молодой человек? – Он какой-то дальний родственник со стороны моей матери. – Как его зовут? – Я не помню. 2. Это ваш знакомый? – Мы работаем вместе. 3. Они близкие друзья? – Да, они познакомились много лет назад. Они сидели за одной партой в школе. 4. Её коллеги считают её очень серьёзной, справедливой и надёжной. 5. Посмотри на жениха и невесту. 6. Джим и Делла обручены и собираются пожениться. Свадьба в следующем месяце. 7. Кто глава вашей семьи? 8. Его женитьба была очень удачной. Он и его жена очень счастливы вместе. 9. Моя подруга замужем за моим двоюродным братом. Они поженились в прошлом году. Вчера у них родился ребёнок.

B. 1. У нашей бабушки золотое сердце. Она очень добрая, щедрая и гостеприимная. Все её любят и уважают. 2. Какое прозвище у него было в детстве? 3. Кто ведёт хозяйство в вашей семье? 4. Наш сосед – тёзка моего отца, у них даже одинаковые отчества. 5. У меня масса родственников с маминной и папиной стороны. Мы все в дружеских отношениях и часто встречаемся. 6. С моей младшей сестрой нелегко ладить, иногда она бывает эгоистичной и упрямой. 7. Мы близкие друзья, у нас много общего. 8. Она вдова. Её муж умер несколько лет назад. 9. Где вы родились?

Ex. 13. Answer the questions.

1. What is your first name, last name and patronymic? 2. When and where were you born? Are you just out of school? 3. Are you an only child in the family? 4. How large is your family? 5. Who is the head of the family? 6. Who keeps house in your family? 7. Who cooks meals? 8. Do you have a lot of relatives? On whose side? 9. Are you on friendly terms with your relatives? Do you have much in common? 10. Do you have many acquaintances? Are you easy to deal with? 11. Do you have close friends? 12. Do you have namesakes? 13. Are there twins among your relatives or acquaintances? 14. Do you or your friends have nicknames? 15. Who is the most kind-hearted person in your family? 16. Are you married or single? 17. Have you got a steady boyfriend (girlfriend)? 18. Do you meet your ex-classmates? 19. Are you on friendly terms with your seatmate? Are you friends with your neighbours? 20. Do you have a flatmate or a roommate? 21. Are any of your relatives or acquaintances divorced? 22. When did

your parents marry?
to a wedding?

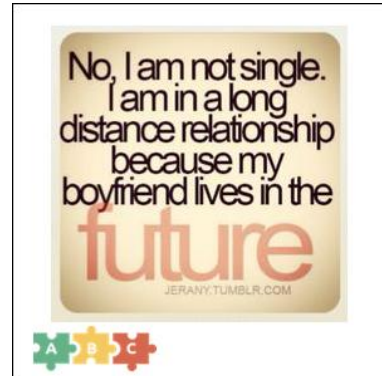
23. Are any of your relatives retired? 24. Have you ever been

Ex. 14. Translate into Russian.

1. After the divorce she changed her name back to the one on her **birth certificate**, her mother's **maiden name** of Verne. 2. Dr Brown had the same name as his neighbour, although the two were **unrelated**. 3. Julia was his daughter **by his first marriage**. 4. Brian was her **next-to-the-oldest** brother. 5. I **made a date** with her for 7 o'clock. 6. He saw someone he knew – a classmate, with **a date**. 7. I've got **a movie date** tonight. Is that O.K.? 8. This couple in late middle-age has just celebrated their thirtieth **wedding anniversary**.

Ex. 15. Translate into Russian.

1. She is single. But her **heart is taken**. 2. I have a **crush** on him! / I'm so into him! 3. My first **crush** was Tim Wyatte. 4. You feel crushed when they don't **love you back**. 5. Didn't you once try **to chat up** Jenny? 6. Is he **hitting on** me? 7. Guys like him use all sorts of tricks **to pick up** a girl for a one-night stand. 8. Don't be such **a wall-flower!** Go out and **minge!** 9. He's **head over heels** for you. 10. You could just feel the **chemistry** between them! 11. Man up and **ask her out!** You may or may not **hit it off**. Anyway, it's **worth a shot**. 12. We made it **past the first date**. 13. We dated for several months before we began **to get serious**. 14. They are **going steady**. 15. I'm **in a relationship** with her.



Ex. 16. Translate into Russian.

1. She's **a stay-at-home** mum. 2. We're suffering from **empty-nest syndrome** since the kids started uni. 3. I'm too young **to settle down**. 4. The government is concerned about the high number of **NEETs**. 5. My parents are **in a home**. 6. They are unemployed and **live on benefits**. 7. We need to do more to help **single parents**. 8. He claims he's **a new man**, but I've not seen much sign of it. 9. That kind of **helicopter parenting** surely does more harm than good! 10. They're having **a civil partnership**.

Use the words and word combinations of exercises 18-20 in your own conversations.

Ex. 17. Use articles where necessary.

1. Does your younger brother go toschool? – No, he isn'tschoolboy yet. 2. Ann's sister has family of her own. She has son and daughter. children are same age. They aretwins 3. Maggy is playingpiano,grandmother is reading book, boys are playingchess. 4. My cousin is nurse and her husband is builder. 5. Have you got.....uncle? – Yes, he is teacher of German. He lives in Netherlands. 6. I'maunt to my brother's son. 7. His sister iseleven-year-old girl. 8. In Great Britainchildren usually start school at age offive. 9. Mum patted him on head, took him byhand and he stopped crying. 10. She ismiddle-aged woman of forty-five. She is like mother to Jane. 11. Granny keeps house in family, she is excellent housewife. 12. Chris is Only child. He is just out ofschool. 13. He is only man I know here. 14. She was married tosailor. 15. We have world of relatives. 16. Is he head of family? 17. We aren't on very friendly terms and have very little in common. 18. Kate is youngest infamily. 19.man and woman in photo arehusband andwife. 20. Johnsons are in country now. 21. They are ... brother and sister. Didn't you know? 22. She haspale skin, hazel eyes,snub nose and chestnut hair. 23.

Jenny istall and slender. She is real beauty. She's most beautiful girl I have ever seen. 24. He has dark hair, small goatee beard and short moustache.

Ex. 18. Fill in prepositions or adverbs where necessary.

1. Greg is very much his father. In fact, he is the very image him. 2. Lily smiles a very charming way. 3. Look the picture the next page. the picture you can see a pretty girl thirteen ... long dark hair and dimples her cheeks. She is quite tall her age and looks older. 4. My sister is going to marry a doctor. 5. Whom is your cousin married? 6. Is this woman any relation you? 7. Bob is an engineer profession. 8. Does Lucy take her mother? 9. Mark has married ... his secretary. They got married Las Vegas. 10. Mr Clark isn't much a gardener. 11. His wife makes a lot. 12. His son does wellschool. 13. She is well-built and thin the waist. 14. Thanks your help. – Not all. What are friends? 15. I can't agree you. You aren't very tolerant your children.16. He is a distant relative mine my mother's side. 17. He's strongly-built and broad the shoulders. He's a lifeguard. 18. He's easy to deal and we are friendly terms. 19. Is he age yet? - Yes, he'll come age February. 20. She doesn't look her age. 21. Jim is just college. He issix years younger than me. 22. Geff is very different his elder brother. 23. She is ... love ... Jeff

Ex. 19. Translate into English.

1. Мой племянник – десятилетний мальчик. У него рыжие волосы и веснушки. Глаза у него голубые с длинными светлыми ресницами, брови тонкие. На подбородке – ямочка. Он копия своей мамы, моей невестки, и характером в неё. Иногда он бывает капризным и эгоистичным, но, вообще-то, он добрый, и с ним легко ладить.

2. Лора и Дженни одного возраста. Они обе тинейджеры и обе ещё несовершеннолетние. Они на четыре года младше моего сына. Они стройные, длинноногие, хрупкого телосложения, очень привлекательные. Они хорошо учатся в школе, умные, начитанные.

3. Её друг на два года старше её. Он спокойный и серьёзный. Он смуглый, у него тёмные волосы, коротко подстриженные, прямой нос, карие глаза и густые брови. Он среднего роста, крепкого телосложения, и любит спорт. Сейчас он студент, он хочет стать архитектором. Они собираются пожениться через три месяца.

4. Его дяде за сорок. Он довольно высокий и полный. Он лысый, носит бороду и усы. На его лице есть морщины, но он не выглядит старше своих лет. Он остроумный и общительный. Он адвокат и женат на моей двоюродной сестре. У них трое детей: два сына и дочь.

5. Бренда очень любит свою тётю Мэри. Ей скоро будет тридцать, но она не выглядит на свой возраст. Она чуть выше среднего роста, хорошо сложена и довольно стройная. У неё светлая гладкая кожа и густые волнистые каштановые волосы до плеч. Её выразительные зелёные глаза широко посаженные и слегка раскосые. У неё овальное лицо и маленький вздёрнутый нос. Первое, что вы замечаете при встрече, когда она улыбается, это ямочки на щеках. Тётя Мэри щедрая и гостеприимная, отличная хозяйка и мать. Бренда очень хочет быть похожей на неё.

Ex. 20. Fill in *Mr, Mrs, Miss, Ms, Madam (Ma'am) or Sir, if necessary.*

1. Dear! We are glad to inform you that all the arrangements have been made. 2. Jones was an elderly gentleman of about sixty. 3. What do you want for dessert,? 4. Adams, do you know where your husband was going to stay? 5. Emma Smith is an only daughter. She is fifteen 6. Report back to me in an hour, sergeant! – Yes,! 7. Dear John! We are happy you can come. 8. And this is Snow, she is your new secretary. 9. Ma, meet my new friend, Helen Morris. 10. Can I help you,? We have a good selection of evening dresses. 11.Margaret! Come into the garden! 12. Grey, your wife and daughter are waiting for you downstairs. 13. Hart! You are too young a girl to understand many things. 14.! A car isn't a toy, you should have it serviced regularly. – My husband sees to it, don't worry.

Ex. 21. Supply the missing names and read them.

Agatha, Alice, Anthony, Arthur, Benedict Bill, Brad, Bruce, Catherine, Charles, Christopher, Daniel, David, Diane, Donald, Emma, Ernest, Eddy, Elisabeth, Freddy, George, Jack, James, Jim, John, Julia, Kevin, Margaret, Mark, Martin, Michael, Nickolas, Oscar, Paul, Ray, Robin, Robert, Stephen, Tom, William, Walt.

1)McCartney 2)..... Lennon 3) Jackson 4) Trump
5) Wren 6) Thatcher 7) Gordon Byron 8) Gates
9) Morrison 10) Kiedis 11) Mercury 12) Queen.....
13) Princess 14) Dickens 15) Sawyer 16)Roberts
17) Cage 18) Christie 19) King 20) Pattison
21)Shakespeare 22) Watson 23) Bradbury 24) Murphy
25) in Wonderland 26) Costner 27) Conan Doyle
28)Willis 29) Radcliffe 30) Hood 31) Cook
32) the Great 33) Beckham 34) McDonagh
35) Hemingway 36) Twain 37) London 38) Wilde
39) Disney 40)Cumberbatch 41) Pitt

Ex. 22. Choose the correct item.

1. My cousin's name is (Marry, Mary, Merry). She's a (coach, couch, catch) by profession.
2. He is a (quite, quiet, quit) man with big hazel (ears, airs, eyes). 3. They (got, were) married ten years ago and have lived happily up to now. 4. He does well (at, in) Math and Physics. He is the best (between, among) his classmates. 5. Her (hair, hare, hear, here) is dark and wavy. 6. She (steel, steal, still) goes for long walks over the (hills, heels, heals). 7. I don't (agree, angry) with you. 8. Jack is not a (fool, full), is he? 9. Sheila is both (social, sociable) and kind.
10. Harry is (fond, found) of folk art. 11. Her (mouth, mouse, moth) was small and red with thin lips and white even teeth. 12. Will you (mary, merry, marry) me, darling? 13. Is your granny (retire, retired, returned) yet? 14. Are they (marry, married) or (divorce, divorced) now?
15. Is her second husband an (architector, architect, architect)? 16. (Mr, Mrs, Ms) Cotman is respected by his (colleges, colleagues), I believe. 17. The stranger was wearing a long black (beard, bird). 18. His (father, farther) is an (elder, elderly) gentleman. 19. Her hair (look, looks) marvellous. 20. She (dyed, died, dead) her hair blonde last month. 21. The king is (died, dead). How did he (die, died, dead)? 22. He's quite (bald, bold) – not a hair on his head. 23. He's been

ill for a week, but now he (is, does) well again. 24. He's very hard-working and (is, does) well at college. 25. Don't (waste, waist, waiste) your time, get down to work. 26. She's become quite thick round the (waste, waist, waiste), hasn't she? 27. Throw this into the (waste, waist, waiste) paper basket.

Ex. 23. Speak on the topic. What do you think of being an only child?

Follow the plan:

1. State the problem
2. Express your opinion
3. Give arguments and examples
4. Make a conclusion



Ex. 24. Learn to pronounce the zodiac signs. Do you believe that the character of a person is determined by his or her zodiac sign? Give examples.



Aries

['ɛəriːz]
21 March –
20 April



Taurus

['tɔːrəs]
21 April –
22 May



Gemini

['dʒemɪnaɪ]
23 May –
21 June



Cancer

['kænsə]
22 June –
22 July



Leo

['liːɔː]
23 July –
22 August



Virgo

['vɜːgɜː]
23 August –
22 September



Libra

['lɪbrə]
23 September –
22 October



Scorpio

['skɔːpɪɔː]
23 October –
21 November



Sagittarius

[,sædʒɪ'teəriəs]
22 November –
22 December



Capricorn

['kæprɪkɔːn]
23 December –
20 January



Aquarius

[ə'kwɛəriəs]
21 January –
19 February



Pisces

['pɪsiːz]
20 February –
20 March

Ex. 25. Fill in the gaps with the adjectives and match the sentences to the zodiac signs.

reliable pessimistic lively creative traditional independent
cautious passionate tidy moody jealous proud

1. They are never late. If they say they will do something, they do it. They are
2. They are always doing something. They are a lot of fun and full of life. They are ...
3. They are happy one minute, miserable the next. Be careful with these ... people!
4. They are full of ideas and love making things. We all know they are
5. Just like the lion in their sign, they look down on everyone. They are
6. They are very organised. They like to know where everything is. We say they are
7. They don't like change without a good reason. They like to do things in the old way.













So most of them are ...

8. They won't take any risks. They check everything before they move.
They are without doubt.
9. They are very possessive. They love you, but they never trust you! They are ...
10. They are like fire! They love, and hate and get angry with real emotion! These people are ...
11. They always look on the dark side. They are ...
12. They like to work alone. They don't need people. They are mostly ...



Ex. 26.

Look at the Chinese zodiac of years that dates back more than 2,000 years. Start by finding your Chinese Zodiac Animal.

<p>鼠 </p> <p>Year of the Rat 1972, 1984, 1996, 2008 Rat people are very popular. They like to invent things and are good artists.</p>	<p>牛 </p> <p>Year of the Ox 1973, 1985, 1997, 2009 People born in this year are dependable and calm. They are good listeners and have very strong ideas.</p>	<p>虎 </p> <p>Year of the Tiger 1974, 1986, 1998, 2010 Tiger people are brave. Other people respect tiger people for their deep thoughts and courageous actions.</p>	<p>兔 </p> <p>Year of the Rabbit 1975, 1987, 1999, 2011 People born in this year are nice to be around. They like to talk, and many people trust them.</p>
<p>龙 </p> <p>Year of the Dragon 1976, 1988, 2000, 2012 Dragon people have good health and lots of energy. They are good friends because they listen carefully to others.</p>	<p>蛇 </p> <p>Year of the Snake 1977, 1989, 2001 People born in this year love good books, food, music, and plays. They will have good luck with money.</p>	<p>马 </p> <p>Year of the Horse 1978, 1990, 2002 People born in this year are popular, cheerful, and are quick to compliment others. Horse people can work very hard.</p>	<p>羊 </p> <p>Year of the Goat 1979, 1991, 2003 People born in this year are very good artists. They ask many questions, like nice things, and are very wise.</p>
<p>猴 </p> <p>Year of the Monkey 1980, 1992, 2004 Monkey people are very funny. They can always make people laugh. They are also very good problem solvers.</p>	<p>鸡 </p> <p>Year of the Rooster 1981, 1993, 2005 People born in this year are hard workers. They have many talents and think deep thoughts.</p>	<p>狗 </p> <p>Year of the Dog 1982, 1994, 2006 Dog people are loyal and can always keep a secret. Sometimes dog people worry too much.</p>	<p>猪 </p> <p>Year of the Pig 1983, 1995, 2007 People born in this year are very good students. They are honest and brave. They always finish a project or assignment.</p>

Now characterise yourself using your horoscopes. Add some more information you know about your zodiac signs.

Ex. 27. Read the text and say if there is anything in common between the actor Robin Williams and the character he played in the film *Mrs. Doubtfire*.

Robin Williams (by Sylvia Bloch)

“My childhood was kind of lonely and quiet. My father was away working, my mother was away working, and I was basically raised by the maid. I’d spend most of my time alone in our huge house, playing with my toy soldiers”. This is how actor-comedian Robin Williams describes his childhood. Born in 1952 in Chicago, Illinois, Williams grew up in Chicago and Detroit and

attended eight different schools in eight years because his father, an automobile executive, was frequently transferred.

When his father retired, the family moved to a town near San Francisco, California. Williams went to college and studied political science, but when he discovered theater, he dropped out to pursue acting. After studying in New York City for two years, he returned to San Francisco and started working on his stand-up comedy routines.

Williams began to be noticed and soon received offers to appear on television. His career took off in 1978 with the TV series *Mork & Mindy*, where he played the part of Mork, an alien from another planet. Almost 60 million people would tune in to each episode just to watch Williams ad-lib and clown around. The show became a hit, and unable to handle the pressure of instant fame, Williams turned to alcohol and drugs.

In 1983, two things happened that influenced Williams to change his life for the better – his friend John Belushi, a fellow comic and actor, died of a drug overdose, and his wife became pregnant. Williams told a magazine, “I knew I couldn’t be a father and live that kind of life.” He was able to turn his life around.

Williams went on to star in movies, receiving an Academy Award nomination for his role in the film *Good Morning, Vietnam*. He played the part of a grown-up Peter Pan in *Hook* and the part of a divorced father who disguises himself as an English housekeeper in *Mrs Doubtfire*.

When the opportunity came to do the voice of Genie in the Disney movie *Aladdin*, Williams jumped at the chance. He said he wanted to act in something that his children would enjoy, and was very happy when the movie came out and people told him, “I loved it as much as my kid did”. For Robin Williams, being a father is very important. “My kids are the most wonderful things in my life”.

Ex. 28. Listen to the dialogues, practise the reading and learn them by heart.

At the Hairdresser's



Jane: ... 'Oh, yes, 'my husband's wonderful!

Sally: Really? Is he?

Jane: Yes, he's big, strong and handsome!

Sally: Well, 'my husband 'isn't very big, or very strong... but he's very intelligent.

Jane: Intelligent?

Sally: Yes, 'he can 'speak six languages.

Jane: Can he? Which languages can he speak?

Sally: He can 'speak , French, , Spanish, I , talian, , German, , Arabic and 'Japa , nese.

Jane: `Oh! ... 'My husband's 'very ath , letic.

Sally: Ath `letic?

Jane: , Yes, he can , swim, , ski, 'play , football, , cricket and , rugby . . .

Sally: 'Can he , cook?

Jane: ´ Pardon?

Sally: 'Can your 'husband , cook? 'My husband 'can't 'play , sports...but he's an 'excellent , cook.

Jane: `Is , he?

Sally: , Yes, and he can , sew, and , iron... he's a 'very , good husband.

Jane: `Really? 'Is he , English?

I Want You, Fiona

Charles: `Please , marry me, Fiona.
I , want you, I , need you, I , love you.

Fiona: I'm , sorry Charles, but I
, can't.

Charles: , Oh, Fiona. 'Why , not?

Fiona: , Well, Charles. I , like you...
I 'like you a `lot, but I 'don't , love
you.

Charles: But `Fiona, , love 'isn't
, everything.

Fiona: 'Oh, Charles, you 'don't
under , stand... for , me 'love is
, everything.

Charles: →Do you... 'love a'nother
, man Fiona?

Fiona: 'Yes, Charles, I , do... , James.



Charles: 'Not 'James \ Milton!

Fiona: \ Yes, 'James \ Milton.

Charles: But he ` doesn't want \ you. He's en ` gaged.

Fiona: I \ know.

Charles: But 'Fiona, 'James 'isn't a \ rich man. 'I can 'give you \ everything. 'What do you \ want? \ Clothes? \ Money? \ Travel? A 'big \ house?

Fiona: →No, Charles. I 'don't \ want .those .things. I 'only 'want \ James.

TEST REVISION

Do the tasks and check with the key.

Task 1. Fill in prepositions or adverbs if necessary.

1. She is a lawyer, we are very proud her and she is very much respected her colleagues. 2. We have much common and we are friendly terms. 3. He is a good sportsman but he isn't much a thinker. 4. He is tall, broad the shoulders and doesn't look his age. 5. I'm very different you, we have nothing common. 6. She is still young spirit and goes long walks the forest. 7. A cousin mine will come age three weeks. 8. He is easy to deal 9. She is very fond her nieces. They do well school. 10. - What is he you? Is he any relation you? – He is a close friend mine. I met him 7 years ago. 11. She takes her father, she is just the image him appearance. 12. He is not very tolerant people who don't agree him. 13. He is a distant relative mine my father's side. He is married my father's half-cousin. He married her last year. 14. She is tall, slim the waist a well-shaped figure.. 15. They are ... the same age. They are both their late forties. 16. My granny has a heart gold.

Task 2. Change using the possessive case.

1. the results of these sportsmen; 2. the work of his sister-in-law; 3. the cottage of the Johnsons; 4. the dictations of Paul and John; 5. the monkey of Mary and Kate; 6. our plans for tomorrow; 7. a break lasting a quarter of an hour; 8. a drive for four miles; 9. the cover of the book; 10. the duties of everybody; 11. He is staying with his aunt. 12. the novels of Dickens; 13. the brother of Princess Diane; 14. the dress of a girl sitting opposite us.

Task 3. Translate into English.

1. Дедушка Ника и Джона очень любит своих внуков. Ему уже за 70, но он молод духом и полон жизни и энергии.
2. На ее дочь приятно посмотреть. Она похожа на мать. У нее густые темные волосы до плеч, выразительные карие глаза, прямой нос и яркие пухлые губы. У нее тонкие брови и ямочки на щеках. Она очень хорошенькая.
3. Его невеста – двадцатичетырехлетняя девушка. Она модельер, очень серьезная и умная. Они поженятся в следующем месяце.
4. Ее дядя – адвокат. Он полный и высокий, носит усы и бороду. У него высокий лоб и орлиный нос. Он очень начитанный и немного рассеянный.

5. Мой сосед – холостяк средних лет. Он среднего роста и крепкого телосложения. У него рыжие волосы и веснушки. Он очень общительный и остроумный.
6. Он пожилой, лысый и носит очки? – Нет, он молодой, у него густые кудрявые волосы и он хорошо видит. Он женат на моей сестре, он женился на ней три года назад.
7. Их младшая дочь упрямая, эгоистичная и легкомысленная.
8. Его старший брат станет совершеннолетним через две недели. Он спокойный и серьезный парень. У него короткая стрижка и правильные черты лица. Он хорошо учится.
9. – Он надежный человек? – У него доброе сердце, но он легкомысленный и небрежный. Он разведен и у него нет детей.
10. Ее жених очень красив. Он высокий, тонкий в талии и широкий в плечах. Он загорелый и всегда чисто выбрит.
11. У нее широко посаженные голубые глаза с длинными ресницами, вздернутый нос и открытый лоб. Она стройная и длинноногая. Она просто очаровательна.
12. Он среднего роста, сутулый и узкоплечий.

TEST REVISION KEY

Task 1

1. She is a lawyer, we are very proud of her and she is very much respected by her colleagues.
2. We have much in common and we are on friendly terms.
3. He is a good sportsman but he isn't much of a thinker.
4. He is tall, broad at the shoulders and doesn't look like his age.
5. I'm very different from you, we have nothing in common.
6. She is still young in spirit and goes for long walks in the forest.
7. A cousin of mine will come of age in three weeks.
8. He is easy to deal with.
9. She is very fond of her nieces. They do well at school.
10. - What is he to you? Is he any relation to you? – He is a close friend of mine. I met him 7 years ago.
11. She takes after her father, she is just the image of him in appearance.
12. He is not very tolerant with people who don't agree with him.
13. He is a distant relative of mine on my father's side. He is married to my father's half-cousin. He married her last year.
14. She is tall, slim at the waist with a well-shaped figure.
15. They are (of) the same age. They are both in their late forties.
16. My granny has a heart of gold.

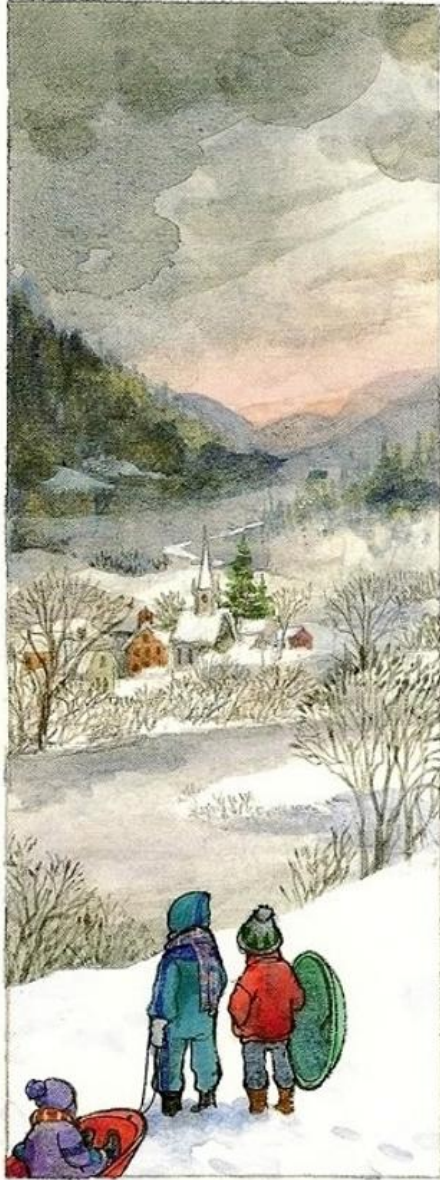
Task 2

1. these sportsmen's results;
2. his sister-in-law's work;
3. the Johnsons' cottage;
4. Paul's and John's dictations;
5. Mary and Kate's monkey;
6. our tomorrow's plans;
7. a quarter of an hour's break;
8. four miles' drive;
9. the cover of the book;
10. everybody's duties;
11. He is staying at his aunt's.
12. Dickens' novels;
13. Princess Diane's brother;
14. the dress of a girl sitting opposite us.

Task 3

- 1) Nick and John's grandfather is very fond of his grandchildren. He is over seventy already but he is young in spirit and full of life and energy.
- 2) Her daughter is nice to look at. She is (looks) like her mother. She has thick dark shoulder-length hair, expressive hazel eyes, a straight nose and full bright lips. She has thin eyebrows and dimples on her cheeks. She is very pretty.
- 3) His fiancée is a twenty-four-year-old girl. She is a fashion designer, very serious and intelligent. They will marry next month.

- 4) Her uncle is a lawyer. He's stout and tall, he has a beard and a moustache. He has a high forehead and an aquiline nose. He is very well read and a little absent-minded.
- 5) My neighbour is a middle-aged bachelor. He is of medium height and strongly built. He has red hair and freckles. He is very sociable and witty.
- 6) Is he elderly, bald and does he wear glasses? – No, he is young, he has thick curly hair and he sees well. He is married to my sister, he married her three years ago.
- 7) Their younger daughter is stubborn, selfish and light-minded.
- 8) His older brother will come of age in two weeks. He is a quiet and serious fellow (guy). He has a short haircut and regular features. He does well at school.
- 9) - Is he a reliable man? – He is kind-hearted, but light-minded and slap-dash. He is divorced and he has no children. (= he doesn't have any children = he hasn't got any children)
- 10) Her fiance is very handsome. He is tall, thin at the waist and broad at the shoulders. He has a tanned complexion and he is always clean shaven.
- 11) She has blue wide-set eyes with long eyelashes, a turned-up nose and an open forehead. She is slim (slender) and long-legged. She is just charming.
- 12) He is of medium height, stooping and narrow-shouldered.



January

The days are short,
The sun a spark
Hung thin between
The dark and dark.

Fat snowy footsteps
Track the floor,
And parkas pile up
Near the door.

The river is
A frozen place
Held still beneath
The trees' black lace.

The sky is low.
The wind is gray.
The radiator
Purrs all day.

UNIT 4. HOLIDAYS

Text 1. Christmas Eve

On 'Christmas , Eve 'everything is 'rush and \ bustle. 'Offices and 'public 'buildings 'close at 'one o'clock, but the 'shops 'stay 'open \ late. 'Most 'big \ cities, es'pecially \ London, are 'decorated with 'coloured 'lights a'cross the 'streets and e'normous 'Christmas \ trees. The 'main 'line \ stations, 'trains and \ buses are 'crowded with \ people 'travelling from \ tall 'parts of the \ country to be at 'home for \ Christmas.

In the \ homes there is a 'great 'air of 'expec\ tion. The 'children are 'decorating the 'tree with 'tinsel and 'coloured \ lights. The 'house is 'decorated with 'holly and a 'bunch of \ mistletoe under 'which the 'boys and the 'girls \ kiss. 'Christmas \ cards - with the \ words: *A 'Merry \ Christmas to You; 'Wishing You a 'Merry \ Christmas and a 'Prosperous 'New \ Year; With the \ Compliments of the \ Season* - are a'ranged on \ mantelpieces, \ shelves, \ tables, and 'sometimes a'ttached to \ ribbon and 'hung 'round the \ walls.

'Meanwhile the 'housewife is 'busy in the 'kitchen, 'getting 'things 'ready for the 'next 'day's \ dinner. The 'Christmas \ bird, 'nowadays 'usually a \ turkey, is 'being pre'pared and \ stuffed, the 'pudding is in\ spected and the 'cake is 'got 'out of its 'tin and \ iced.

In 'small 'towns and \ villages 'one may 'still 'see 'carol-\ singers who 'come and 'stand in 'front of the \ house and 'sing or \ play 'Christmas \ carols. They ex'pect a \ Christmas box from a 'few 'pennies or 'coppers \ upwards in re'turn for their 'musical \ efforts. The 'money co\ llected is 'then do'nated to some de'serving \ cause, for e'xample to 'help 'destitute 'old \ people.

Text 2. Christmas

Christmas Day, 25 December, is celebrated by Christians as the day on which Jesus Christ was born. In Britain carol services take place in churches throughout December and children perform nativity plays, acting out the stories of Christ's birth. In the United States some families have a model nativity scene in their house or garden. Many people go to midnight mass in church on Christmas Eve.

Before Christmas, people send Christmas cards to their friends. These often show Santa Claus, angels, holly or snowmen, all traditional symbols of Christmas. People buy Christmas presents for their family and friends. Shopping malls are decorated for Christmas from September, though most people don't do their Christmas shopping until December. Most towns put up a Christmas tree, a fir tree decorated with coloured lights, baubles, tinsel and bows, and put strings of lights across the streets. For children the highlight of this period is a visit to Santa Claus, to tell him what presents they would like.

A few days before Christmas families decorate a Christmas tree in their home. Some hang a holly wreath on their front door. Americans, especially, put lights and figures of Santa Claus and snowmen in their gardens.

Presents are wrapped in coloured paper and put under the Christmas tree. Small presents are put into a stocking, a long sock that each person hangs near the chimney or at the end of their bed. On Christmas morning many families open their presents together round the Christmas tree.

Families try to get together at Christmas and in preparation most people buy a lot of food and prepare special dishes. In Britain they make or buy mince pies and a Christmas cake; in the US they make Christmas cookies. In Britain Christmas dinner usually consists of turkey with many accompanying dishes, followed by Christmas pudding and brandy butter. Everyone pulls paper crackers, which make a loud bang and contain paper hats, jokes and small toys.

Christmas decorations are taken down on New Year's Day or, in Britain any time between New Year and 6 of January, the festival of Epiphany.

Text 3. England. New Year

In England the New Year is not as widely observed as Christmas. Some people ignore it completely and go to bed at the same time as usual on New Year's Eve. Many others do celebrate it in one way or another. The most common type of celebration is a New Year party, either a family party or one arranged by a group of young people. This usually begins at about 8 o'clock and goes on until the early hours of the morning.

Sometimes the hosts make a big bowl of punch which consists of wine, spirits, fruit juice and water in varying proportions. At midnight the wireless is turned on, so that everyone can hear the chimes of Big Ben. Then the party goes on.

Another popular way of celebrating the New Year is to go to a New Year's dance. Most hotels and dance halls hold a special dance on New Year's Eve.

The most famous celebration is in London round the statue of Eros in Piccadilly Circus where crowds gather and sing and welcome in the New Year. In Trafalgar Square there is also a big crowd and someone usually falls into the fountain.

January the first, the New Year's Day, is not a public holiday. Some people send New Year cards and give presents but this is not a widespread custom. This is a traditional time for making "New Year's resolutions", for example, to give up smoking, or to get up early. However, these are generally more talked about than put into practice.



Auld Lang Syne

Should auld acquaintance be forgot,
And never brought to mind?
Should auld acquaintance be forgot,
And days of auld lang syne?

For auld lang syne, my dear,
For old lang syne!
We'll take a cup of kindness yet
For auld lang syne!

We two have run about the hills
And pulled the daisy fine;
We've wandered many a weary bit
Since auld lang syne.

We two have wandered in the brook
From morning sun till dine
But seas between us broad have roared
Since auld lang syne.

And here's a hand, my trusty friend,
And give us a hand of thine,
We'll take a cup of kindness yet
For auld lang syne.

For auld lang syne, my dear,
For old lang syne!
We'll take a cup of kindness yet
For auld lang syne!

VOCABULARY

to have a holiday; to celebrate; to mark; celebration; anniversary; to congratulate smb on smth;
to have a birthday; birthday party; to go to a restaurant; to invite guests to; to sing; to dance;
to entertain (oneself); to make merry; to have a good time; to have fun; to be fun; funny;
to laugh; to joke; to play a trick on; to play games; to let off fireworks; to light sparklers;
to send smb a greeting card, a telegram; to give smb a present; to present smb with;
Let's give her a toy for her birthday. Let's present her with a toy.

to lay (set) a festive table; feast; to make tasty things; to eat; to drink; to drink to one's health; to
propose a toast; to raise a glass; wine; champagne; to fill; to be filled with; to be full (of); empty;
Let's fill the glasses with wine. The glasses are filled with wine. The glasses are full of wine.

to put on one's best clothes; to dress up; to put on a fancy dress, a costume; fancy dress ball;
to see the New Year in; to see the Old Year out; the Kremlin chimes; to beat 12 o'clock;
to set a New Year tree; to decorate with; toys; balls; tinsel; garlands; coloured lights; balloons;

*Happy Holiday! Happy New Year! Merry Christmas! Happy Birthday! Many happy returns of
the day! Congratulations! The same to you! Cheers!*

Read the poems

MANY THINGS

I love Christmas for many things.
Trees, candles, angel wings,
Stars in the heaven, snow-covered hills,
Little toy trains, dolls in their frills.
I love Christmas, ribbons of gold,
Familiar carols so very old,
Sweet candy canes, bright red sleds,
Little ones tucked snug in their beds.
I love Christmas but most of all
I look forward to a neighbours' call,

A friendly chat, a cup of tea.
Love in the home means Christmas to me.

HAPPY NEW YEAR

May the New Year bring your way
Nice, unexpected things each day.
New dreams, new joys, new plans to make,
Worthwhile things to undertake.
And may it bring you peace of mind,
Success – the real and lasting kind,
The gift of health, the joy of friends,
And happiness that never ends!

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Answer the questions.

1. Do you like holidays? Why or why not? 2. What holidays do you celebrate? 3. What is your favourite holiday? Why? 4. Which do you prefer: to invite guests to your place or to be a guest yourself? 5. Do you prefer to celebrate holidays at home or to go out? Why? 6. What do you like to eat on holidays? 7. Can you cook anything tasty? 8. What do you prefer to drink? 9. What toasts do you know? 10. What presents do you like to get? What presents do you like to give? 11. Do you like surprises? 12. Do you like to entertain people? How do you do it? 13. How do you entertain yourself? What's your idea of having a good time? 14. Do you like to dance? Can you dance well? 15. Do you ever sing on holidays? 16. Do you let off fireworks? 17. Do you play games? What games do you play? 18. When and how do you decorate your home? 19. Do you set a New Year tree? What do you decorate it with? 20. How do you congratulate your friends and relatives? 21. Do you ever send postcards? 22. How do you like to dress for a holiday? Is it more important for you to look your best or to feel comfortable? 23. Have you ever been to a fancy dress ball? What character were you?

Ex. 2. Speak on the topics.

1. **Would you like to celebrate the New Year abroad?**
2. **How would you like to spend your winter vacations?**
 1. Introduce the topic.
 - 2 Express your opinion
 3. Give arguments and examples
 4. Make a conclusion

ADDITIONAL TEXTS

Read the texts about holidays and traditions and do the tasks.

TEXT 1. BRITISH AND AMERICAN HOLIDAYS

Labor Day is the first Monday in September. The first big parade was held in New York City in 1882. In 1887 several other states passed laws making the first Monday in September Labor Day. Workers get the day off work. There are parades, speeches by labor leaders and political figures.

New Year's Eve is celebrated on 31 December when many people hold parties or go to pubs and night clubs. Many of the New Year traditions come from Scotland, where the festival is known as Hogmanay. All over the country, people join hands at midnight and sing the Scottish song 'Auld Lang Syne'. In Scotland the New Year is welcomed by the playing of bagpipes and the custom of 'first footing' – this involves visiting friends and relatives after midnight. It is lucky if the 'first footer' is a dark-haired man bringing a gift of coal and a bottle of whisky.

On **New Year's Day** Times Square in New York is the place to be as the huge silver ball drops slowly onto number 1, Times Square at the stroke of midnight. This has been happening since 1906, and each year the crowds get bigger and bigger. Many forms of street entertainment are organised to amuse those waiting to greet the New Year. There are big football games in many places the next day. People make New Year resolutions, promising to change bad habits.

Celebrated on the second Monday in October, **Columbus Day** is the anniversary of October, 12, 1492, when Columbus arrived in America. It is the most controversial American holiday. Some celebrate it with great patriotism; others refuse to celebrate it at all. The association between Columbus and America took root in the 18th century. Americans, searching for a history and a hero, discovered Columbus. But for most people it is a holiday when schools and businesses close and there are great sales in stores.

The name 'Christmas' comes from 'Christ's Mass'. It is celebrated on 25 December, when people visit their families, exchange presents and eat a Christmas dinner of turkey and Christmas pudding. Christians usually attend Midnight Mass on Christmas Eve and go to church again on the morning of Christmas Day. It is the tradition for children to leave out a stocking when they go to bed on Christmas Eve for Father Christmas to fill with presents. **Christmas Day and Boxing Day** (26 December) are both bank holidays.

In 1921 an unknown World War I soldier was buried in Arlington National cemetery. The day became known as Armistice Day. Realising that peace was equally preserved by veterans of World War II and the Korean War, President Eisenhower signed a bill in 1954, proclaiming November 11th as **Veterans Day**. The focal point for the official ceremony is the Tomb of the Unknown Soldier where the President lays a wreath.

Palm Sunday is the Sunday before Easter and celebrates the arrival of Jesus in Jerusalem. Small crosses made of palm leaves are given to church-goers to mark the occasion. **Maundy Thursday** is the Thursday before Easter and commemorates the Last Supper of Jesus and his disciples. It is the day when the Queen gives small purses of money to some specially chosen people. Originally the sovereign used to wash the people's feet, too, as Christ once washed the

disciples' feet. **Good Friday** commemorates the crucifixion of Jesus. The name comes from 'God' rather than 'good'. **Easter Sunday** is the day for celebrating Jesus' rising from the dead. It falls on the first Sunday after the spring full moon, in March or April. Chocolate Easter eggs are given to children on this day. **Easter Monday**, the day after Easter, is a bank holiday, as is Good Friday.

Thanksgiving is always the 4th Thursday in November and is celebrated by a large meal. Traditional foods are turkey, corn, stuffing, beans, gravy, cranberry sauce and pumpkin pie.

The first day of May, **May Day**, is traditionally the festival of the coming of spring. It is usually celebrated with Maypole dancing and Morris dancing. In some towns a May Queen is elected.

The May Queen is a beautiful girl who is crowned with a garland of flowers and then goes on a procession around the town.

Last Monday in May and Last Monday in August are **Spring Bank and Summer Bank holidays**.

Christmas, the holiday of holidays, celebrates the birth of Christ on December the 25th. People visit their families, decorate their homes with trees and exchange gifts. They send cards, bake cookies and visit Santa in the local department store, and many go to church. Families get together for a large Christmas meal. Often a turkey or roast beef, desserts and eggnog.

January 15th is **Martin Luther King Day**, civil rights hero, who was born on that day. He lobbied to improve the rights of black people, was often threatened, protested against the war in Vietnam, became a spokesman of all minorities, received the Nobel Prize and was assassinated in 1968.

Presidents' Day takes place on the third Monday in February. It celebrates the births of George Washington (February 22, 1732) and Abraham Lincoln (February 12, 1809). Now it is the holiday to honor multiple presidents.

Memorial Day, which is celebrated every year on the last Monday of May, was formerly known as Decoration Day. It is a day to remember men and women who died in the service of the nation. After the Civil War many people decorated soldiers' graves with flowers. In 1971 it was declared a national holiday. It is a time to remember those who died and place flowers and flags on their graves.

July 4th commemorates the signing of the Declaration of Independence by fifty-five Founding Fathers. **Independence Day** is commonly associated with fireworks, parades, barbecues, carnivals, fairs, picnics, concerts, baseball games, family reunions, political speeches and ceremonies, and various other public and private events celebrating the history, government, and traditions of the country.

Write the names of British and American holidays in the correct month on the calendar. Put the letter B (British) or A (American) near the holiday.

January	February	March	April
May	June	July	August
September	October	November	December

--	--	--	--

TEXT 2. CHRISTMAS TRADITIONS – WHERE DO THEY COME FROM?

The word *Christmas* is derived from the words *Christ's Mass*, a celebration of the birth of Jesus Christ. Although Christmas is undoubtedly a Christian celebration, it's also true to say that it's an unusual combination of pagan and Christian festivities.

A **Christmas tree** stands in everybody's living room at Christmas. But, in pre-Christian times, evergreens were worshipped in Northern Europe as symbols of eternal life.

Mistletoe, hung as a Christmas decoration, allows to kiss whoever you like underneath it. The origin of this custom comes from Scandinavia.

The origin of **lighting candles** at Christmas, too, dates back to pre-Christian roots. One such root is the Jewish fest called *Hanukka* when candles were lit. Another root is the Roman festival called *Saturnalia* when fire, wood and light were celebrated to forget the darkness of the deepest winter. The Bible says that Mary had trouble finding shelter on the night Jesus was born. So on Christmas Eve, some people light candles in the window. The candles symbolize a welcome to weary travellers.

Holly, however, as a well-known Christmas decoration today, does have Christian associations. In Norwegian, Swedish and Danish holly is known as Christ's thorns, the legend being that Christ wore a crown of holly thorns before his death. Some people have seen associations with the word *holly* and *holy*.

Giving presents and gifts, on the other hand, goes back again to the Roman Saturnalia. When good luck, gifts of fruit, pastry or gold were given to friends on New Year's Day.

The Yule log is a log of wood traditionally burned on Christmas Eve (*yule* is old English for *Christmas*). To Scandinavians of long ago, the Yule log meant light and warmth during winter. A family member brought the log home on Christmas Eve. It was always lit with a piece of the last year's log.

Singing **carols** is another Christmas tradition. It is believed that St. Francis of Assisi, in Italy, set up the first manger scene in 1223. He invited people to sing the gospel at the scene. Today, people still sing some of those early carols.

Santa Claus gets his name from a man known as St. Nicholas. He lived in western Asia during the fourth century. He gave his wealth to the poor – often children. After he died, his feast day was celebrated with gift giving. The Dutch brought his legend to colonial America. Soon his Dutch name Sinter Klaas, became Santa Claus.

1. Translate or explain in English:

undoubtedly; yule; pagan; evergreens; eternal; worship; shelter; manger scene; gospel; wealth;

2. What Russian Christmas traditions do you know?

TEXT 3. A GIANT CHRISTMAS TREE

In Trafalgar Square in front of the National Gallery stands an enormous Christmas tree. It's a gift from the people of Oslo. Every winter they cut down a tree for London. Then horses pull it through the snowy forests to the docks. When the tree arrives, the police on motorcycles escort it to Trafalgar Square. It's over 50 feet high. There it stands as straight as the pillars behind it and looks taller than the dome of the National Gallery.

It is brightly coloured. Right at the top there is a large shining star. The branches are draped with tinsel and hung with big brilliant stars that sparkle in the night. Bright shining balls of different colours and different sizes cover the tree from top to bottom. Imitation snow lies soft and silver white on the dark green branches. No wonder whole families, boys and girls and grown-ups too, stand and stare. Here's a Christmas tree bigger than any they ever have seen in their lives. Under a darkening sky in the heart of London, this sparkling tree seems to catch the spirit of Christmas.

Find the words in the text according to the explanation.

1. extremely large in size or in amount;
2. something that you give someone on a special occasion or to thank them;
3. a place in a port where ships are loaded and unloaded;
4. to go with someone to protect or guard them;
5. a round roof on a base like a circle;
6. to cover or decorate something with folds of cloth;
7. to look at something or someone for a long time without moving your eyes;

TEXT 4. THE CHRISTMAS PANTOMIME

Pantomimes, also called pantos, are traditionally put on in theatres throughout Britain for several weeks before and after Christmas. Most are intended for children. They are a British tradition which has developed over several centuries. A pantomime combines a fairy tale with comedy, music and singing, acrobatics and verse. Among the most popular stories are *Aladdin*, *Babes in the Wood*, *Cinderella*, *Dick Whittington* and, *Jack and the Beanstalk*.

The audience usually takes an active part in a performance: characters on stage speak to the audience directly and they shout back their answer. Sometimes they have noisy arguments, exchanging shouts of ‘Oh yes, it is’ and ‘Oh no, it isn’t’. Audiences are often encouraged to join in the singing, and to boo loudly whenever a bad character appears. Other pantomime traditions include that of a hero, called *the principal boy*, being played by a young woman, and a comic old woman, called a *dame*, being played by a male comedian. Pantomimes often also include several animal characters played by actors in animal costumes.

Many of the most successful pantomimes performed in professional theatres have well-known television or sports personalities playing leading roles. Hundreds of amateur pantomimes are also put on each year. Pantomimes of this kind do not exist in the United States where the word *pantomime* means a play or entertainment performed without words.

1. Give antonyms to the following words.

amateur; directly; noisy; successful; popular; comic; male; usually; active; principal;

2. Translate or explain in English.

pantomime; to intend; audience; character; argument; encourage; to boo;

3. How will you translate the word *pantomime* into Russian in the first sentence of the text?

TEXT 5. BOXING DAY

In Britain the traditional day for giving presents until recently was December 26, not as it is today – Christmas Day. December 26, feast of St Stephen, is now known as Boxing Day, for it was then that the priests of the Middle Ages opened their armed boxes to give to the poor. Later it was the day when people gave Christmas boxes (small gifts of money) to their employees or servants. Now it’s a bank holiday. This is the day when one visits friends, goes for a drive or a long walk or just sits round recovering from too much food. In the country there are usually Boxing Day meets, hunts, fox hunting. In Britain on that day, many sports events take place and in the US large shops begin their sales.

Translate the following words: until recently; priests; employees; to recover; meets; sale;



TEXT 6. NEW YEAR IN THE WORLD

Read about the New Year traditions in different countries. Guess where people welcome the New Year in such peculiar ways:

Germany, Russia, Swaziland, Japan, America, Greece, China, Switzerland, India, Austria, Armenia, Spain, Bulgaria, Sweden and Denmark.

1. To keep out evil spirits, they hang a rope of straw across the front of their houses, which stands for happiness and good luck. When the New Year begins, the people begin to laugh, and this is supposed to bring them good luck in the New Year. Paper lobsters are used as decorations in many houses at New Year. The reason is that the lobster's curved back resembles an elderly person and every New Year's greeting includes a wish for longevity. The ringing of the bell 108 times is done to free the year from evil. _____

2. They make punch made of cinnamon, sugar, and red wine in honor of Saint Sylvester. Taverns and inns are decorated with evergreen wreaths. Midnight mass is attended and trumpets are blown from church towers at midnight. People exchange kisses. This is the day they eat a suckling pig symbolizing good luck. Chocolate and marzipan candies shaped like pigs, gold coins, chimney sweeps, four-leaf clovers and horseshoes are exchanged. _____

3. They clean their houses to rid them of last year's bad luck before the celebrations begin. The Kumquat tree is considered to be the luckiest because its name is a play on the word "lucky". The Tangerine is also lucky because of its bright color, but odd numbers are unlucky, so the tangerines are always given in pairs. Red is the color for clothes and all decorations because it is associated with joy and happiness. Lucky money in red envelopes are given by relatives to the unmarried as well as the children of the family. _____

4. Old dishes are saved year around to throw them at the homes where their friends live on New Year's Eve. Many broken dishes were a symbol that you have very many friends. New Year's Eve is framed by the monarch's speech at 6 pm and the striking of midnight by the Town Hall. Many people party with various kinds of good food followed by champagne and marzipan ring cake at midnight. In many parts of the country the traditional menu is boiled cod, stewed kale and cured saddle of pork. _____

5. In this country people would drop molten lead into cold water and try to tell the future from the shape it made. A heart or a ring shape meant a wedding, a ship meant a journey, and a pig meant plenty of food. People also would leave a bit of every food eaten on their plate until after midnight as a way of ensuring a well-stocked larder. Carp was included into the menu as it was thought to bring wealth. _____

6. The celebration is like in most parts of the world. A few hours before and after midnight, people usually party and eat a special dinner, often three courses. They drink champagne and watch fireworks and make New Year resolutions no one keeps. They go to church and then to smorgasbords (meal served buffet-style with multiple dishes of various foods on a table) and drink spicy glögg (a kind of mulled wine). _____

7. People try to start the new year without debts. The celebration usually starts one or two hours before midnight and the common tradition is to "say farewell to the old year". At five minutes to twelve most people watch the president's speech. There is a tradition to listen to the clock bell ringing twelve times on TV. During these last 12 seconds of the year people keep silence and make their secret wishes for the next year. After that they drink champagne and have a rich

dinner, watching TV concerts and having fun. _____

8. At midnight they switch off the light and exchange kisses. Then a traditional New Year's dish banica (a flaky cheese pie) with lucky charms is eaten. More recently, people have started writing happy wishes on small pieces of paper and wrapping them in tin foil. Wishes may include happiness, health or success throughout the New Year. _____

9. New Year is the main day for gift giving and stories of St Basil's kindness to children and how he would come in the night and leave gifts in their shoes. There are many special dishes but the most important dish is Vassilopitta (St Basil's cake). There is always honey, nuts, fresh fruit, olive branches and other symbols of happiness and wealth on the table. The father, son or a lucky child was meant to be the first person across the threshold. A lucky child was someone who had both parents alive. _____

10. It is a time for new beginnings. People buy new things for their homes or new tools, or new clothes. People give cards and gifts are exchanged. They make new years resolutions and forget all quarrels for it is a time to be happy and generous. Even the animals are washed, groomed and decorated for the festival. Mothers put food, flowers and little gifts on a special tray. On New Year's morning, the children must keep their eyes closed until they have been led to the tray. _____

11. Children in the family, the youngest ones following the elderly, would go to their father, who had presents hidden in his coat. A wife never received a present from her husband, as it was considered a disgrace. Parts of the traditional meal are various dried fruits, raisins, nuts, pastries and cakes. The most important among the pastries is the Darin (a big flat bread) which has a coin hidden in it. _____







12. Celebrations begin with a family dinner, including shrimp, lamb or capon. Tradition says that wearing new, red underwear on New Year's Eve brings good luck. When the clock strikes midnight they eat 12 grapes, one with every toll to bring good luck for the next 12 months. Sometimes the grapes are washed down with wine. Theater productions and movies are interrupted to carry out this custom. Then people greet each other and toast with sparkling wine such as cava (sparkling wine). _____

13. At the stroke of midnight people will kiss or honk car horns. Black-eyed peas and rice called Hoppin' John is eaten by some. They believe that black-eyed beans are lucky. Other foods are cake and champagne. They also watch the Championship football games in stadiums or on their television. They watch for the moment when a giant brightly colored electric apple is lowered to the ground at which time they start saying Happy New Year. _____





14. People go through the streets dressed in costumes and hats representing good and evil spirits. People believe good luck comes from letting a drop of cream land on the floor on New Year's Day. This was said to bring a year of overflowing abundance. There are no particular main dishes associated with the event, although sweets and desserts are usual. _____

15. The harvest festival takes place at the end of the year. The ceremony consists of many events, which last for up to a month. These include gathering of foam from the tops of waves and collection of water from the major rivers. The end occurs when warriors dance around the king and persuade him to rejoin his people. The King does a dance before his people and eats part of a special pumpkin and then he throws the rest of it to the warriors. This is supposed to mean that it is time for the new crops to be eaten. A bonfire is held at the end of the holiday which is supposed to represent the burning of the previous year. _____

Do the crossword puzzle.

8.  (3)
9. "Shall we dress up as reindeer for the Christmas party?"
"....., let's dress up as elves." (2)
10.  (5)
11.  (6)
12.  (6)
14. "Let's up at 4 o'clock on Christmas morning to open our presents." (3)
16.  (3)
18. *This game is for 2-4 players. You need a dice and counters. The first player to throw a six starts. You must not land on the same square as your opponent* (5)
21.  (2)



25.  (5)
26.  (5)
32.  (3)
33.  (3)

44. Ducks quack, horses neigh and dogs (4)

45. "Shall we the film on television now?" (5)

48. David is very happy. loves his Christmas presents. (2)

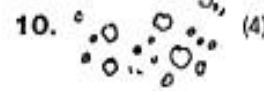


50. Christmas a very happy time of year. (2)

51. The day before Christmas Day is Christmas (3)



This is angel. (2)



13. The colour of 7 down. (6)



17. Japanese money. (3)

19. "I want to lots of money to buy Christmas presents."
"Why don't you do some babysitting?" (4)



24. In my family, we love Christmas. (3)



36. "Would you like a slice of Christmas cake?"



42. "....., dear. I don't like my Christmas tree." (4)



45. "Let's go to church on Christmas morning. I don't like singing carols." (4)

46. I always get tangerine in my Christmas stocking. (2)



49. My mum and dad like giving a nice Christmas. (2)

52. "On Christmas Day, do you watch television or play board games?" (2)

53. Sandra is going to with Grandpa on Christmas. (2)

Translate the sentences into English.

1. Рождественского дарителя в Англии называют Фатер Кристмас (Father Christmas). Дети пишут ему письмо с пожеланиями и бросают его в камин. Дым из трубы доставляет ему список подарков.

2. Французский дед Пер Ноэль (Père Noël) дарит подарки только хорошим и послушным детям. Дети пишут ему записку с пожеланиями, зарывают ее под особым рождественским деревом и находят подарки в своих башмаках.

3. Имя немецкого дедушки Вайнахтсман (Weihnachtsmann), что означает «рождественский человек». Он одет в шубу мехом наружу. В одной руке он держит подарки, а в другой – розги для непослушных детей.

4. Итальянский дед Баббо Натале (Babbo Natale) сам подарки не раздает. Добрая фея Бефана (La Befana) прилетает ночью на волшебной метле, открывает двери золотым ключиком и наполняет подарками чулки. Тем, кто много шалил и плохо учился, фея кладет уголек.

5. Бразильский дед Пай Натал (Pai Natal) даже в жару носит красную куртку и колпак. Он приезжает в Бразилию из далекой Гренландии, а его любимый напиток – кофе. Подарки вместо него раздает его помощник Черный Пит.

6. Финский дед Йоулупукки (Joulupukki) носит в козлиную шкуру и ездит тоже на козлике. Он живет на горе Корватунтури (Korvatunturi), что означает «ушная гора» и благодаря чему он слышит все желания детей.
7. В Швейцарии подарки детям разносит Кристkindл (Christkindl). Она разносит подарки, наряжает елку и даже украшает рождественскую выпечку.
8. В Испании и Латинской Америке дети получают свои подарки только 6 января. Подарки им приносят короли-волшебники Мельхиор, Гаспар и Бальтазар. Хотя во многих семьях дети сейчас получают свои подарки два раза.
9. Венгерские дети тоже получают свои подарки в ночь на 6 января. Они ставят свои ботинки на подоконник, и Микулаш (Mikulás) кладет туда конфеты и игрушки или уголек. Чаще всего дети получают и то, и другое.
10. В Норвегии подарки детям дарят Юлениссе (Julenissen), которые живут по всей стране. Главой их рода является Ниссе, который подарил маленькой девочке две серебряные монеты 400 лет назад.
11. У нашего Деда Мороза было несколько предшественников: Сказочный кузнец Мороз, злой дух Карачун, маленький старик Морозко и повелитель стужи Зимник. Со временем он стал добрым и справедливым и дарит подарки хорошим детям вместе с внучкой Снегурочкой.
12. Самый известный дед – это, конечно, Санта Клаус. Его прообразом был святой Николай, но в 16 веке почитать святых и дарить детям подарки от их имени запретили. Поэтому день дарения подарков перенесли на период рождественских ярмарок, а даритель превратился в мифического персонажа из Лапландии.

TEXT 6. HALLOWEEN

On October 31st, dozens of children dressed in costumes knock on their neighbors' doors and yell, "Trick or Treat" when the door opens. Pirates and princesses, ghosts and popular heroes of the day all hold bags open to catch the candy or other goodies that the neighbors drop in. As they give each child a treat, the neighbors exclaim over the costumes and try to guess who is under the masks.

November 1st is a religious holiday known as All Saints' Day (or formerly, All Hallows' Day). The day before the holy day is known as All Hallows' Eve. The word "Halloween" comes from that form. Its origins lie in both pre-Christian and Christian customs.

October 31st was the eve of the Celtic new year. The Celts were the ancestors or the present-day Irish, Welsh, and Scottish people. On this day, ghosts walked and mingled with the living, or so the Celts thought. The townspeople baked food all that day, and when night fell, they dressed up and tried to resemble the souls of the dead. Hoping that the ghosts would leave peacefully before midnight of the new year, the people carried the food to the edge of town and left it for them. Much later, when Christianity spread throughout Ireland, and October 31 was no longer the last day of the year, Halloween became a celebration mostly for children. "Ghosts" went from door to door asking for treats, or else a trick would be played on the owners of the house. When millions of Irish people immigrated to the United States in the 1840s, the tradition came with them. Today, school dances and neighborhood parties called block parties are popular among young and old alike. More and more adults - celebrate Halloween. They dress up like historical or political figures and go to masquerade parties. In larger cities, costumed children and their parents gather at shopping malls early in the evening.

Stores and businesses give parties, with games and treats for the children. Teenagers enjoy costume dances at their schools, and the more outrageous the costume the better! Certain pranks such as soaping car windows and tipping over garbage cans are expected. But partying and pranks are not the only things that, Halloweeners enjoy doing. Some collect money to buy food and medicine for needy children around the world.

At Halloween parties children play traditional games. One of the most popular is called pin-the-tail-on-the-donkey: One child is blindfolded and spun slowly so that he or she will become dizzy. Then the child must find a paper donkey hanging on the wall and try to pin a tail onto the back. Another game is bobbing for apples. One child at a time has to get apples from a tub of water without using hands! How? By sinking his or her face into the water and biting the apple!

Symbols of Halloween

Halloween originated as a celebration connected with evil spirits. Witches flying on broomsticks with black cats, ghosts, goblins and skeletons have all evolved as symbols of Halloween. They are popular trick-or-treat costumes, and decorations for greeting cards and windows. Black is one of the traditional Halloween colors, probably because Halloween festivals and traditions took place at night. In the weeks before October 31, Americans decorate windows of houses and schools with silhouettes of witches and black cats.

Pumpkins are also a symbol of Halloween. The pumpkin is orange-colored and orange has become the other traditional Halloween color. Carving pumpkins into jack-o'-lanterns is a Halloween custom also dating back to Ireland. A legend grew up about a man named Jack who was so stingy that he was not allowed into heaven when he died. His spirit was doomed to wander around the countryside, holding a lantern to light his way.



The Irish people carved scary faces out of turnips representing "Jack of the Lantern," or Jack-o'-lantern. When the Irish brought their customs to the United States, they carved faces on pumpkins because in the autumn, they were more plentiful than turnips. Today jack-o'-lanterns in the windows of a house on Halloween night let costumed children know that there are goodies waiting if they knock and say "Trick or Treat!"

Scary Stories

No Halloween party is complete without a scary story. Usually one person talks in a low voice while others crowd together on the floor or around a fire. Here is the example of such a story. There was an old woman who lived all by herself, and she was very lonely. Sitting in the kitchen one night, she said, "Oh, I wish I had some company." No sooner had she spoken than down the chimney rumbled two feet from which the flesh had rotted. The old woman's eyes bulged with terror. Then two legs dropped to the hearth and attached themselves to the feet. Then a body tumbled down, then two arms, and a man's head. As the old woman watched, the parts came together into a great, tall man. The man danced around and around the room. Then he stopped, and he looked into her eyes. "What have you come for?" she asked in a small voice. "What do I come for?" he said. "I come for YOU!" The narrator shouts and jumps at the person near him!



Listen to the song, translate it into Russian and comment on Halloween.

Boys and girls of every age, wouldn't you like to see something strange?
Come with us and you will see – this, our town of Halloween

This is Halloween, this is Halloween, pumpkins scream in the dead of night
This is Halloween, everybody make a scene, trick or treat till the neighbors gonna die of fright
It's our town, everybody scream in this town of Halloween

I am the one hiding under your bed, teeth ground sharp and eyes glowing red
I am the one hiding under your stairs, fingers like snakes and spiders in my hair
This is Halloween, this is Halloween! Halloween! Halloween! Halloween! Halloween!

In this town we call home, everyone hail to the pumpkin song
In this town, don't we love it now? Everybody's waiting for the next surprise

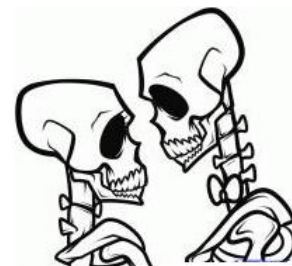


Round that corner, man hiding in the trash can, something's waiting now to pounce, and how you'll...
Scream! This is Halloween, red 'n' black, slimy green
Aren't you scared? Well, that's just fine
Say it once, say it twice, take a chance and roll the dice
Ride with the moon in the dead of night
Everybody scream, everybody scream in our town of Halloween!

I am the clown with the tear-away face, here in a flash and gone without a trace
I am the "who" when you call, "Who's there?" I am the wind blowing through your hair
I am the shadow on the moon at night filling your dreams to the brim with fright

This is Halloween, this is Halloween! Halloween! Halloween! Halloween! Halloween! Halloween!
Tender lumpings everywhere, life's no fun without a good scare
That's our job, but we're not mean in our town of Halloween
In this town, don't we love it now? Everyone's waiting for the next surprise

Skeleton Jack might catch you in the back and scream like a banshee
Make you jump out of your skin, this is Halloween, everybody scream
Wont' ya please make way for a very special guy
Our man jack is King of the Pumpkin patch, everyone hail to the Pumpkin King now



This is Halloween, this is Halloween! Halloween! Halloween! Halloween! Halloween!
In this town we call home everyone hail to the pumpkin song
La la la la-la-la la la la-la-la la la la-la-la la-la-la WOO!!

TEXT 7. THE BRITISH REMAIN SUPERSTITIOUS

With the increase in science and technology over the last few decades, it is easy to imagine that here is a decrease in people's belief in superstitions. However, this is not the case. A new study shows that British people are as superstitious as they were a generation ago.

One of the most popular British superstitions is 'touching wood'. For example, when someone remarks that life is good or that things are going well, then that person touches the nearest wooden object and says 'touch wood' out loud. This action ensures that no bad luck will come to damage or destroy the way things are. If there is no wood to hand, the person touches their head – as though they are saying that their head is made from a block of wood! The next most popular superstition in Britain is to cross your fingers. Usually, you cross your fingers when you want something to work out well or succeed. For example, it is quite usual to cross your fingers for someone when you wish them well in an exam or an important test.

Some superstitions are based on common sense and others appear quite odd. It seems sensible to avoid walking under ladders (Britain's third most noted superstition) in case someone drops something onto you from above. However, turning money over in your pocket when you see a new moon through a window, or carrying a lucky charm such as a rabbit's foot, or trying to avoid passing someone on the stairs, seem quite odd today!

Sometimes there are historical reasons for a superstition. In some areas of Britain it is considered most unlucky to put new shoes on the table. Or that breaking a mirror brings seven years of bad luck. Many people still adhere to these sorts of superstition. Others believe they are a throwback to the nineteenth century when servants working in large houses were taught about polite behaviour and how to care about expensive and delicate objects.

The survey on attitudes to superstitions has produced some controversial results. It seems that women in the UK are more superstitious than men. People in Scotland are more superstitious than their neighbours in England. Whatever your own views are, when in Britain it is a good idea to cross your fingers before you walk under a ladder and to keep loose change in your pocket in case you see a new moon.

1) Are you superstitious? 2) Do people in Russia and England have the same superstitions?

3) Translate the following words from the text: decrease; odd; avoid; adhere; controversial;

TEXT 8. GUY FAWKES NIGHT

British people celebrate Guy Fawkes Night (or Bonfire Night) every year on 5 November in memory of a famous event in British history, the Gunpowder Plot. On 5 November 1605 a group of Roman Catholics planned to blow up the Houses of Parliament while King James I was inside. On the evening before, one of them, Guy Fawkes, was caught in the cellars with gunpowder, and the plot was discovered. He and all the other conspirators were put to death.

Originally Bonfire Night was celebrated as a victory for Protestants over Catholics, but the festival is now enjoyed by everyone. Some children make a guy, a figure of a man made of old clothes stuffed with newspaper or straw to represent Guy Fawkes. The guy is then burned on top of a bonfire on Guy Fawkes Night. A few weeks before, children take their guy into the street and ask for a 'penny for the guy'. They use the money to buy fireworks. Only adults are legally allowed to buy fireworks in Great Britain.

Some people hold private bonfire parties in their gardens, while others attend larger public events organized by local councils or charities. Chestnuts or potatoes are often put in the bonfire so that they will cook as it burns. Fireworks such as Roman Candles, Catherine Wheels, bangers and rockets are put in the ground and are let off one by one. Children hold lighted sparkles in their hands and wave them around to make patterns. Unfortunately, there are sometimes accidents involving fireworks and there are now restrictions on the type of fireworks that can be used by the general public.

The events of 5 November are celebrated in the nursery rhyme:

Remember, remember
The fifth of November,
The gunpowder Treason and Plot;
I know of no reason
Why the Gunpowder Treason
Should ever be forgot.



Mark the sentences as true, false or not given in the text.

1. Guy Fawkes was caught in the cellars by chance.
2. Guy Fawkes was the leader of the conspirators.
3. The Gunpowder plot was not a success.
4. All the conspirators were executed.
5. Before Bonfire Night children collect money for charity.
6. Only adults can let off fireworks in Great Britain.
7. Guy Fawkes Night is not celebrated in the United States.

TEXT 9. THANKSGIVING (the fourth Thursday in November)

Almost every culture in the world has held celebrations of thanks for a plentiful harvest. The American Thanksgiving holiday began as a feast of thanksgiving in the early days of the American colonies almost four hundred years ago.

In 1620, a boat filled with more than one hundred people sailed across the Atlantic Ocean to settle in the New World. This religious group had begun to question the beliefs of the Church of England and they wanted to separate from it- The Pilgrims settled in what is now the state of Massachusetts. Their first winter in the New World was difficult. They had arrived too late to grow many crops and without fresh food, half the colony died from disease. The following spring, the Iroquois Indians taught them how to grow corn (maize), a new food for the colonists. They showed them other crops to grow in the unfamiliar soil and how to hunt and fish.

In the autumn of 1621, bountiful crops of corn, barley, beans and pumpkins were harvested. The colonists had much to be thankful for, so a feast was planned. They invited the local Indian chief

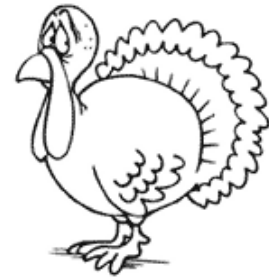
and ninety Indians. The Indians brought deer to roast with the turkeys and other wild game offered by the colonists. The colonists had learned how to cook cranberries and different kinds of corn and squash dishes from the Indians. To this first Thanksgiving, the Indians had even brought popcorn. In following years, many of the original colonists celebrated the autumn harvest with a feast of thanks. After the United States became an independent country, Congress recommended one yearly day of thanksgiving, for the whole nation to celebrate. George Washington suggested the date November 26 as Thanksgiving Day. Then in 1864, at the end of a long and bloody civil war, Abraham Lincoln asked all Americans to set aside the last Thursday in November as a day of thanksgiving.

Thanksgiving is a time for tradition and sharing. Even if they live far away, family members gather for a reunion at the house of an older relative. All give thanks together for the good things that they have. In this spirit of sharing, civic groups and charitable organizations offer a traditional meal to those in need, particularly the homeless. On most tables throughout the United States, foods eaten at the first thanksgiving have become traditional.

American children still sing this song as they look forward to spending Thanksgiving with their grandparents. It was written around 1860 by Lydia Maria Child.

Over the River and Through the Woods

Over the river, and through the woods,
To grandmother's house we go;
The horse knows the way,
To carry the sleigh,
Though the white and drifted snow.
Over the river and through the woods-
Oh, how the wind does blow! It stings the toes,
And bites the nose,
As over the ground we go.



Symbols of Thanksgiving

Turkey, corn (or maize), pumpkins and cranberry sauce are symbols which represent the first Thanksgiving. Now all of these symbols are drawn on holiday decorations and greeting cards. The use of corn meant the survival of the colonies. "Indian corn" as a table or door decoration represents the harvest and the fall season.

Sweet-sour cranberry sauce, or cranberry jelly, was on the first Thanksgiving table, and is still served today. The cranberry is a small, sour berry. It grows in bogs, or muddy areas, in Massachusetts and other New England states. The Indians used the fruit to treat infections. They used the juice to dye their rugs and blankets. They taught the colonists how to cook the berries with sweetener and water to make a sauce. The Indians called it "bitter berry." When the colonists saw

it, they named it "crane-berry" because the flowers of the berry bent the stalk over, and it resembled the long-necked bird called a crane. The berries are still grown in New England. Very few people know, however, that before the berries are put in bags to be sent to the rest of the country, each individual berry must bounce at least four inches high to make sure they are not top ripe!

In 1988, a Thanksgiving ceremony of a different kind took place at the Cathedral of St. John the Divine. More than four thousand people gathered on Thanksgiving night. Among them were Native Americans representing tribes from all over the country and descendants of people whose ancestors had migrated to the New World.

The ceremony was a public acknowledgment of the Indians' role in the first Thanksgiving 350 years ago. Until recently most schoolchildren believed that the Pilgrims cooked the entire Thanksgiving feast, and offered it to the Indians. In fact, the feast was planned to thank the

Indians for teaching them how to cook those foods. Without the Indians, the first settlers would not have survived.

Read the text about Thanksgiving and choose the best way to complete the sentences.

1. Thanksgiving originated
 - a) from an Indian holiday
 - b) from a British holiday
 - c) in a British colony
 - d) in India

2. The Pilgrims came to America
 - a) to get religious freedom
 - b) to get political freedom
 - c) to become rich
 - d) to save themselves from hunger

3. Half of the colony
 - a) died fighting the Indians
 - b) died from illnesses
 - c) went to live with Indians
 - d) returned to Great Britain

4. The Indians
 - a) used cranberry to dye their hair
 - b) helped the colonists to survive
 - c) learned from the colonists how to make popcorn and cranberry sauce
 - d) advised the colonists to go back to Great Britain

5. Thanksgiving is celebrated
 - a) on November 26
 - b) with roast goose, cranberry jam and apple pie
 - c) in the house of an older relative
 - d) as a children's holiday

6. More than three hundred years passed before
 - a) Thanksgiving became a holiday of sharing
 - b) the Indians' role in the first Thanksgiving was officially acknowledged
 - c) Thanksgiving spread all over the world
 - d) Thanksgiving became a national American holiday



GRAMMAR

INTRODUCTORY COURSE

1. SENTENCE

1.1. PARTS OF SPEECH can be divided into

№	notional [ˈnɔːʃ(ə)n(ə)l]	№	structural [ˈstrʌktʃ(ə)r(ə)l]
1	NOUN [naʊn] <i>desk, man, sun, idea;</i>	1	ARTICLE [ˈɑːtɪkl] <i>a, an, the;</i>

2	PRONOUN ['prɜːnəʊn] <i>he, them, mine, this, no;</i>	2	CONJUNCTION [kən'dʒʌŋkʃ(ə)n] <i>and, but, while;</i>
3	ADJECTIVE ['ædʒəktɪv] <i>nice, black, happy;</i>	3	PREPOSITION [ˌprepə'zɪʃ(ə)n] <i>at, of, into, above;</i>
4	NUMERAL ['nju:mərəl] <i>four, ninth, third, hundred;</i>	4	PARTICLE ['pɑ:tɪkl] <i>to live, not;</i>
5	VERB [vɜ:b] <i>go, must, have, think, understand;</i>	Verbals: infinitive [ɪn'fɪnətɪv] <i>to go;</i> participle [pɑ:'tɪsɪpl] <i>going; gone;</i> gerund ['dʒer(ə)nd] <i>going;</i>	
6	ADVERB ['ædvɜ:b] <i>well, quickly, however, absolutely;</i>		
INTERJECTION [ˌɪntə'dʒekʃ(ə)n] <i>Oh! Wow! Oops! Ouch! Gee! Yo!</i>			

1. 2. PARTS OF THE SENTENCE can be divided into

№	main parts	№	secondary parts
1	SUBJECT ['sʌbdʒekt] <i>Jane went away. They are here.</i>	1	ATTRIBUTE ['ætrɪbjʊ:t] <i>There is a <u>nice black</u> cat in the room.</i>
2	PREDICATE ['predɪkət]: simple verbal predicate <i>He goes. He went. He has gone.</i>	2	OBJECT ['ɒbdʒekt] direct object <i>Take <u>the book</u>. Do you see <u>him</u>? Give me <u>the pen</u>.</i>
	compound verbal predicate ['kɒmpaʊnd]) <i>We <u>must go</u>. I <u>began to read</u>.</i>		indirect object <i>Give <u>me</u> the book. Give it to <u>me</u>. Come with <u>me</u></i>
	compound nominal predicate: (link-verb +predicative [prɪ'dɪkətɪv]) <i>He is a <u>student</u>. They are <u>happy</u>. It got <u>dark</u>.</i>	3	ADVERBIAL MODIFIER of place = where? <i>She is <u>at home</u>.</i> of time = when? <i>We met <u>at 5 o'clock</u>.</i> of manner = how? <i>She walked <u>slowly</u> upstairs.</i>

Ex. 1. Translate into English.

Существительное, прилагательное, подлежащее, числительное, глагол, определение, глагол-связка, местоимение, составное глагольное сказуемое, прямое дополнение, составное именное сказуемое, наречие, именная часть сказуемого, обстоятельство образа действия, междометие, частица, союз, предлог, артикль.

Ex. 2. Fill in parts of speech.

to sleep -, himself -, while -,
 white - Ah! -, sixteenth -,
 teenager -, in -, an -

and -, not -, no -,
 fantastic -, slowly -, fine -,
 under -, ninety-seven -, to be,
 I -, computer -, Wow! -

Ex. 3. Name parts of speech and parts of the sentence.

1. My friends go to the country in summer.
2. He is a good doctor.
3. Oh! We must run quickly.
4. Jim has given me this book today.
5. Wow! The books are so white and new.
6. The teacher began to explain a new rule to us.
7. I am already doing my homework.

1. 3. TYPES OF SENTENCES can be divided (into)

Nº	according to the aim of the utterance	Nº	according to the structure
1	DECLARATIVE [dɪ'klærətɪv] SENTENCE / STATEMENT <i>They lived happily ever after.</i>	1	SIMPLE SENTENCE <i>He likes coffee for breakfast.</i>
2	INTERROGATIVE [ɪntə'rɒgətɪv] SENTENCE <i>Whose work is this? Is he a doctor?</i>	2	COMPOUND ['kɒmpaʊnd] SENTENCE <i>I like coffee and she likes tea.</i>
3	IMPERATIVE [ɪm'perətɪv] SENTENCE commands [kə'mɑ:ndz] <i>Shut the door!</i> requests [rɪ'kwests] <i>Please help me.</i>	3	COMPLEX SENTENCE MAIN CLAUSE ↔ SUBORDINATE CLAUSE [sə'bɔ:d(ə)nət] <i>I'll take coffee because I like it.</i> <i>If he comes early, we'll go for a walk.</i>
4	EXCLAMATORY [ɪks'klæmət(ə)rɪ] <i>What a nice flower! How awful!</i>		

All sentences can be
 AFFIRMATIVE [ə'fɜ:mətɪv] or NEGATIVE

He gets up so early. Why did you get up at seven? Go away!
He doesn't get up so early. Why didn't you go home at seven? Don't go away!

Ex. 4. Identify the type of the sentence.

1. Let it be.
2. Are you somewhere feeling lonely or is someone loving you?
3. Money can't buy me love.
4. I don't drink coffee, I take tea, my dear.
5. I'm so happy 'cause today I found my friends.
6. Who wants to live forever when love must die?
7. Hey, Jude, don't let me down.
8. I want it all and I want it now.
9. May I go with you, my pretty maid?

10. This is the house that Jack built
11. People are strange.
12. What a beautiful day!
13. Since my baby left me, I've been losing my mind.
14. The world is not enough.
15. Where have you been all the day, Billy boy, Billy boy?

1. 4. IMPERATIVE SENTENCES

№	person /number	statements	negatives
1	first person - singular (=I) - plural (= we)	<i>Let me help you.</i> <i>Let us go there.</i> <i>Let's go there.</i>	<i>Don't let me do it.</i> <i>Don't let us go there.</i> <i>Let's not go there.</i>
2	second person (=you)	<i>Open the door.</i> <i>Be at home.</i> <i>Stay here, please</i>	<i>Don't open the door.</i> <i>Don't be at home.</i> <i>Don't stay here, please.</i>
3	third person (=he, she, it, they)	<i>Let him come.</i> <i>Let Jim come.</i> <i>Let it be.</i> <i>Let them come.</i>	<i>Don't let him come.</i> <i>Let him not come.</i> <i>Don't let them come.</i> <i>Let them not come.</i>

Ex. 1. Make the sentences negative.

1. Let's go to a movie tonight. 2. Let me forget it. 3. Forgive him. 4. Let Bryan open the champagne. 5. Let her come in. 6. Help them. 7. Let's do it. 8. Call him now. 9. Let's meet her after classes. 10. Let him explain everything. 11. Tell him a lie. 12. Leave your things here, please.

Ex. 2. Fill in 'to' where necessary.

1. Ask him ... come later. 2. Let Mary ... buy something tasty. 3. Father allowed his son ... drive the car. 4. He told the boys not ... play with his tools. 5. Let's ... play chess now. 6. Her parents never let her ... come home after ten. 7. The teacher asked him ... correct his mistakes. 8. Let me ... help you. 9. Use your smile ... change the world. Don't let this world ... change your smile.

Ex. 3. Read the phrases. Which of them can belong to a film director (1), teacher (2), landlady (3), dog's master (4), little boy's mother (5)?

Open your books. Don't pick up things from the ground, honey. Bring the stick! Let's answer these questions now. Put the rubbish into plastic bags and put it into the can. Come up to Diane and take her by the hand. Come to the blackboard, please. Don't play loud music or make noise late. Look into her eyes and say, "I love you!" Don't throw stones at other kids. Bark! Kiss her.

Ex. 4. Parents like to give tasks to their kids. Imagine that you are about to leave your place for a while. Tell your parents what they should or shouldn't do while you are away. (no less than 3 affirmative and 3 negative phrases)

Ex. 5. Fill in the gaps with: try, wait, think, listen, earn, forgive.

"Before you act, Before you react, Before you spend,
Before you criticize, Before you pray..... Before you quit,"

– Ernest Hemingway

Ex. 6. Translate into English.

A. 1. Открой дверь, пожалуйста. 2. Давай потанцуем. 3. Пусть Ник сыграет на гитаре. 4. Пусть он споёт. 5. Не перебивай меня. 6. Не позволяй ему вести машину. 7. Пусть она приготовит завтрак. 8. Давай я помогу тебе. 9. Давай не пойдём в этот клуб сегодня. 10. Перестаньте разговаривать. 11. Давай пообедаем. 12. Пусть она поговорит с ним.

В. Посмотри на себя. Ты молодой и ты напуган. Перестань бояться. Перестань думать о том, что другие люди думают о тебе. Носи то, что хочешь. Говори то, что думаешь. Слушай ту музыку, которая тебе нравится. Перестань ждать пятницу. Живи сейчас. Веселись. Танцуй. Влюбляйся. Рискуй. Это твоя жизнь.

1. 5. TYPES OF QUESTIONS

1. TAG QUESTIONS

1) Tag questions (or question tags) are short questions that we add at the end of a statement. We use them to ask for confirmation of the statement or agreement with it.

They are leaving soon, aren't they? It's autumn now, isn't it?

2) Tag questions are formed with an auxiliary [ɔ:g'zɪl(ə)rɪ] verb and the suitable personal pronoun. A positive statement is followed by a negative tag question, and a negative statement is followed by a positive tag question.

It's not late, is it? He left, didn't he? The kids must go, mustn't they? Meg will do it, won't she?

3) When the sentence begins with **everyone, everybody, someone, somebody, anyone, anybody, no one, nobody**, we form a tag question with a **plural auxiliary verb + they**.

Everyone knows the way to the hotel, don't they? No one is in the room, are they?

4) Study the following tag questions.

1	This is a long story, isn't it?	That is a great chance, isn't it?
2	These are your problems, aren't they?	Those are his children, aren't they?
3	I am late for classes, aren't I?	I am not late, am I?
4	There is a lake near the village, isn't there ?	
5	Let's consult the doctor, shall we ?	
6	Let me (him, the boys) help you, will you / won't you ?	
7	Leave the door open, will you / won't you / can you / could you ?	
8	Don't call me again, will you ?	

Note:

Mind the meaning of **yes** and **no** in answer to a negative question:

a short affirmative answer always begins with **yes**;

a short negative answer always begins with **no**.

He is not at home, is he? – Yes. (Yes, he is. / Yes, he is at home)
 – No. (No, he isn't. / No, he is not at home)

Compare to Russian:

Его ведь нет дома? – Да, его нет дома.
 – Нет, он дома.

2. YES/NO QUESTIONS

1) Yes/no questions expect **yes** or **no** in answer.

To form a yes/no question we put an auxiliary at the beginning of the question before its subject.

Kate is studying. – Is she studying? He hates warm milk. Does he hate warm milk?

2) Negative yes/no questions are often asked to express surprise, disbelief or irritation.

Don't you remember our trip to Spain? (Разве ты не помнишь ... и т. д.)

3. CHOICE QUESTIONS

7. He was **nowhere** to be seen.
8. She is **never** late. **Never** put off till tomorrow what you can do today.
9. He could **hardly** say a word.
10. They **seldom** go to this park.

Ex. 1. Add question tags.

Everyone knows the way to the hotel,
 No one is in the room,
 This is a long story,
 That is a great chance,
 These are your problems,
 Those are his children,
 I am late for classes,

I am not late,
 There is a lake near the village,
 Let's consult the doctor,
 Let me (him, the boys) help you,
 Leave the door open,
 Don't call me again,

Ex. 2. Read in English.

Negative particle

1. He is (**не**) coming to the party. They (**не**) like fish. Jane (**не**) take part in it.

Pronoun

2. There are (**нет**) high mountains in Great Britain. (**нет**) news is good news.
3. She has (**ни**) brothers (**ни**) sisters.
4. Can you lend a couple of dollars? – Sorry, I have (**нет, нисколько**).
5. (**Никто – 2 варианта**) can help him.
6. I'm afraid (**ничего**) can be done about it.

Adverb

7. He was (**нигде**) to be seen.
8. She is (**никогда**) late. (**никогда**) put off till tomorrow what you can do today.
9. He could (**едва**) say a word.
10. They (**редко**) go to this park.

Ex. 3. Add question tags.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. There are no places in the train. | 13. Nobody likes her. |
| 2. That's your new neighbour. | 14. Mary saw an old friend of hers. |
| 3. I'm not alone. | 15. This is the house where he lived as a kid. |
| 4. You must come in time. | 16. You should take a rest. |
| 5. If he comes, let me know. | 17. Everybody will be present. |
| 6. Jake has been working here for 5 years. | 18. His parents are retired. |
| 7. She could hardly move. | 19. He had never written to her. |
| 8. I am older than you. | 20. There was a man at the door. |
| 9. These are your classmates. | 21. I am seventeen. |
| 10. Say hello to them. | 22. No one met me. |
| 11. Let's go away now. | 23. The children are sleeping. |
| 12. They seldom miss classes. | |

1. 7. THE VERBS 'BE' & 'HAVE'

I. BE (doesn't need an auxiliary in questions and negatives)

1. As a **notional verb** 'be' has the meaning «быть, находиться».

In this case, it's followed by an adverbial modifier of place.

I am at home. Is Tom in? Gwen wasn't here. My friends are in Paris now.

2. As a **link-verb**, it's part of the compound nominal predicate and is followed by a predicative expressed by a noun, adjective or numeral. *He is boy. Are you ten? I am late. They are happy.*

3. As an **auxiliary verb**, it's used for verb tense forms of active and passive voice.

As a **modal verb**, it expresses arrangements, instructions, agreements. *We **are** to meet at 7.*

4. Present forms of *be*

	statements	questions	negatives
I	I am at home.	Am I at home?	I am not at home.
he / she / it	He is at home. It is dark.	Is he at home? Is it dark?	He is not at home. It isn't dark.
we / you / they	They are at home	Are they at home?	They aren't at home

5. Combinations **be + adjective (or past participle)**, express **actions** and are translated as **verbs**

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| 1. be absent – отсутствовать; | 9. be interested in – интересоваться; |
| 2. be present – присутствовать; | 10. be nervous – нервничать; |
| 3. be cold – мерзнуть; | 11. be proud of – гордиться; |
| 4. be late for – опаздывать; | 12. be angry with – сердиться; |
| 5. be fond of – увлекаться; | 13. be sleepy – хотеть спать; |
| 6. be glad – радоваться; | 14. be tired of – устать; |
| 7. be ill – болеть; | 15. be afraid of – бояться; |
| 8. be sorry – сожалеть; | 16. be upset – огорчиться, расстроиться; |

II. HAVE

1. As a **notional verb** 'to have' has the following meanings:

1) «**иметь, обладать**». In this case, we form negatives and questions with auxiliary verbs.
He has a country house, doesn't he? Do you have a family? They didn't have a dog last year.

Note: In **everyday speech**, we may use the combination **have got**.

In this case we form negatives and questions with **have**.

He has got your address, hasn't he? I haven't got a sister. Have you got a computer?

The combination **have got** is only used **in the present**.

2) **Have** combines with some nouns to express an **action** and is translated as a **verb**.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. have a meal – поесть | 8. have a break – сделать перерыв |
| 2. have a drink – попить, выпить | 9. have a dance – потанцевать |
| 3. have a chat – поболтать | 10. have a fight – подраться |
| 4. have a talk – поговорить | 11. have a quarrel – поссориться |
| 5. have a rest – отдохнуть | 12. have a trip – съездить куда-то |
| 6. have a sleep – поспать | 13. have a walk – погулять |
| 7. have fun – повеселиться | 14. have a game – сыграть |

In this case, we form negatives and questions with suitable auxiliary verbs.

Does she have a good time at weekends? We don't have classes in July.

2. As an **auxiliary verb**, it's used to form perfect and perfect continuous tenses. As a **modal verb**, it's translated into Russian as «вынужден, приходится» *I **have** to get up early.*

3. Present forms of *have* as a notional verb

	statements	questions	negatives
have	He has a car	Does he have a car?	He doesn't have a car. He has no car.
have lunch	He has lunch at 12.	Does he have lunch at 12?	He doesn't have lunch at 12.
have got	He has got a car.	Has he got a car?	He hasn't got a car. He's got no car.

Ex.1. Make the sentences negative. Use 'not', 'no' and 'never'

1. I have got friends here. 2. Jessica is sad. 3. We have to go now. 4. My baby brother has got teeth. 5. They are at home. 6. We have been to Rome. 7. I have time. 8. The Mortons have dinner late. 9. His parents have got money. 10. I am twenty.

Ex. 2. Add question tags.

1. He has a white Rolls Royce,.....? 2. She has got a new boyfriend,?
3. I am eighteen,? 4. I have no choice,? 5. They haven't got anywhere to go,?
6. He is worried,? 7. They are always busy,? 8. Ken has a lot of problems,? 9. She is hardly able to speak,?
10. I am seldom tired,.....? 11. That's not right,?
12. They have a cottage in the mountains,?

Ex. 3. Ask choice questions.

1. Benny has got a hedgehog. 2. The film is exciting. 3. Her son is a DJ. 4. Her brothers have few friends. 5. This is your new assistant. 6. She has a nap after lunch.

Ex. 4. Ask wh-questions.

1. His grandparents are in the country now. 2. This little flower is yellow. 3. Many students have mistakes in the test. 4. Bill has got a new phone. 5. She has a walk with friends every evening.

Ex. 5. Translate the sentences using *be* + adjective.

1. Кто отсутствует сегодня? 2. Мы гордимся нашей культурой. 3. Я замерзла. 4. Он увлекается музыкой. 5. Они сожалеют об этом. 6. Она боится собак. 7. Он болеет. 8. Я хочу спать. 9. Мне жаль. 10. Они расстроены. 11. Она интересуется театром. 12. Мы рады с вами познакомиться. 13. Он сердится на нас. 14. Все студенты присутствуют сегодня. 15. Они нервничают. 16. Я устал. 17. Они всегда опаздывают.

Ex. 6. Translate the sentences using *have* + noun.

1. Давай сыграем. 2. Она ест 5 раз в день. 3. Я хочу попить. 4. Он обычно ездит куда-нибудь по выходным. 5. Она не отдыхает по субботам. 6. Твоя бабушка спит после обеда? 7. Давай поговорим с ним сегодня. 8. Повеселись на вечеринке. 9. Мы не будем делать перерыв. 10. Они никогда не ссорятся. 11. Она гуляет каждый вечер? 12. Давай не будем драться. 13. Потанцуем? 14. Они болтают по телефону каждый день.

Ex. 7. Ask no less than 10 questions about the situation:

two tag questions (negative & positive), a yes/no question, a choice question and some wh-questions.

1. His friends are in a café now. 2. Her grandparents have a house in the country. 3. Their daughter is a student. 4. He has a birthday next Friday. 5. Mike is a singer. 6. Mary has got a pet. 7. They have very little free time 8. Jim is nine. 9. She has a lot of friends. 10. They are late.

1. 8. SENTENCE WORD ORDER

1. Basic word order in English declarative sentences

subject group	predicate	object	adverbial modifiers		
			of manner	of place	of time
<i>The children</i>	<i>went</i>			<i>home</i>	<i>yesterday.</i>
<i>He</i>	<i>shouts</i>	<i>at me</i>	<i>angrily.</i>		
<i>A young girl</i>	<i>is walking</i>		<i>slowly</i>	<i>along the street.</i>	
<i>Two students</i>	<i>didn't pass</i>	<i>the exam</i>	<i>well</i>		<i>on Monday.</i>

2. Sentence patterns with objects

1) When the sentence has both direct and indirect object and the **direct object** is expressed by a **noun**, it can either stand after the predicate or take place after the indirect object.

	model 1	model 2
	whom? what? predicate + indirect object + direct object	what? whom? predicate + direct object + indirect object
	<i>She gave Jack the books.</i> <i>He bought her a car</i>	<i>She gave the books to Jack</i> <i>He bought a car for her.</i>

2) When the sentence has both direct and indirect object and the **direct object** is expressed by a **pronoun**, it always stands after the predicate.

model 2 subject + predicate + direct object + indirect object
She gave them to Jack.
He bought it for her.

Mind the prepositions **to** and **for** which we use with the indirect object in this case.

3. Patterns with adverbs of indefinite time, frequency and others like *always, also, never, often, seldom, probably, usually, etc.*

model 1: The adverb stands before one-verb predicate

He usually goes to the country in summer.

Exception: after the verb 'be'

He is always at home.

model 2:

The adverb stands after the first verb if the predicate consists of several verbs

He is always busy.

He will always be busy.

He can probably meet us.

He is always grumbling.

He has never come early.

He doesn't often stay at home in the evenings.

Note: *probably* usually stands **before** the negative
I probably don't understand you.

model 3: The adverb stands **before** the modal verb *have to*
He also has to get up early.

4. Word order with attributes

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8
opinion + size, length / age / shape, width + colour + where from? + past participle + made of + **noun**
beautiful big long old square broad brown French handmade wooden table

Ex. 1. Change the word order where possible.

1. He showed the photo to me. 2. They brought it for us. 3. I prepared them for the children.
4. He got them a snake. 5. We'll sing you a song. 6. We'll sing it to you. 7. I lent him some
money. 8. She sent him a text message. 9. She sent her son an e-mail. 10. I read it to him. 11.
I read the tale to him. 12. Give me the key. 13. Tell it to me. 14. Tell her the truth. 15. Let's buy
a present for Jane. 16. Let's buy it for him.

Ex. 2. Mark (✓) the place of the word *often* in each sentence.

1. He is late. 2. He comes late. 3. He has come late. 4. He will be late. 5. He may come late.
6. He didn't come late. 7. He had to come late. 8. He wasn't late. 9. He has been late.

Ex. 3. Mark (✓) the place of the adverb in each sentence.

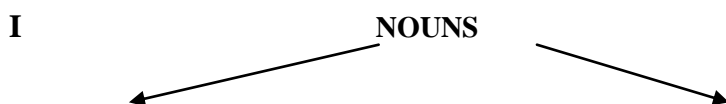
1. He gets up early. (usually) 2. Do you go to the university on foot? (always) 3. Grace is at
home in the evenings. (seldom) 4. They have to work a lot. (often) 5. I can understand him.
(never) 6. He has written the test. (already) 7. We are having a good time. (just) 8. They
don't hear you. (probably) 9. Mr. Johnson is very busy. (generally) 10. I will be sleeping at that
time. (probably)

Ex. 4. Put the adjectives in brackets into the sentences in the correct order.

1. It was an English song. (old, beautiful) 2. We saw a big dog. (brown, funny) 3. He was a thin
man. (tall, red-haired) 4. It was a strange house. (old, small) 5. She gave me a plastic bag.
(green, nice) 6. Janet is a little girl. (charming) 7. She bought a pair of brown shoes. (leather,
lovely) 8. He opened a huge box. (metal, black) 9. It was his new car. (German,
beautiful) 10. She was wearing her white dress. (cotton, new) 11. She carried an umbrella. (pink,
unusual) 12. He had a thin face (ugly, long) 13. It was an old painting. (interesting, French) 14.
There is a television. (new, Japanese, big) 15. She has long hair. (blonde) 16. We sat at a round
table. (wooden, large) 17. He has just read an adventure book (exciting) 18. They saw a rugby
player. (Australian, thin, tall) 19. He put on a pair of socks (old, woollen, grey) 20. We ate a
dessert. (fresh fruit, delicious, Italian) 21. He was a jazz musician. (black, talented) 22. She saw a
fireplace. (marble, old-fashioned) 23. Jim has a big cat. (fat, old, white)

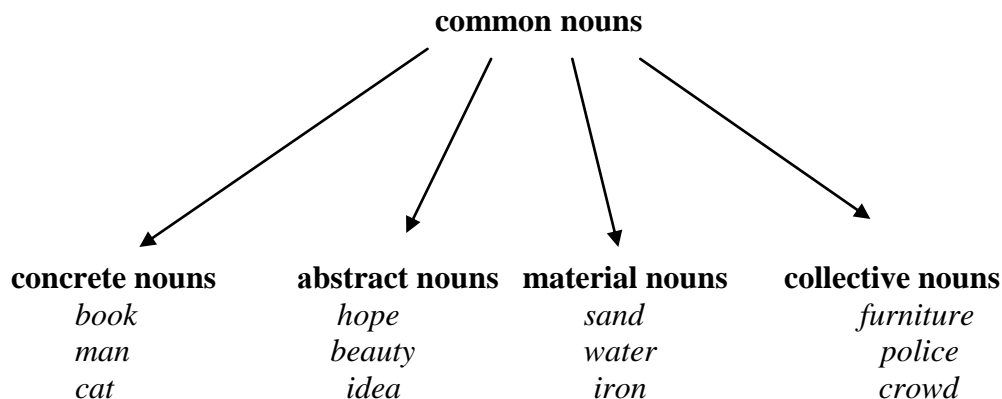
2. THE NOUN

2. 1. CLASSIFICATIONS

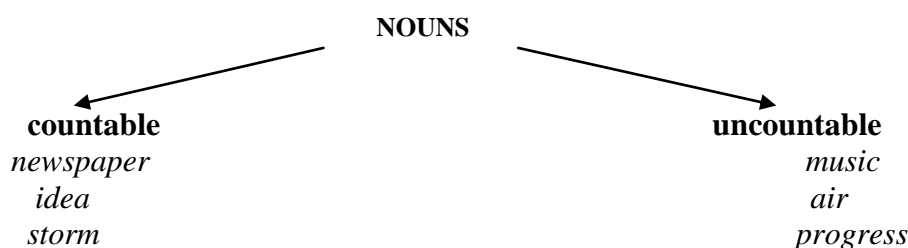


proper nouns

Titanic
London
Mark Twain
September
Wednesday



II



III. NOTES

Countable nouns are those that can be counted.

They normally have both singular and plural forms: *1 book – 2 books; an idea – many ideas;*

Uncountable nouns are those that can't be counted. They are:

material nouns (*water, air, sand, smoke* etc);

subjects of study (*chemistry, physics, math* etc);

languages (*Greek, Spanish, Chinese* etc);

games (*chess, billiards* etc);

diseases (*flu, pneumonia* etc);

natural phenomena (*darkness, hail, weather* etc);

some abstract nouns (*behaviour, applause* etc);

some collective nouns (*luggage, furniture, jewellery* etc).

1. Uncountable nouns are normally used in the singular and don't take article *a (an)*.

*I like green **tea**. We need new **furniture**. **Chess** is an interesting game. He knows **Chinese**.*

2. We use them as countable nouns when we mean different sorts or portions of something:

*I don't drink **wine**. You can see various **wines** here.*

*There is a lot of **fruit** on the table. These are different **fruits**.*

*I like **coffee** with **ice-cream**. Give us two **coffees** and three **ice-creams**.*

3. Some nouns can be countable or uncountable in different meaning:

beauty - a beauty Beauty will save the world. She is a real beauty.

paper – a paper There is a lot of paper on the desk. There are a lot of papers on the desk.

hair – a hair Her hair is long and blonde. There are two blonde hairs in the hairbrush.

Collective nouns refer to a group of objects.

1. They are normally used in the singular: *There is a lot of furniture in the room.*
2. Some of them have plural forms:
There are two crowds in the square. Both armies are big and strong.
3. We use some collective nouns referring to a group of people with a singular and a plural verb:
Their family is large. (= семья как нечто целое)
Their family are living in Greece and Italy. (= члены семьи как отдельные личности)
4. Some of the collective nouns are only used with a plural verb:
***The police** are here. **People** are strange. **The cattle** are in the field.*

2. 2. PLURAL OF NOUNS

I. General rule

1) nouns are made plural by adding **-s** to a noun in the singular.

desk - desks, boy - boys, smile - smiles;

2) singular nouns ending in **-s, -ss, -sh, -ch, -x, -z** add **-es** to make a plural noun:

bus - buses, kiss - kisses, box - boxes, watch - watches, wish - wishes, buzz - buzzes;

3) pronunciation of plural endings

№	noun ending	how	examples	exceptions
1	after voiceless consonants	[s]	<i>cats, books, maps</i>	
2	after vowels and voiced consonants	[z]	<i>dogs, files, days</i>	
3	after sibilants [s - z], [tʃ - dʒ], [ʃ - ʒ]	[ɪz]	<i>classes, matches, wishes</i>	<i>house</i> [haʊs] – <i>houses</i> ['haʊzɪz]
4	ending in a long vowel or a diphthong + -th [θ]	[ðz]	<i>bath</i> [ba:θ] – <i>baths</i> [ba:ðz] <i>mouth</i> [maʊθ] – <i>mouths</i> [maʊðz] <i>truth</i> [tru:θ] – <i>truths</i> [tru:ðz]	<i>birth - births</i> [bɜ:θ] – [bɜ:θs]

II. General rule exceptions

1	Nouns ending in -y , change -y into i and add -es , if there is a consonant before -y .	
1)	consonant + y + s = ies	<i>baby - babies, cry - cries, army - armies;</i>
2)	vowel + y + s = ys	<i>day - days; boy - boys</i>

3)	-y never changes in proper names	<i>Mary – Marys</i> <i>There were two Marys at the party.</i>
2	nouns ending in -o	
1)	nouns ending in a <u>consonant</u> + o add -es	<i>echoes, heroes, tomatoes, Negroes</i>
2)	nouns ending in a <u>vowel</u> + o add -s	<i>radios, videos, kangaroos</i>
3)	short forms and Italian musical terms add -s	<i>photos (photographs), kilos (kilograms); piano - pianos</i>
4)	there are nouns which have two plural forms	<i>buffalos – buffaloes, mosquitos – mosquitoes, tornados – tornadoes, volcanos – volcanoes, zeros – zeroes etc.</i>
3	nouns ending in -f / -fe	
1)	some nouns ending in -f / -fe end in -ves in the plural	<i>calf – calves, elf – elves, half – halves, knife – knives, leaf – leaves, life – lives, loaf – loaves, shelf – shelves, thief – thieves, wife – wives, wolf – wolves;</i>
2)	there are nouns with two plural forms	<i>scarf – scarfs / scarves; dwarf – dwarfs/ dwarves;</i>
4	Irregular nouns	
1)	change the root vowel or add -en	<i>man – men, woman – women, goose – geese, foot – feet, tooth – teeth, mouse – mice, louse – lice; child – children, ox – oxen;</i>
2)	the word people can mean «люди» and «народ»	person (человек) – people (люди) people (народ) – peoples (народы)
5	In Greek and Latin nouns	
1)	-us changes into -i	<i>alveolus – alveoli, nucleus – nuclei,</i> [æ'l'vɪələs] - [æ'l'vɪələɪ], [ˈnju:klɪəs] - [ˈnju:klɪaɪ]
2)	-is changes into -es	<i>analysis – analyses, crisis – crises, thesis – theses</i> [ə'næləsis] - [ə'næləsi:z], [ˈkraɪsɪs] - [ˈkraɪsi:z], [ˈθi:sis] - [ˈθi:si:z]
3)	-um / -on change into -a	<i>datum – data, medium – media (mass media), phenomenon – phenomena</i> [ˈdeɪtəm] - [ˈdeɪtə], [ˈmi:diəm] - [ˈmi:diə], [fɪ'nɒmɪnən] - [fɪ'nɒmɪnə]

III. Compound nouns can be spelled as

one word: *headache*; one word with a hyphen: *forget-me-not*; separate words: *post office*.

1	If a compound noun consists of two nouns	
1)	only the final element is plural.	<i>bookcases, mouse-traps postman – postmen</i>

2)	If simple nouns end in– <i>man</i> , they add -s:	<i>German – Germans; Roman – Romans</i>
3)	If the first element is <i>man</i> (meaning <i>мужчина</i>) or <i>woman</i> (= <i>женщина</i>), we change both nouns .	<i>manservant – menservants</i> <i>woman driver – women drivers</i>
4)	If <i>man</i> means <i>человек</i> , it remains singular	<i>man-eaters</i>
2	If a compound noun consists of an adjective and a noun , we change the noun	<i>gentleman – gentlemen</i>
3	If a compound noun consists of a noun and a preposition or a noun, preposition and another noun , we change the first noun	<i>looker-on – lookers-on</i> <i>passer-by – passers-by</i> <i>mother-in-law – mothers-in-law</i>
4	when there is no noun element in a compound noun the final element takes the plural form	<i>grown-ups</i> <i>forget-me-nots</i> <i>merry-go-rounds</i>

IV. Uncountable nouns different to Russian ones

№	word	translation	examples
1	advice	совет – советы	<i>This is bad advice.</i> <i>He gave me a good piece of advice</i>
2	permission	разрешение - разрешения	<i>He got permission.</i>
3	information	информация / сведения	<i>I want information.</i>
4	knowledge	знание – знания	<i>Their knowledge is good.</i>
5	luck	удача – удачи	<i>What luck!</i>
6	progress	успех – успехи	<i>Their progress is great.</i>
7	travel	путешествие – путешествия	<i>There is a lot of travel in her life.</i>
8	money	деньги	<i>Where is the money? – It is in the safe</i>
9	hair	волосы	<i>Her hair is dark. It's long and beautiful.</i>
	a hair – hairs	волос / волосок – волоски	<i>There's a hair on the plate!</i> <i>There are some dark hairs in the hairbrush.</i>
10	work	работа	<i>It's good work. He has homework every day.</i>
	works	произведения, письменные работы;	<i>The works of Shakespeare are on this shelf.</i> <i>Your time is up. Hand in your works, please.</i>
	a job – jobs	работа – работы	<i>It's a good job. He's looking for a job.</i>

Uncountable nouns ending in -s

№	nouns	translation	examples
1	news	новость – новости	<i>This is bad news. This is a bad piece of news</i> <i>I have two items (pieces) of news – a good one and a bad one.</i>

2	ending in – <i>ics</i> <i>gymnastics, politics, mathematics, economics, phonetics etc.</i>	существительные, оканчивающиеся на <i>-ика</i>	<i>Mathematics is a difficult subject.</i>
---	---	--	--

V. Other nouns different to Russian

№	words	difference	examples	translation
1	<i>sheep, deer, swine, fish</i>	don't change in the plural	<i>There are two sheep in the yard. We caught five fish.</i>	Две овечки во дворе. Мы поймали 5 рыбок.
2	garments consisting of two parts	only have a plural form	<i>Where are my shorts? Your pyjamas are here.</i>	Где мои шорты? Твоя пижама здесь. (= Твои пижамы здесь)
3	devices and instruments consisting of two parts	only have a plural form	<i>There are scissors on the desk. These are binoculars.</i>	Ножницы лежат на столе. Это бинокль. (= Это бинокли.)
4	<i>clothes</i> <i>looks</i> (наружность) <i>stairs</i> (лестница) <i>wages</i>	only have a plural form	<i>Where are your clothes? They are in the suitcase. His wages are high.</i>	Где твоя одежда? Она в чемодане. Его зарплата большая.
5	<i>means</i> <i>series</i> <i>species</i>	can be used both in the singular and in the plural	<i>a means of transport – many means of transport one TV series – two TV series; one species – twenty species;</i>	средство - средства сериал – сериалы биологический вид – биологические виды
6	<i>watch / watches</i> <i>clock / clocks</i>	have both plural and single forms	<i>Your watch is slow. It is slow.</i>	Твои часы отстают. Они отстают.

VI. Groups of words followed by the predicate in the singular

Word combinations denoting **time, distance, money, food** meaning “**a whole amount**”.

*Two weeks **is** a short time. Ten miles **is** a long way to ride. 5000 dollars **is** a big sum for him.
Bacon and eggs **is** to follow. (as one dish)*

2. When two subjects are connected with **neither ...nor** (ни...ни) and the latter is singular.

*Neither my relatives nor **Jack** is present. **But:** Neither Jack nor my relatives are present.*

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Write the nouns in the plural and divide them into 3 groups according to the pronunciation of the ending.

pet, cake, bag, shoe, wish, toy, desk, bath, month, chap, garage, kiss, rose, kid, bus, bush, mouth, roof, watch, bite, play, moth, booth, cup, lab, buzz, ski, sky, umbrella;

[s]:.....

[z]:.....

[ɪz]:.....

Ex. 2. Write the nouns in the plural.

potato, hero, zoo, soprano, kilo, video, buffalo, solo, Negro, volcano, piano, kangaroo, mosquito, motto, photo, radio, echo, commando.

Ex. 3. Write the nouns in the plural.

safe, wife, elf, scarf, life, belief, handkerchief, thief, chief, wharf, dwarf, leaf, loaf, shelf, cliff, kerchief, self, hoof, roof, wolf, cuff, calf, half.

Ex. 4. Fill in 'is' or 'are'.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. There a lot of travel in her life | 9. All his money in the bank. |
| 2. Their progress of English great. | 10. His advice always good. |
| 3. All the town police here. | 11. All the cattle in the field. |
| 4. The mice in the house. | 12. There a lot of deer here. |
| 5. All the fish in the fridge. | 13. Their knowledge deep. |
| 6. There a lot of furniture here. | 14. Where all our luggage? |
| 7. There a lot of people here. | 15. Your feet wet. |
| 8. There a lot of peoples in the world. | 16. What the news? |

Ex. 5. Write the nouns in the plural.

- | | | | | | |
|----------|------------|------------|--------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. text | 11. badge | 21. Negro | 31. wharf | 41. thief | 51. fireman |
| 2. hero | 12. money | 22. tooth | 32. child | 42. motto | 52. German |
| 3. cliff | 13. trout | 23. echo | 33. salmon | 43. loaf | 53. green-fly |
| 4. lady | 14. wife | 24. story | 34. leaf | 44. study | 54. take-off |
| 5. basis | 15. piggy | 25. storey | 35. safe | 45. knife | 55. passer-by |
| 6. man | 16. chief | 26. shelf | 36. mouse | 46. hoof | 56. lady-pilot |
| 7. radio | 17. copy | 27. sheaf | 37. baby | 47. city | 57. fisherman |
| 8. sheep | 18. Betty | 28. piano | 38. kiss | 48. commando | 58. make-up |
| 9. shoe | 19. hair | 29. joy | 39. progress | 49. medium | 59. mouse-trap |
| 10. bush | 20. potato | 30. louse | 40. datum | 50. idea | 60. man-cook |

Ex. 6. Write the nouns in the plural.

- | | | | | |
|------------|-----------|-------------|---------------|--------------------|
| 1. zoo | 11. folio | 21. woman | 31. Kitty | 41. forget-me-not |
| 2. goose | 12. index | 22. news | 32. enemy | 42. tooth-brush |
| 3. deer | 13. watch | 23. photo | 33. valley | 43. grown-up |
| 4. crisis | 14. swine | 24. advice | 34. belief | 44. homework |
| 5. ox | 15. pig | 25. cloth | 35. wolf | 45. handkerchief |
| 6. buffalo | 16. foot | 26. kilo | 36. alveolus | 46. man-servant |
| 7. life | 17. boot | 27. brother | 37. Roman | 47. man-hunter |
| 8. fish | 18. scarf | 28. tomato | 38. genius | 48. merry-go-round |
| 9. play | 19. calf | 29. truth | 39. muff | 49. mother-in-law |
| 10. roof | 20. half | 30. cherry | 40. knowledge | 50. man-of-war |

Ex. 7. Write the sentences in the plural.

1. This is a proof. 2. The stitch is small. 3. He caught a fish. 4. That berry is sour. 5. This pocket knife is his. 6. The room has no window. 7. There is a wall here. 8. He is an editor-in-chief of this newspaper. 9. The library is closed. 10. The vase is made of glass. 11. Let's raise a glass to your health. 12. She is my sister-in-law. 13. That dress is too short. 14. The crisis is over. 15. That country is a former British colony. 16. His journey was hard. 17. This woman is a

housewife. 18. The deer is in the wood. 19. He is a statesman. 20. Let's analyze this phenomenon. 21. Look at this datum. 22. She'd like to go to a party. 23. The money is on the shelf. 24. I don't like sweet wine. 25. My toe hurts. 26. We have no mouse. 27. Your formula is wrong. 28. Is your baby asleep? 29. He isn't a thief. 30. I prefer a Swiss watch to a Japanese one. 31. Eat a cheese sandwich. 32. Don't open your mouth.

Ex. 8. Write in English.

1. Все ваши деньги здесь. 2. Её волосы густые и тёмные. 3. У него здоровые зубы. 4. Это дорогие джинсы. 5. Это ваши гуси? 6. У неё устали ноги. 7. Какие новости? 8. Полиция уже в доме. 9. Физика – естественная наука. 10. Эти данные неправильные. 11. Овцы во дворе. 12. В этих мышеловках нет мышей. 13. Где ножницы? – Они на столе. 14. Где мои новые часы? – Они здесь. 15. Где её одежда? – Она на полках. 16. Это твои очки? 17. Это плохие новости. 18. Твоя пижама на кровати. 19. Положи сливки в кофе. 20. У неё большая зарплата? 21. Этот сериал мне не понравился. 22. Какая удача! 23. Их знания не достаточны. 24. Ваши успехи удивительны. 25. Поставьте язык на альвеолы.

Ex. 9. Write in English.

1. Он поймал три рыбки. 2. Сколько времени? – У меня нет часов. Давай спросим у прохожих. 3. Старики, женщины и дети покинули здание. 4. Я ищу работу. 5. 20 лет – большой срок. 6. Где полиция? 7. Эта пижама слишком короткая. 8. Мыши – тоже домашние животные. 9. Он высокий, у него светлые волосы и голубые глаза. 10. В Англии почтальоны носят форму. 11. В комнате мало мебели. 12. Деньги не делают его счастливым. 13. Никто не может объяснить эти явления. 14. Все люди разные. 15. Посмотри на эти бабочки. 16. У них есть коровы, овцы и гуси, не так ли? 17. В этом пруду много рыбы. 18. Самолет – это самое быстрое транспортное средство. 19. Принеси бинокль и дай его мне, пожалуйста. 20. Его фотографии на этих полках. 21. Купи два килограмма вишни. 22. Откройте рот и покажите зубы. 23. Она разрежала яблоко на две половинки. 24. Эти диссертации очень интересные. 25. Это очень редкий вид горных растений. 26. У них в доме два пианино. 27. Его советы всегда хорошие. 28. Среди деревьев мы увидели трёх оленей. 29. Какая у него зарплата? 30. Ваши часы спешат.

Ex. 10. Write in English.

1. Я люблю фрукты. 2. Его волосы темные и короткие. 3. Купи три килограмма помидоров и две булки хлеба. 4. Это наши герои. 5. Где мои носовые платки? 6. Леди и джентльмены! Давайте начнем нашу встречу. 7. Это волки? 8. Где наши гуси? 9. Это хорошие новости. 10. Ее одежда здесь. 11. Не забывай чистить зубы каждый день. 12. Математика – точная наука. 13. Где деньги? – Они в кошельке. 14. Эти синие джинсы дешевле тех черных. 15. Давайте посмотрим эти видеофильмы. 16. Они не гномы, а эльфы. 17. Это ваши шарфы, не так ли? 18. Это последняя серия? 19. Ножницы на столе. 20. Это негры? 21. Это их жены? 22. Эти брюки длиннее тех. 23. Покажи свои фотографии. 24. Посмотри на часы. Мы опаздываем. 25. Где мои очки? 26. Полиция уже внутри. 27. Зубные щетки на полках. 28. Бумаги в сейфах. 29. Листья уже зеленые. 30. Ножи здесь. 31. Они пожарные, не так ли? 32. Их зарплата большая. 33. Фонетика важна для изучения языка. 34. Жизнь коротка: улыбайтесь, пока у вас еще есть зубы!

3. THE NUMERAL

I. CARDINAL NUMERALS answer the question *How many?*

1) Cardinals 13–19 end in 'teen':

seven – seventeen; three – thirteen; five – fifteen.

2) Tens (20, 30, 40 etc.) end in *-ty*:

two – twenty; three – thirty; four – forty; eight – eighty.

3) Compound cardinals (25, 69, 73) have a **hyphen**:
twenty-five, sixty-nine, seventy-three.

4) The cardinals **dozen; 100; 1,000; 1,000,000**
~ are always used with **a** or **one** in the singular:
a dozen, a hundred, one thousand, a million.

~ don't change in the plural after other numerals:

two dozen eggs, nine hundred pages, two thousand pounds, six million people.

But: *dozens of copies, hundreds of pictures, thousands of people, millions of stars.*

5) We pronounce '**and**' in compound numerals before tens; if there are no tens, before ones.
417 – four hundred and seventeen 3,061 – three thousand and sixty-one 506 – five hundred and six

6) Years are pronounced like this: if there are less than four figures in a year, it's pronounced as a usual numeral: *648 – six hundred and forty-eight.*

The rest are pronounced as two numbers, 0 is pronounced like letter '**o**', 00 as *hundred*.

1147 – eleven forty-seven

1905 – nineteen o five

1791 – seventeen ninety-one

1800 – eighteen hundred

Exceptions:

*1000 – year one thousand, 2000 – year two thousand (the word year always stands first)
from 2001 ... to 2010 – two thousand and one ... two thousand and ten.*

Beginning with 2011 in two ways: *2014 – twenty fourteen / two thousand and fourteen.*

7) In telephone numbers every figure is pronounced separately, 0 is pronounced as the letter 'o':
350499 – three five o four nine nine / three five o four double nine

8) word combinations **house, room, page, group, bus ... + number** don't have an article:

Page 21 – Open your books at page twenty-one.

Room 213 – Where is room two-one-three

(in three-figure numbers each figure is pronounced separately)

Group 17 – This is group seventeen.

Note: The word **one** can be a numeral (один) and a pronoun used instead of a noun.
In the latter case it can have a plural form.

*There is **one** student in the room.*

*The blue dress is better than the red **one**. Look at the apples. I want these red **ones**.*

II. ORDINAL NUMERALS answer the question Which?

1) Most ordinals end in '**th**':

five – fifth, twelve – twelfth, eight – eighth, nine – ninth, twenty – twentieth ['twentiθ].

except: *one – first, two – second, three – third.*

2) Compound ordinals are formed like Russian ones:

32 – thirty-second; 246 – two hundred and forty-sixth.

3) We usually use **the** before ordinals: *the first flowers, the twenty-ninth day.*

4) The dates are written like this: 25 October (=25th October, October 25)

and are pronounced like this: *the twenty-fifth of October* or *October the twenty-fifth.*

III. NOTE

1) Fractions, powers and percent

10.5 – ten point five

$1\frac{3}{4}$ – one and three fourths/quarters

$\frac{7}{13}$ – seven thirteenths /
seven over thirteen

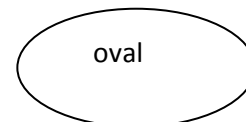
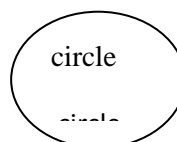
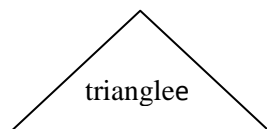
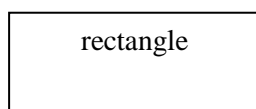
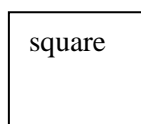
8^2 – eight squared

8^3 – eight cubed

8^4 – eight to power of four

28% – twenty-eight per cent

2) Geometrical figures



Corresponding adjectives:

square, rectangular, triangular, circular (=round), oval.

Ex. 1. Read in English.

- 1) 24; 13; 30; 40; 14; 73; 6,000; 405; the 60th; the 83d; 887; 345; 926; 7,886; 34,678; 4,093,558; 6,711;
- 2) года: 763, 1700, 1803, 1262, 1947, 2000, 2005, 2009.

Ex. 2. Pronounce in English using cardinal numerals.

Семнадцатый текст, третье примечание, шестнадцатый трамвай, шестьдесят шестая квартира, тридцать первая комната, девятнадцатое упражнение, двадцать третий автобус, пятьдесят четвёртая страница, пятое правило, одиннадцатый дом, двенадцатый троллейбус, вторая мировая война, десятое предложение, восемнадцатая картинка.

Ex. 3. Translate into English.

1. Три собаки, четырнадцать студентов, четыре кошки, тридцать страниц, двадцать две тетради, семь тысяч людей, сто двадцать семь букв, сорок шесть дней, тысячи детей, сотни книг, пять ножниц, тринадцать незабудок, миллионы копий, девять лилий, девятнадцать фотографий, два полицейских, пятнадцать килограммов, восемь упражнений.

2. Первое свидание, вторая жена, третье письмо, четвёртый концерт, шестая часть, пятый урок, седьмой вопрос, девятый игрок, восьмая неделя, одиннадцатый месяц, десятый раз, двенадцатый час, двадцать третий день, семидесятый год.

Ex. 4. Write in words.

1) This is room 306. 2) He was born on 27 June 1984. 3) Open your books at page 44. 4) Exercise 92 is on page 19. 5) Joanne is 21. 6) Take bus 64. 7) 8 March is a holiday in our country. 8) December is the 12th month of the year. 9) Tomorrow is his 30th birthday.

Ex. 5. Fill in suitable adjectives.

1. The dinner-table is
2. I want an mirror in my room.
3. The coat-hanger is
4. The reading room of the British museum is
5. They have a swimming-pool.

Ex. 6. Do the sums and read them.

Model:

$4 + 1 = 5$ *Four plus one is five.*

$5 - 1 = 4$ *Five minus one is four.*

$4 \times 5 = 20$ *Four times five is twenty.*

$20 : 5 = 4$ *Twenty divided by five is four.*

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|-------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1) $213 + 542 =$ | 4) $1800 : 9 =$ | 7) $22 \cdot 3 =$ | 10) $7^2 - 3^3 =$ |
| 2) $2587 - 476 =$ | 5) $56 + 47 =$ | 8) $56 : 8 =$ | 11) $6 \frac{3}{4} + 3 \frac{1}{4} =$ |
| 3) $5 \cdot 15 =$ | 6) $263 - 13 =$ | 9) $2.5 + 1.5 =$ | 12) $100\% : 4 =$ |

Ex. 7. Use the correct form of the word in brackets.

1. It was my (one) visit to New York. 2. This is page twelve. Now turn the page and look at the picture on page (three). 3. Mr Green is her (three) husband. 4. I am telling you for the (hundred) time – go away. 5. He was born on the (twenty-five) of May. 6. These light blue jeans are more expensive than the dark blue (one). 7. There are (hundred) of people here. 8. What will you give her for the (eight) of March? 9. December is the (twelve) month of the year. 10. She is coming of age. She will be (eight) next month. 11. He must be (thousand) of miles away now. 12. It's the (two) time I've lost my way in this town. 13. Who are these people? – What people? The (one) near the window? 14. You can see (million) of stars at night. 15. Independence Day is celebrated on the (four) of July. 16. Have you seen the film *The (Six) Sense*?

Ex. 8. Answer the questions.

1. When were you born? 2. What is your address? 3. What is your telephone number? 4. What group do you study in? 5. How many students are there in your group? 6. How many pupils were there in your class at school? 7. How many classes do you have a week? 8. What rooms do you have classes in? 9. What is the number of this page?

4. PRONOUNS

4. 1. PERSONAL, POSSESSIVE, REFLEXIVE

personal pronouns		possessive pronouns		reflexive pronouns
nominative	objective	before nouns	absolute (without nouns)	
I (я)	me (меня, мне)	my (мой)	mine (мой)	<i>myself</i>
he (он)	him (его, ему)	his (его)	his (его)	<i>himself</i>
she (она)	her (её, ей)	her (её)	hers (её)	<i>herself</i>
it (он, она, оно)	it (этого, этому)	its (его, её)	its (его, её)	<i>itself</i>
we (мы)	us (нас, нам)	our (наш)	ours (наш)	<i>ourselves</i>
you (вы/ ты)	you (вас, вам)	your (ваш)	yours (ваш)	<i>yourself</i> <i>yourselves</i>
they (они)	them (их, им)	their (их)	theirs (их)	<i>themselves</i>

Notes:

1. We use **it** for things, and for animals and babies if we don't know their sex.

*The book is on the desk. You may take **it**. Do they have a dog? Is **it** big?*

2. We use objective pronouns after **to be, than, as**.

*Who's there? – It's **me**, Alice. His brother is taller **than him**. He is as kind **as her**.*

3. Possessive pronouns go before nouns; **absolute forms stand on their own**:

*This is **my** book. This book is **mine**. This is **his** passport. Where is **hers**?*

*He is **our** friend. He is a friend of **ours**. (=He is one of our friends)*

*The cat drank **its** milk.*

But: It's a cat. (=It is a cat.) It's been good. (=It has been good)

4. Reflexive pronouns are used after certain verbs (*blame, burn, cut, dry, enjoy, hurt, introduce, etc.*) when the subject and the object are the same. They are translated into Russian by *себя* or the verb ending - *ся*. *We enjoyed ourselves at the party. You don't blame yourself, do you? He can't look after himself. Let me introduce myself.* But: *Let me introduce my friend.*

5. Remember set expressions with pronouns:

by oneself, on one's own. (=один) *He lives by himself / on his own. I live by myself / on my own. Behave yourself! Enjoy yourself! Help yourself. Make yourself at home.*

6. We don't normally use reflexive pronouns after *complain, concentrate, dress, feel, meet, relax, wash, shave, afford etc.*

He got up, washed, shaved, dressed and left his home. Can't you concentrate? I feel better today.

But: *I don't feel myself today.* (= не по себе, сам не свой).

You don't look yourself today. (= сама на себя не похожа)).

7. Reflexive pronouns can be used to emphasize the noun, or the fact that one person, not another, performs an action. They also mean "without help".

Jake himself interviewed this actor. She fixed the bike herself. The child can dress himself.

JAZZ CHANTS

Selfish

'This is \ mine
 \ That's yours
 'Don't \ touch \ mine
 'Get your \ own
 'This is \ mine
 \ That's yours
 'This is \ mine
 \ That's yours
 'This is \ mine
 \ That's yours (3)
 \ Hey, 'what are you \ doing?
 'What are you 'doing with \ that?
 \ That's \ mine
 \ Hey, 'what are you \ doing?
 'What are you 'doing with \ that?
 \ That's \ his
 \ Hey, 'what are you \ doing?
 'What are you 'doing with \ that?
 \ That's \ hers
 'What's 'mine is \ mine
 'What's 'yours is \ yours
 'What's 'his is \ his
 'What's 'hers is \ hers
 'What's 'ours is \ ours
 'What's 'theirs is \ theirs

Taking Credit

'Whose 'book is \ this?
 It's \ mine! It's \ mine!
 'Are you \ sure it's not his?
 'No, \ no, it's \ mine
 'Whose 'work is \ this, this \ beautiful work?
 It's \ mine! It's \ mine! It's \ mine! It's \ mine!
 'Whose 'work is \ this, this 'awful \ work?
 It's \ his! It's \ his! It's \ his! It's \ his!
 'Are you \ sure it's .not .yours?
 Of \ course, it's not mine
 It's \ certainly not mine
 'Not \ mine! 'Not \ mine!
 \ Not yours?
 'Not \ mine
 'Are you \ sure?
 'I am \ sure
 It's \ his?
 It's \ his
 \ Not yours?
 'Not \ mine



Ex. 1. Choose the correct form.

1. This doesn't look like (my, mine) book, it must be (your, yours). 2. He's left (him, his) corrector at home, could she lend him (her, hers)? 3. They are friends of (our, ours), aren't they? 4. (It's, Its) (their, theirs) dog. (It's, its) name is Bingo. 5. Mind (your, yours) own business and I'll mind (my, mine). 6. (Our, Ours) is the prettiest house in the street. 7. (Her, Hers) essay is far

better than (your, yours). 8. Is this a relative of (her, hers)? 9. I like neither (he, him) nor (his, him) wife. 10. Whose work is this? – It's (her, hers) 11. Who told you that? – Not (they, them) 12. Who's there? – It's (we, us). 13. He gently put (his, him) hand on (her, hers) to comfort (her, hers). 14. (My, Mine) was the best test. – (Its, It's) not true. 15. (My, Mine) life, (my, mine) choices, (my, mine) mistakes, (my, mine) lessons – not (your, yours) business.

Ex. 2. Say the same using absolute possessive pronouns.

Model: *She owns that car. - That car is hers.*

1. This cat belongs to us. 2. He is one of their schoolmates. 3. The black umbrella doesn't belong to me. 4. Do these clothes belong to you or to her? 5. I am one of your colleagues. 6. We are your ex-students. 7. It was all my pleasure.

Ex. 3. Write in English.

1. Где моя пижама? 2. Эта одежда её? 3. Это не наши гуси. 4. Вот деньги. Они твои. 5. Чей это кот? Как его зовут? 6. Это не он, и это не его машина. 7. Это один из наших родственников. 8. Это моя жизнь. 9. – Кто там? – Это я, Джон. 10. Ты видишь их? А их детей? 11. Этот словарь твой или его? – Он мой. 12. Не берите её ручку, она сломана. 13. Где наши ножницы? – Они на столе. Возьми их и принеси нам. 14. Спроси его или его брата. 15. Она ходит гулять со своей собакой. 16. Моя мама моложе твоей. 17. Не бери его машину, у неё тормоза не в порядке. 18. Не разговаривай с ними и не отвечай на их вопросы.

4. 2. RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS

We generally use reciprocal pronouns **each other** to mean only two; and we use **one another** to mean two or more.

Tom and Ann looked at each other /one another. (=Tom looked at Ann, Ann looked at Tom.)

Compare:

Tom and Ann looked at themselves in the mirror. (=Tom looked at Tom, Ann looked at Ann.)

When Mr Jones finished speaking, the people in the crowd looked at one another.

Ex. 4. Fill in suitable pronouns where necessary.

1. How do you feel today? 2. The people in the room looked at 3. Don't blame It's not fault 4. We enjoyed the party very much. 5. We enjoyed at the party. 6. Lucy and Frank don't like They quarrel all the time. 7. Don't try to look like someone else. Be! 8. Just wash and dress, the breakfast is ready. 9. Mummy, look! I've washed and dressed 10. They've always lived by 11. Do you like living onown? 12. Don't let him introduce Let me introduce to your guests. 13. – I cut – Does it hurt.....? 14. Did he hurt – Yes, he cutfinger. 15. Will she take children with? 16. He washedand dried with the towel. 17. How long have you and Tom known? 18. Who helped you with the bike? – No one. I've repaired it 19. You concentrate too much. Relax and try again. 20. I'm afraid I can't affordthis dress. It's too expensive. 21. What happened to him? – He killed 22. She never complains about her life. 23. Dorian came to the mirror and looked at 24. Jill and Marcia looked at and laughed 25. What's up? She doesn't look today.

4. 3. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

this (these), that (those), such, (the) same.

singular	plural
----------	--------

this	этом, эта	these	эти
that	там, та	those	те

1. **This** и **these** are used to introduce somebody or introduce oneself on the phone; We use **that** and **those** on the phone to ask whom we are talking to.
Hello. This is Ann. Who is that speaking? Is that Bill?

2. **This** and **these** can be associated with present or future situations, while **that** and **those** often refer to the past.

This will be interesting. That was nice.

This is what he said, "It's not my fault." // "It's not my fault", that is what he said.

3. **Such a(n) + noun** sounds quite formal;

He is too clever to make such a mistake.

in everyday speech we use **any such; that kind of; like that**.

He is too clever to make any such mistake. He is too clever to make that kind of mistake.

He is too clever to make a mistake like that.

4. **Learn some fixed expressions with demonstrative pronouns.**

That's it. – *Хватит./ Достаточно.*

That's just it! – *Вот именно! / В этом все и дело!*

This is it. – *Вот и всё.*

And that's that – *Решено. / И точка.*

Same with me. – *Я тоже.*

The same to you. – *Вас также.*

Same time, same place. – *В то же время, на том же месте.*

We usually use **same** with the definite article: *It's **the same** place.*

Ex. 5. Fill in demonstrative pronouns.

1. Meg, is my sister Janet. – Pleased to meet you, Janet.
2. I won the competition! – 's great!
3. Can you see bird on the tree? It's an owl.
4. are my new shoes. Do you like them?
5. Could you give me book on the shelf behind you, please?
6. Good morning, is Paul Hogan with the latest news.
7. I love French comedies. – with me.
8. people over there must be waiting for the bus.
9. All right. 's it. Don't cry.
10. Happy New Year! – The to you!
11. Are you going anywhere weekend? – No, why?
12. I told him not to come. – Why did you do?!
13. Is she coming? – 's just it! She hasn't decided yet!
14. How could you say a thing like?!
15. is it. I must be leaving.
16. Do you remember 1998? – Yes, was the year I married Susan.
17. I don't want to wait any more. Give me my money back and 's
18. flowers are for you. – Thanks a lot!
19. Hello! is Jim Spike. Who's, please?
20. We are getting married. – 's fantastic!
21. Why don't we get together tonight? – OK, time, place.
22. You should talk to her about it. – No way. Been there, done

4. 4. DEFINING PRONOUNS

4. 4. 1. *All, every, everybody, everyone, everything, each*

№	pronouns	translation	use	examples
In affirmative sentences				
1	all	все, вся, весь, всё	before any nouns	All <u>students</u> take exams. She read all the <u>book</u> . He is here all the <u>time</u> . We are all here. All of us are here.
2	a, the, my + whole	вся, весь, всё целый, целое	before countable nouns in the singular	She ate the whole cake. He's been away for a whole month.
3	everybody everyone everything	все всё	without a noun	Everyone is here Everybody is tired. Everything he said is true.
4	every	каждый вообще каждый /каждые (как часто?)	before a noun	Every student takes exams. The bus runs every ten minutes.
5	each	каждый из двух или из ограниченного числа	with or without a noun	There are 10 students and each (student) has a book.

Fixed expressions: All in all / On the whole = В целом.

Ex. 6. Fill in each or every.

1. time I call you, you are not at home. 2. The Olympic Games are held four years. 3. seat in the classroom was taken. 4. Sandra and I had 10 dollars 5. Suzie comes here weekend. 6. All the students came to the library and was given a textbook. 7. It was a great film. I enjoyed minute of it. 8. There were four players at the table and player had 4 cards. 9. There is a train to London hour. 10. He read book in this bookcase. 11. There is a building on side of this square. 12. Answer 5 questions. Begin your answer to question on a separate sheet of paper. 13. I understood what they were talking about, but I couldn't hear word. 14. There are eight flats in the building and flat has a balcony. 15. They pay him four weeks.

Ex. 7. Fill in all, whole, everyone, everything.

1. My life passed in my mind's eye. 2. is already planned. 3. I have been dreaming about it my life. 4. The family enjoyed the skiing holiday. was happy. 5. On the, I liked your essay. 6. He answered the questions correctly. 7. Jack did the test by himself. 8. She says is OK. 9. in you are just another brick in the wall. 10. Why is looking at us? 11. her children are very stubborn. 12. He read for his History exam the night. 13. Of my relatives I love Uncle John the best.

4. 4. 2. Both, either, neither

№	pronoun	translation	use	examples
---	---------	-------------	-----	----------

1	both	оба, обе	with or without a noun only in affirmatives	Both kids live in London. Both (of) my sons are here. They are both here. Both of them are here.
2	both ... and	и ... и	only in affirmatives	Both John and Mary are at work
3	either	любой из двух и тот и другой	in affirmatives	There are two roads. You may take either of them.
4	either ... or	или ... или, либо ... либо	in affirmatives	He is either at home or at work.
5	neither	ни один из двух ни тот, ни другой	in negatives	Neither of them is here. Neither book is interesting.
6	neither ... nor either ... or	ни ... ни	in negatives	Neither my kids nor I am tired. Neither I nor my kids are tired. He has neither tea nor coffee He never has either tea or coffee

Ex. 8. Add both or all.

1. They know it. 2. We are happy. 3. My sisters were present. 4. His relatives went away. 5. My brother and I are fond of this kind of music. 6. Her friends have come. 7. You are sure to like it. 8. They have breakfast in bed. 9. We like it.

Ex. 9. Fill in both, either or neither.

1. Is Charles at the theatre or at the party? – He is at home. He has a cold. 2. Do you want beer or wine? I really don't mind. 3. Would you like tea or coffee? I'd rather have a glass of juice. 4. Did you see the New Year in with your family or friends? First I sat at table with my family, then I went to have fun with my friends. 5. Is his birthday on the 1st or 2nd of December? It's on the 30th of November.

Ex. 10. Make sentences with both ... and, either ... or, neither ... nor

1. He doesn't speak Chinese. His brother doesn't speak it as well. 2. The party was boring. It was long too. 3. I think her father was a fireman. Or, maybe, he was a postman. I can't remember. 4. Ricky is good at tennis. So is his girlfriend. 5. Philip didn't take a taxi and he didn't take a bus. He went on foot. 6. We can leave now or we can stay another week. 7. This actor is Italian, I guess. But he may be Spanish too. I'm not sure. 8. Jim hasn't got a villa by the sea. Same with me. 9. Why doesn't he go somewhere to have a rest? He's got time and he's got money for it. 10. We may dine in. We may go out. It's up to you.

Ex. 11. Fill in the blanks with both ... and, either ... or, neither ... nor.

1. Roger David has been to Greece before. It's their first visit there. 2. He had a pen a pencil, so he couldn't write. 3. he you must go there right now. Don't keep them waiting. 4. my brother I can swim very well. We often swim long distances together. 5. She likes cinema television. She is fond of reading. 6. We were tired hungry after the trip, so we ate and went to bed at once. 7. come in go out. Don't stand in the doorway. 8. Mary Jessica have fair hair like their mother. She was a pretty blonde. 9. She never studied German French. 10. her friends she is fond of skating. They prefer skiing.

4. 4. 3. Other, another

№	pronoun	use	translation	examples
---	---------	-----	-------------	----------

1.	another	before a noun or without it	какой-то другой, ещё один	Let's watch another (film). Let's ask another (student)
2.	other	before a noun	какие-то другие	Let's watch other films. Let's ask other students.
	others	without a noun		Let's see others. Let's ask others.
3.	the other	before a noun or without it	тот другой та другая	I bought two books. One is here. Where is the other (book)?
		before a noun	те другие	I bought three books. One is here. Where are the other books?
	the others	without a noun	те другие	There are 12 students in your group. Only 9 are present today. Where are the others?

Note: Learn some fixed expressions with pronouns.

Some other time. = Как-нибудь в другой раз

every other day = через день (как часто?) He comes here every other day.

the other day = на днях (в прошлом) I saw him the other day.

one of these days = на днях (в будущем) I'll see him one of these days.

Ex. 12. Fill in another, other, others, the other, the others.

1. There were a lot of people in the room. Some were dancing, were just watching them. 2. My bag is old. I'd like to buy 3. Let's meet some time. 4. Only ten students are present today. Where are? 5. She has two houses. One is in town and is in the country. 6. What books by this writer have you read in English? 7. He goes to the gym every day. 8. Some people like parties, noise and crowds, prefer a quiet evening at home. 9. I met himday on my way home. 10. Will you have cup of tea? 11. I've bought two ice-creams. One is for me, and is for you. 12. Every student had problems with grammar. 13. Every new day is chance to change your life.

4. 5. INDEFINITE AND NEGATIVE PRONOUNS

in affirmatives	in questions	in negatives	in negatives	in any
some <i>некоторые, какие-нибудь</i>	any <i>какие-нибудь, сколько-нибудь</i>	not ...any <i>нет</i>	no <i>нет</i>	every <i>каждый</i>
something <i>что-то что-нибудь</i>	anything <i>что-то что-нибудь</i>	not ... anything <i>ничего</i>	nothing <i>ничего</i>	everything <i>всё</i>
somebody someone <i>кто-то кто-нибудь</i>	anybody anyone <i>кто-то кто-нибудь</i>	not... anybody not...anyone <i>никто</i>	nobody no one none <i>никто, несколько</i>	everybody <i>все</i>
somewhere <i>где-то где-нибудь</i>	anywhere <i>где-то где-нибудь</i>	not... anywhere <i>нигде</i>	nowhere <i>нигде, никуда</i>	everywhere <i>везде</i>

№	We use some and its derivatives		№	We use any and its derivatives	
1	in affirmatives	<i>I want some advice. I want something.</i>	1	in negatives	<i>I don't want any advice. I don't want anything.</i>

2	in questions expecting a positive answer	<i>Do you have some ideas? Do you have something?</i>	2	in questions	<i>Is there any tea here? Is there anybody here?</i>
3	in requests and offers	<i>May I have some tea? Would you like something to eat?</i>	3	in if-clauses	<i>Buy some apples, if you see any.</i>
4	in the meaning <i>некоторый</i>	<i>Some people believe everything.</i>	4	in affirmatives in the meaning <i>любой</i> :	<i>He can take any book.</i>
5	in the meaning <i>несколько</i>	<i>I haven't seen him for some years.</i>			<i>He can do anything.</i>

Note

1. We may use **no** instead of **not any** or **not a/an**:

There aren't any ghosts in the castle. = There are no ghosts in the castle.

2. We use **no one**, **nobody**, **nothing** or **none of** as the negative of **all**:

All the students are ready. Nobody is ready. No one is ready. None of them are ready.

All this is true. None of it is true. Nothing is true.

3. We use **none** instead of **no** + noun:

*We have **no coffee**. What about a cup of coffee? - I'm afraid, we have **none**.*

*How many students of your group failed the exam? - **None**.*

4. We use the preposition **of**

№	after the words	before	when	examples
1	some, any, none, neither, either all, both	personal pronouns	always	some of it, neither of them all of you, both of us
2	some, any, none, neither, either	<i>the</i> , demonstrative and possessive pronouns	always	some of the books any of these people none of my friends
3	all, both	<i>the</i> , demonstrative and possessive pronouns	as an option	all (of) the students both (of) my sisters

5. We often use **one**, not to repeat a **countable** noun in the singular and in the plural.

№	position	use	examples
1	after adjectives	always	<i>Look at these apples. I'll take the green ones. I want this large one. I like these small ones.</i>
2	after which , this , that and superlative adjectives	sometimes	<i>There are two apples left on the plate. Which (one) would you like? This (one) or that (one)?</i>
3	after these and those	usually not	<i>I want these, I don't want those.</i>
4	after possessive pronouns	never	<i>My dog is more intelligent than yours. My dog is more intelligent than John's.</i>

Ex. 13. Fill in of where necessary.

1. I liked none these pictures. 2. Some people are afraid of dogs. 3. All my friends are here. 4. All us like jazz. 5. Both cafes are good. Neither them is

very expensive. 6. I tried two shops for the phone I wanted but neither had it. 7. Neither us is good at Maths. 8. All children like to play. 9. Some the children went home. 10. Both ... his cars are fast. 11. Neither my parents can speak English.

Ex. 14. Complete the sentences.

1. Nobody absent, they? 2. Everyone here. 3. Neither my friends nor I fond of bowling. 4. Neither of us this sum of money. 5. any of you like action films? 6. All the guests at table already. 7. Everybody ready. 8. None of us busy tonight. 9. Both my parents and I at home next Sunday. 10. anybody have news?

Ex. 15. Fill in *some, any, no* or their derivatives.

1. I had small change, so I had to borrow 2. Would you like... to eat? 3. She was too sleepy to dohousework. 4. Can I have jam with my tea? 5. You can buy a plastic bag at shop. 6. Look!is following us. – Where? I can see 7. If wants to go now, they may. 8. It's all the same here. has changed. 9. There was in the room. I could hear the steps. But when I came upstairs I saw The room was empty. 10. news is good news. 11. If of you are tired, you may have rest. 12. You can exchange money at bank. 13. He was too busy to notice 14. Do of your friends like horror movies? -do. 15. can help us. We are lost. 16. I don't need advice. 17. people think it's boring to be alone. 18. He's lonely. He has friends here. 19. I want information, information you have. 20. Jake was upset aboutand refused to eat 21. thinks of changing the world, but thinks of changing himself.

Ex. 16. Make the sentences negative.

1. All the students are at their desks. 2. Both of them are pilots. 3. He is either 18 or 19. 4. Somebody is talking outside. 5. Some of us want to go to the club. 6. Everybody is well. 7. Something can be done. 8. I want everything. 9. He has some news. 10. Both men are old.

Ex. 17. Answer with one negative word.

1. What are you doing here? 2. How many mistakes have you made? 3. Is he a dentist or a surgeon? 4. Who is coming with you? 5. Where are they working now? 6. How many children do they have? 7. Was it July or June? 8. What have you seen there? 9. Who helped you with the job? 10. Do you have any time? 11. Who's there? 12. Where are you looking? 13. Which of the two films is a comedy? 14. Who is absent?

Ex. 18. Fill in *one* or *ones* where necessary.

1. No is perfect. 2. These cars are better than those 3. Who's that fat woman over there? – Which do you mean? The in the blue dress? – No, I mean that small with a funny big hat on her head. 4. Hello, this is Nick Spike. Who's that, please? 5. Which shoes did you buy? – The beige 6. There were two applicants for the job and the secretary gave a form to each 7. What kind of coffee would you like? Black or white ? 8. Every student takes exams. 9. Every student passed the exam. 10. Second-hand clothes are cheaper than new 11. He didn't buy all the films, he chose the most interesting 12. Each of us has a house in the country. 13. He is invited to a lot of parties and he goes to every 14. These oranges cost 25 pence each 15. They looked at another in surprise.

Ex. 19. Complete the sentences.

1. Mind the step. Don't hurt 2. He washed and dried on the towel. 3. She blames for what has happened. 4. He didn't do you any harm. You can't blame 5. Who are those people? They didn't introduce 6. When will you begin to dress? We are going out soon. 7. Let's concentrateand do this job by 8. Don't worry about her. She can take care of 9. Will you take your son with? 10. We want to relaxand enjoy 11. The knife is sharp. Don't cut 12. He concentratedon his thoughts and forgot to introduce 13. Though he felt bad, he managed to wash and dress by 14. We amused by watching the kitten play. 15. The guests were laughing – he amused by telling about his adventures abroad. 16. She relaxed and felt much better. 17. Don't complainIt's all your fault. 18. How do you feel?

Ex. 20. Translate into English.

1. Мой котенок маленький. 2. Этот щенок мой. 3. Это одна из ее сестер. 4. Это одна из наших коров. 5. Те волки старые. 6. У него ничего нет. 7. Тот жираф высокий. 8. Разрешите представиться. 9. Расслабьтесь и развлекайтесь. 10. Он бреется через день. 11. Пусть он сделает это сам. 12. Пусть ребенок умоется. 13. Оба они здесь.(2 в) 14. Обе бабочки красивые. 15. Оба мои брата юристы. 16. Оба переводчика не знают этого слова. 17. Здесь нет ни ласточек, ни воробьев. 18. В комнате или директор, или бухгалтер. 19. Ее отец – или хирург, или дантист. 20. И журналист, и фотограф здесь. 21. Все хорошо. 22. Все, что тебе надо сделать – покормить гусей. 23. Все готовы к уроку, не так ли? 24. Все мы в классе.

Ex. 21. Translate into English.

1. Никто из них не знает английского. 2. Каждый раз, когда я вижу её, она выглядит другой. 3. Кто-то звонил тебе вчера. 4. Никто не хотел быть первым. 5. Она танцует здесь каждый вечер. 6. Они оба не любят театр. 7. Он живет один. 8. Давай сходим туда как-нибудь в другой раз, ладно? 9. Сколько долларов у тебя осталось? – Нисколько. 10. Как ты себя чувствуешь сегодня? 11. Некоторые любят компании и веселье, другие предпочитают сидеть дома и бродить по интернету. 12. Кто-нибудь из вас сделал упражнение? 13. Я разговаривал с ним на днях. 14. Её зовут либо Мэри, либо Мэгги, я не помню. 15. Кто там? – Это я, Джон. 16. Каждый раз, когда я звоню им, никого нет дома. 17. Давай сходим туда на днях, ладно? 18. Мы оба не хотим идти на эту вечеринку. 19. У него уроки музыки через день. 20. Она сама на себя не похожа сегодня. 21. Никто из них не знает этого.

REVISION EXERCISES

Ex. I. Ask questions.

1.They have a parrot at home. (who, tag) 2. Her parents have got a big garden. (whose, who, what, yes/no, tag) 3. We have dinner at three. (who What, choice, tag)

Ex. II. Write the plural of the nouns.

dino (= dinosaur), carry-all, dwarf, lily, cobra, gadfly, bamboo, Jack-of-all-trades, reindeer, beast of prey, pansy, woman-hater, belief, thief, man cook, cockatoo, cypress, torpedo.

Ex. III. Translate into English

Архитектор, юрист, модельер, переводчик, полицейский, ученый, дантист, хирург, бухгалтер, журналист, фермер, продавец, фотограф, инженер.

Овцы, гуси, коровы, телята, козы, куры, лошади, львы, тигры, жирафы, слоны, медведи, зайцы, ежи, лисы, волки, мыши.

Ex. IV. Write in words: 4; 4й; 14; 40; 40й; 9; 9й; 19; 90; 90й; 8й; 12; 12й; 25; 8,113,867;

Ex. V. Add tags.

1. Everybody has a book. 2. We have got new clothes. 3. His friends have a good time in the country. 4. Nobody is in the room. 5. You never have supper. 6. None of them is ready to speak. 7. Somebody is in the yard. 8. All the office workers are here. 9. I am fair. 10. Everything is clear. 11. Everyone has got something to hide. 12. Something is wrong. 13. That's not a good question. 14. This is your new teacher. 15. Those are your friends. 16. These aren't our kids.

Ex. VI. Make the sentences negative.

1. He has a new car. 2. I have got some French books. 3. Let's go there now. 4. Give him some advice. 5. Let her help the kids. 6. All the surgeons are in this room. 7. Both women are nurses. 8. Everybody is out. 9. We have some chickens. 10. Either the accountant or the manager is here. 11. Everything is okay. 12. Both of them are postmen. 13. All of us have a good time here. 14. Someone is in the corridor now.

Ex VII. Translate into English.

1. Посмотри на собаку. Она во дворе. Её зовут Рех. 2. Давай сделаем всё сами. Пусть он сделает всё сам. 3. Он умылся, оделся и вышел. Он представился. 4. Никого здесь нет. Никого из них здесь нет. 5. Они оба не бизнесмены. Они оба врачи. 6. Сколько у вас щенков? – Нисколько. 7. Какое сегодня число? Какой сегодня день? Сегодня 18 октября. Сегодня четверг. 8. У кого-нибудь есть лошадь? У кого-нибудь из вас есть лошадь? 9. Его зовут либо Питер либо Пол. 10. Они не домохозяйки и не секретарши. 11. Один из наших юристов здесь. 12. Чья это корова? – Наша. А та? – Их. 12. Пусть он станет архитектором.

TOPIC 1. GETTING ACQUAINTED

5. ARTICLES

5. 1. THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE (A/AN)

nouns	use	examples
countable in the singular	1. in general sense (какой-нибудь, какой-то, один из, некий, каждый, любой)	She has <u>a</u> house of her own. My father is <u>a</u> doctor. What <u>a</u> nice day! <u>A</u> man is waiting for you. I saw Mr Brown, <u>a</u> teacher from our school. <u>A</u> friend in need is a friend indeed.
	2. with nouns denoting a class /group of people, or things	<u>A</u> cow gives milk. (Также: <u>The</u> cow gives milk.) Cows give milk.
	3. when we mean «only one»	He didn't say <u>a</u> word. <u>A</u> week or two passed.
material	1. when we speak of kinds or sorts of substance	They grow a special coffee here.
	2. when we mean «one portion»	Give me <u>an</u> ice-cream and <u>a</u> coffee.
<i>a second</i>	when we mean «one more»	Give me <u>a</u> second book, please. But: Give me <u>the</u> second book, please. (the second in the list, pile etc.)

In fixed expressions:

1) with some abstract nouns (pity, comfort, pleasure, disappointment и т.д.)
after *It's ...* and *What...*

It's a pity. What a pity! It's a pleasure. What a pleasure! It's a disappointment. What a disappointment!
(*but: There was disappointment in her eyes.*)

2) in a hurry, as a result, as a rule, for a while, to have a good time, to be at a loss, to tell a lie, to have a cold, to catch (a) cold

5. 2. THE DEFINITE ARTICLE (THE)

nouns	use	examples
concrete	1. when it is clear what object is meant	How did you like <u>the</u> film? Give me <u>the</u> book, please. Where is <u>the</u> dog?
	2. when there is a limiting attribute in the sentence: a subordinate clause, an ordinal numeral, a superlative adjective or the words: <i>right, wrong, same, very, only</i> (ТОТ, НЕ ТОТ, ТОТ ЖЕ, ИМЕННО ТОТ, ЕДИНСТВЕННЫЙ)	This is <u>the</u> house that Jack built. She is <u>the</u> prettiest girl here. When is <u>the</u> second break? It's <u>the</u> same story. This is <u>the</u> only thing to do.
	3. with a unique object	<u>The</u> sun was getting warmer. Open <u>the</u> door, will you?
	4. with adjectives and participles used as nouns	<u>The</u> rich also cry. She took care of <u>the</u> wounded.
	5. to denote a genre, type or invention	<u>The</u> telephone was invented then.
material	when we mean a certain amount of some substance	He drank <u>the</u> wine which Tom had brought. <u>The</u> coffee was cold.
abstract	with a limiting attribute or situation	He was <u>the</u> hope of his parents. I heard <i>Carmen</i> and enjoyed <u>the</u> music.

In fixed expressions:

by the way, in the original, on the whole, on the one hand, on the other hand, the other day,
to tell the truth, to tell the time, to play the piano (the violin, the guitar etc.), to go to the cinema (theatre, etc.),
to go to the country, to be on the safe side, to keep to the house, to keep to the bed,
It's out of the question. What's the news? What's the matter?

5. 3. NO ARTICLE = ZERO ARTICLE

nouns	use	examples
concrete	1. with objects in the plural in general sense (also with <i>some</i>)	I liked the room because there were flowers. I've brought you some flowers.
	2. in addresses	Children, come downstairs.
	3. with words denoting members of the family (among members of this family), in this case they are often written with capital letters	I'd like to see Mother. Where is Dad?
	4. when the noun is followed by a cardinal numeral	Open your books at page 23.

material	1. in general sense	Honey is very useful for health.
	2. when we speak of indefinite amount (<i>some</i>).	We took (some) bread and cheese with us.
abstract	1. in general sense	While there is life there is hope.
	2. with non-limiting attribute	English literature, Russian art, American history.

In parallel structures:

from morning till night, from north to south, from beginning to end, from head to foot, from house to house, hand in hand, side by side, face to face, day and night etc. *They are husband and wife.*

In fixed expressions:

to take to heart; at heart, to lose heart, by heart, to take offence; to give (ask, get) permission; to keep house; at present; at first sight; at sunrise; at sunset; at work; at home; by chance; by mistake; by name; by bus, train etc; on foot, in debt, in town, in bed.

ARTICLES WITH PROPER NAMES		
nouns	use	examples
1. personal names	1. are usually used without an article .	Sarah looked at Mike and John. She is the widow of poor Brian.
	also with words of title, rank, relation and the word <i>doctor</i>	Call Doctor Brown. She turned to Aunt Emily.
	2. We use the when we speak of a family or in the meaning "the very"	<u>The</u> Browns are at home now. It's <u>the</u> Peter I told you about.
	3. We put a/an , when we use a famous name as a characteristic .	She felt like an Alice in Wonderland.
2. geographical names	1. Names of towns, countries and continents are used without any article .	London, Russia, England, North America, South Africa.
	2. We use the in the names of the countries which have common nouns: <i>republic, union, states, kingdom, federation</i> .	<u>the</u> Russian Federation, <u>the</u> UK <u>the</u> United States of America,
	3. We use the with names of water objects : oceans, seas, rivers, canals and channels (except lakes) and deserts.	<u>the</u> Pacific Ocean (<u>the</u> Pacific); <u>the</u> Black Sea; <u>the</u> Thames; <u>the</u> Suez Canal <u>the</u> Sahara.
	4. We don't use articles in the names of lakes	Lake Ontario, Lake Baikal
	5. We use the with names of mountain chains and regions	<u>The</u> Urals; <u>the</u> Alps.
	6. There's no article in the names of mountain peaks.	Elbrus, Everest.
	7. We use the with groups of islands	<u>the</u> Hawaii , <u>the</u> Bermudas.
	8. There's no article in the names of separate islands.	Madagascar.
	9. We use the with names of some geographical areas.	<u>the</u> Crimea, <u>the</u> Far East, <u>the</u> Arctic
	10. The names of streets, squares, airports, universities are normally used without any article.	Oxford Street, Trafalgar Square, Heathrow, Cambridge University
	11. We use the with the names of cardinal points.	<u>the</u> north, <u>the</u> south, <u>the</u> east, <u>the</u> west

	12. We use the with the names of some newspapers, hotels, clubs, ships, museums, theatres, organizations. But we use the structure proper name + common noun without any article .	<u>the</u> Times; <u>the</u> Titanic, <u>the</u> Hilton; <u>the</u> British Museum; <u>the</u> BBC, <u>the</u> Tower of London BUT Buckingham Palace Westminster Abbey
3. Languages	are used without an article when there is no word language .	She knows English. She knows the English language.
The words <i>school,</i> <i>college,</i> <i>prison,</i> <i>bed,</i> <i>church,</i> <i>hospital etc.</i>	1. are used without an article , when they lose the concrete meaning and express the purpose they serve (typical of British English):	His son left school last year. He is in hospital. It's time to go to bed. He is in prison.
	2. are used with the or a in their concrete meaning	He left the school and went home. He is in the hospital, visiting Mum. The pyjamas are on the bed. He works in the prison (a prison).
Names of months, weekdays, seasons, meals, times of the day	1. are normally used without an article	I met her in May He'll come on Monday. We went there in (the) summer. Dinner was boring. It was evening when he came.
	2. are used with a/an if there is a descriptive attribute except <i>early</i> and <i>late</i> with months and seasons: It was <u>late</u> summer. It was <u>early</u> morning.	A cold May is usual here. We had a light supper. It was <u>a</u> hot summer. It was <u>a</u> sunny morning.
	3. are used with the :	
	if there is a limiting attribute	I met her on <u>the</u> Monday when David was born.
	if the names of the meals are used to speak of food , and not the process of eating	<u>The</u> dinner was tasty. <u>The</u> breakfast was bacon and eggs.
after the prepositions in and during .	He got up early in <u>the</u> morning. We met <u>during</u> the day.	

EXERCISES

Fill in the article *a/an* where necessary:

Ex. 1

1. Give me...advice. Give me...money. Give me...dollar.
2. Give me...piece of...cake. Give me...water. Give me...bread.
3. Just...moment. Just ...minute. Just ...second. Just...wait.
4. What...bad weather! What...good advice! What...nice kid!
5. Have...nice day! Have...good holiday! Have...merry vacations!
6. Her father is...lawyer. His brothers are... pilots.
7. There is...lake here. There is ... fizzy water in the glass.
8. ...friend in need is...friend indeed. He is... friend of ours.
9. He eats three times...day. I go there twice...month.
10. She bought... new jeans. She bought ...warm scarf. It's ... warm scarf.
11. I bought...milk and ...bread. I bought...loaf of ...bread.

12. ...cow gives...milk. ...cows give ...milk. ... milk is white.
13. It's... hard work. It's ... hard job. It's... hard life.
14. He's such ... shy man. He's so ... sly. They're such ... nice kids.
15. It's such...bad news. It's quite ...bad mistake.
16. He had ...farm. He had ...fun. He had... horse and ... cow.
17. Mr. Brown, ...clerk from our office, is ill.
18. There's...letter for you. There's ... information for you. There's ... news.
19. ...wise people don't need ...advice,...fools don't take it.

Ex. 2

1. Wish me...luck. Wish me...lucky trip. Wish you...good luck. We had...luck. ... good luck to you! We had...lucky day. It's ... lucky chance.
2. Have you got ...money to spend? This is...case with...money. ...time is... money. I haven't got ...money on me. This is... good money. He made ... lot of... money. He's rolling in...money. ...money can't buy me ...love.
3. I want to ask you for...book to read. I want to ask you for... help and...advice. I want to ask you for... information. She asks for ... cup of ... tea. They ask for ... thousand dollars. Who asks for ... nurse?
4. He always asks me for...homework to copy. He asked me for...spare pen.
5. Ask her for ... piece of bread. Ask her for ... permission. Ask her for... penny.
6. It's ...silly thing to do. It's ...nonsense. You talk... nonsense. It's ...stupid mistake.
7. Thank you for ... help. Thanks for ...nice story. Thank you for ...advice. Thanks for...good work. It's ...good job.
8. We want...new information. We want... new dictionary. We want ...help in this matter. We want...time and ...money to do it. We want ... new job.

Ex. 3

1. He's made ...progress in History. He's got ...good mark in Maths. I've made ... great progress. We've had ... great time.
2. It was... fun. It was ... funny little watch. It was... funny party. We had ... fun. Let's have ... fun tonight.
3. I have...useful profession. I have...useful information. I haven't got ... information for you. This was... difficult conversation.
4. He had ... bad health. He had ... bad tooth. He had...bad dream. Smoking is bad for... health. He is ...picture of ... health.
5. Everything is under...control. The car got out of...control. There's...control key on the keyboard. I lost...control and hit him.
6. It's...sad news. It's...sad event. He has...strange accent. He has...strange news. He gave me ... strange advice.

Ex. 4

1. What difficult job!
2. What deep snow!
3. What easy sentences!
4. What hot water!
5. What cold evening!
6. What intelligent girl!
7. What good ideas you have!
8. What beautiful music Joanne is playing!
9. What dark eyes your son has!
10. What silly mistake you have made!
11. What pleasure to meet you again!
12. What pretty girl!
13. What pity you can't come!
14. What tasty coffee!
15. What talented writer he is!
16. What lovely hair you have!
17. What disappointment not to be able to talk to the manager now!
18. What luck to catch the last train!
19. What fresh air!
20. What comfort to have such nice children!
21. What rare bird!
22. What nonsense!

Ex. 5. Fill in articles or *some* where necessary.

1. dogs are said to be good friends. 2. Benny is already in bed. 3. Where is Doctor Sanford? Is he still in hospital? 4. This isn't snow, it'sice. 5. Look! snow is melting. 6. I don't feel sympathy towards this man. 7. iron is metal. 8. knife is made of metal. 9. Please, buy apples and oranges. 10. He likes jam on piece of bread. 11. Bring water, please. 12. honesty is best policy. 13. Was note written with pencil? 14. There was curiosity in her look. 15. Frank wants glass of milk. 16. I never have tea withmilk. 17. tea is too hot. I'll put milk into it. 18. Uncle Tom was kind old man. 19. They have cats and dogs at home. 20. Smiths are having a party tonight

Ex. 6. Fill in articles where necessary

1. Look at church. What marvellous building! 2. Where is room 209? – It's on first floor. 3. Has Mum gone to work yet? 4. Shall we take taxi or go by bus? 5. Jim had problems with Mathematics and Physics at school. 6. Browns seldom go to church. 7. thief who robbed this bank was caught by police and sent to prison. 8. Make love, not war. 9. exercise 7 is on page eighty-two. 10. Bob and Maggie are brother and sister. 11. Does your little brother go to school? 12. school wasn't far from his place. 13. He left school last year. 14. Do you have grandfather? 15. There is garden behind house. 16. My brother is journalist and his wife is dentist. 17. I have father, mother and little brother. 18. What's matter with you? 19. We are students. We study English language. 20. people are strange. 21. Rest in ... peace.

Ex. 7. Fill in articles where necessary

1. She had velvet dress. 2. red dress, she was wearing at party, was very smart. 3. He is most handsome man I know. 4. It's same story again. 5. He is good-looking young man of twenty. 6. Come to blackboard and write exercise 12 on it. 7. Let me introduce you to Johnsons. They are very nice people. 8. Danny is old friend of mine. 9. Are rooms in your flat large? 10. They are going to build new house. house they have now is too small. 11. We must speak to boss. It's only thing to do. 12. Can you play musical instrument? Can you play guitar? 13. I have guitar, but I don't have piano. 14. When was computer invented? 15. Let's switch on radio, shall we? 16. There is television in corner of room. 17. They went to cinema hour ago. 18. These are mistakes I made in test. 19. He is third headmaster of our school. 20. street was empty, but suddenly he noticedold woman on opposite side.

Ex. 8. Use proper articles. Mind geographical names.

1. Elbrus is highest peak of Caucasus. 2.Japan is small country. 3. London is on Thames. 4. Poland is to west of Russian Federation. 5. USA is in North America. 6. In north of Russia summers are very short. 7. What is capital of Netherlands? 8. The expedition has just returned from Antarctic. 9. Urals separate Europe from Asia. 10. Ireland is island, isn't it? 11. Mississippi is longest river in world. 12. Turning toeast he saw that sun had risen. 13. I hear he has left for Central Africa. 14. Severn is longest river inGreat Britain. 15. UK lies in eastern part of Atlantic Ocean. 16. Belgium is country in Central Europe. 17. English Channel separates Britain from continent. 18. Sahara is in north of Africa. 19. Lake Ontario is one of largest in North America. 20. Crimea is part of Russia now. 21. Who discovered America? 22. He usually reads Times at breakfast. 23. Cyprus is in Mediterranean. 24. South Pole is in Antarctica. 25. Ian is on Bermudas now. 26. He put up at Hilton.

Ex. 9. Use proper articles. Pay attention to nouns in apposition.

1. girl was alone, rather short young woman of twenty-two. 2. Her companion, handsome dark-haired young man, had left. 3. She was seventeen then – beautiful young girl. 4. This is my friend, fashion designer. 5. Tokyo, capital of Japan, is one of largest cities in world. 6. Our university, grey four-storeyed building, is situated in centre of city. 7. Mrs Bennet, woman of fifty, resembled my mother. 8. I saw him speaking to Frank Cooper, Englishman. 8. Meet Gerry Langton, cousin of mine. 9. This is Bingo, our dog. 10. Beside him there was portrait of his wife, thin woman in black.

Ex. 10. Fill in articles. Mind the nouns in prepositional phrases.

1. She nodded to me with smile. 2. I'll do it with pleasure. 3. Everybody looked at her in surprise. 4. He worked from morning tillnight but earned very little. 5. They were talking in low voices. 6. I was trembling like leaf. 7. The boys were dirty from head to foot . 8. Jack called her in loud voice. 9. May listened to him with disappointment. 10. She went up the steps like bird. 11. The detective went from house to house asking questions. 12. She was weeping like child. 13. The young man turned to her amazement. 14. The two of them were walking side by side. 15. driver was young fellow with large red hands, long nose and orange hair. 16. They work with enthusiasm. 17. It was little house with green windows and brown door.

Ex. 11. Fill in articles where necessary. Mind fixed expressions.

1. "You did it in ... hurry. As ... result ... boss took ... offence. Do it again from ... beginning to ... end," he told me in ... low voice. 2. Don't lose ... heart, tell him ... truth and never tell ... lie again. 3. We understood at once that he could play ... guitar for ... hours. 4. Let's ask ... permission to go by ... train, to be on ... safe side. – With ... pleasure. 5. It'spity they married in ... hurry. She fell in ...love with him at ... first sight. 8. I met him by ... chance ... other day. He called me by ... name in ... loud voice. It was ... pleasure to see him again. 9. On ... one hand we had ... good time, on ... other hand we were tired ... lot. 10. You should not only keep to ... house, but also keep to ... bed. You mustn't stay outdoors, it's out of ... question. 11. He gets up at ... sunrise and goes to ... bed at ... sunset, in fact he is at ...work from ...morning till...night. He hates such ... life at ...heart, but he can't change it. 12. Does your mother keep ... house 13. I did it by ... mistake and now I am at ...loss. – Don't take it to ... heart. 14. Don't stay outside in ... stormy weather, you'll be wet from ... head to ... foot. 15. On ... whole he read ... lot of books in ... original. 16. Leave me in ... peace.

Ex. 12. Use proper articles with nouns denoting parts of the day, seasons, meals.

1. Late in afternoon she went back to London. 2. It was such cold and windy night that we had to look for shelter. 3. morning was breaking when we started. 4. It happened on very day of his arrival. 5. It was evening when we parted at last. 6. It has been wonderful evening for me. 7. It's pleasant to go to country on warm summer day. 8. night was so wet that no one was about. 9. morning was perfect. 10. It's early morning yet. 11. I thought it was morning. 12. night was silent. 13. It was late night when he arrived. 14. evening was still and warm. 15. It all happened early in morning. 16. What exciting day it has been! 17. It is last day that we are together. 18. We arrived late at night. 19. It's awful to be out-of-doors on stormy day like this. 20. winter was cold. 21. It was early autumn. 22. summer is my favourite season.

Ex. 13. Use proper articles with nouns denoting parts of the day, seasons, meals.

1. In spring days become longer and nights grow shorter. 2. summer is good time for sports. 3. It was cold rainy autumn. 4. spring has come. 5. We

have breakfast at eight. 6. When lunch was over, they went upstairs to have little rest. 7. We all agreed that it was very pleasant dinner. 8. It's not good to smoke before breakfast. 9. Nobody objected to light supper. 10. Atdinner we sat far from each other. 11. It was excellent breakfast. 12. Will you come down to tea? 13. dinner was marvellous. dessert was especially good. 14. I'll speak to him at dinner. 15. breakfast was bacon and eggs and coffee. 16. When dinner was over she decided to talk to him.17. We should organize little dinner to celebrate the event. 18. If you come half hour before supper, you will find him at home. 19. After dinner sit a while, after supper walk mile. 20. That night we had lonely little dinner. 21. She came down to breakfast. 22. dinner is ready, sir.

Ex. 14. Fill in articles where necessary.

... young man was out for ... walk in ... big city when he met ... penguin. ... penguin seemed to take ... fancy to him and began to follow ... young man. ... man was at ... loss, so he went to ... policeman to ask for ... advice. 'Take ... penguin to ... zoo', said ... policeman. 'With ... pleasure', said ... man.

... next day ... policeman saw ... same young man again still followed by ... penguin. 'What are you doing with ... penguin?' he asked, 'I told you to take it to ... zoo'.

'Yes', said ... man, 'we went to ... zoo yesterday. Today we're going to ... museum'.

Ex. 15. Read the joke and answer the questions:

What did the foreigner want to ask? Why didn't the Englishman understand him?

A foreigner in London asked a passer-by: 'Excuse me, but what is time?'

The Englishman politely replied: 'By a strange coincidence, I am philosophically minded too, but I haven't yet been able to find an answer to this great problem.'

TOPIC 2. DESCRIBING PEOPLE

6. THE POSSESSIVE CASE

6. 1. GENERAL RULE

1. English nouns have two cases: the **common** case and the **possessive** case.

We normally only use the possessive case (to show **possession**) **for people and animals**.

We can always use the **of-construction** instead.

a man's voice – the voice of a man; the Smiths' cottage – the cottage of the Smiths.

No	what	how	examples
1	common nouns and names in the singular	We add apostrophe + s [ə'pɒstrəfi] (апострoф)	<i>a boy's name;</i> <i>this actress's career;</i> <i>this cat's milk; Tom's cat;</i>
2	indefinite and negative pronouns		<i>somebody's advice;</i> <i>nobody's business;</i>
3	irregular nouns without the ending -s in the plural		<i>these sheep's wool;</i> <i>his children's toys;</i>
4	compound nouns and word combinations		<i>my sister-in-law's father</i> <i>the King of Spain's daughter</i>
5	regular nouns ending in -s in the plural	We only add an apostrophe	<i>the girls' dolls;</i> <i>the Joneses' son;</i> <i>the horses' names.</i>
6	famous names ending in -s	We add an apostrophe (+ s)	<i>Keats' poetry;</i> <i>St James' Park;</i>

7	groups of nouns	We add apostrophe + S at the end of the group to show common possession	<i>Meet Tom and Ann's kids.</i>
		We add apostrophe + S to each noun to show individual possession	<i>Meet Tom's and Ann's kids.</i>

Note: When the word combination is too long or a noun is followed by an additional phrase or clause, we use the **of-construction**. *Can you take the book of the boy sitting behind you?*

6. 2. NON-LIVING THINGS

We can use the possessive case with some nouns denoting non-living things.

No	where	examples
1	in time and distance phrases	<i>an hour's break;</i> <i>a day's work;</i> <i>a day or two's rest;</i> <i>five miles' trip;</i> <i>today's news;</i> <i>tomorrow's plans;</i>
	Instead of plural possessive we can use a compound adjective with a hyphen to say the same.	<i>two months' wages = two-month wages;</i> <i>three minutes' walk = a three-minute walk;</i>
2	with the names of countries, cities, organizations and ships and with the nouns <i>world, country, city, ship</i> .	<i>America's policy;</i> <i>New York's underground;</i> <i>the government's decision;</i> <i>the world's best museums;</i> <i>the ship's crew;</i>
3	in fixed expressions	<i>the earth's surface;</i> <i>to keep at arm's length;</i> <i>a stone's throw from... etc.</i>

Note: In other cases with non-living things we use an **of-construction** or (occasionally) a **compound noun**.

*the leg of the table (=the table leg); the key of the door (=the door key);
the book of the film; the shadow of the tree.*

6. 3. NOTES

1. The possessive can be used **without the head noun** to **avoid repetition** or to refer to **places** (where someone lives, shops, businesses, medical offices, churches, colleges, restaurants etc.)

*My room is smaller than my sister's. I'm staying at my aunt's. Let's go to the baker's.
She is a guest at the Watsons'. You are to be at the dentist's at 5. We'll meet at St. Paul's.*

2. Sometimes a noun in the possessive case may be used as a descriptive attribute to the head noun, answering the question **What kind of ?** (and not the question **Whose?**)
In this case the article (or its absence) refers to the head noun.

a boys' school, a children's book, cow's milk;
школа для мальчиков, детская книга, коровье молоко.

3. We pronounce 's the same as the plural ending.

[s] after **voiceless** consonants. *Jack's job; Pat's bag; his wife's recipe;*

[z] after **voiced** consonants and **vowels**. *this doctor's advice; Bill's place; his dad's bike;*

[ɪz] after **sibilants** (s,z,ʃ,ʒ,tʃ,dʒ). *the boss's office; Mr Page's case; Gladys's cookies;*

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Change using the possessive case if possible:

1) the niece of my best friend; 2) the hedgehog of Benny; 3) the information of Alex;
4) the business of nobody; 5) the son of the King of Spain; 6) the photos of his kids; 7) three hours of rest; 8) the tests of Kate and Mary; 9) the kiss of Judas; 10) the advice of somebody else;
11) the past of America; 12) the scissors of Gladys; 13) a meeting for half an hour; 14) the palace of St James; 15) the boats of the fishermen 16) the cottage of Sue and Tom; 17) the grandson of the Browns; 18) the show last Sunday; 19) the head of the horse; 20) the leg of the chair; 21) the speech of George Bush; 22) the mistakes of John and Ann; 23) a wait for a day or two; 24) the car of my uncle and aunt; 25) the family of Thomas; 26) the house of the Carters; 27) the birthday of his stepbrother; 28) an absence of seven years; 29) the wedding of Jack and Jill; 30) the works of Keats; 31) the poems of Pushkin and Blok; 32) the door of the room; 33) the principle of Archimedes; 34) the deeds of these heroes; 35) hopes of yesterday; 36) the motorbike of Keith; 37) the largest city of France; 38) the names of her sons-in-law; 39) the attention of everybody; 40) entertainment tonight

Ex. 2. Change using the possessive case if possible:

1) the medicine of Mr. Johnson; 2) the duties of the housewife; 3) the monkey of the sailors; 4) the room of Mum and Dad; 5) the distance of six miles; 6) the marks of the students; 7) the skin of the leopard; 8) the garage of the Joneses; 9) plans for tomorrow; 10) the dresses of Brenda and Kate; 11) the manager of the company; 12) the case of this passer-by; 13) the statue of Venus; 14) the problems of foreigners; 15) the voice of our teacher of art; 16) the policy of the government; 17) a break for five minutes; 18) the feathers of these geese; 19) the visas of those Germans; 20) the turkeys of Mr. Evans; 21) the cult of this goddess; 22) the back of the chair; 23) a ride for an hour; 24) the patients of this surgeon; 25) at the flat of her grandparents; 26) at the shop of a baker; 27) the rights of women; 28) the beard of my grandpa; 29) the moustache of Mr. Poirot; 30) the cares of grown-ups; 31) newspapers of today; 32) the cook of her mother-in-law 33) at the flat of his friend; 34) the patronymic of Alexander; 35) the age of her nephew; 36) the life of Julius Caesar.

Ex. 3 Translate into English using the possessive case where possible.

1. Это младший сын доктора Сэндфорда. 2. Миссис Джоунз еще в парикмахерской.
3. Это машина Смитов, не так ли? 4. У него в руках птичье гнездо. 5. В воскресенье к нам придут друзья моих родителей. 6. Квартира Тома и Элис недалеко отсюда. 7. Посмотри на портрет королевы Франции. 8. Как зовут его детей? 9. Где зонтики наших гостей? 10. Учителю не понравились ответы студентов. 11. Глаза Мэгги очень выразительные. 12. Дедушке Джека уже за 60. 13. У нее двухнедельный отпуск каждый год. 14. Это женская шляпа. Он не хочет надевать её. 15. Сегодняшние газеты на том столе. 16. Прошлогодняя встреча была не очень удачной. 17. Она гостит у бабушки и дедушки каждое лето. 18. На уроке мы читали стихи Шекспира и Бернса. 19. Это – детская книга, отдай её своему

младшему брату. 20. Волосы этого панка выглядят странно. 21. Свадьба Барбары и Ника на следующей неделе. 22. Мадрид – самый большой город Испании.

Ex. 4. Translate into English using the possessive case where possible.

1. Скоро день рождения моей свекрови.
2. Посмотри на одежду этой девушки. Тебе она нравится?
3. Картина называется «Поцелуй Иуды».
4. Где крыша у этого дома?
5. У Чарльза тяжелая жизнь.
6. Он любит романы Диккенса.
7. Дом родителей Майка стоит на берегу реки.
8. Одна из песен Битлз называется «Вкус меда».
9. Игрушки ребенка под столом.
10. Давай посмотрим расписание на завтра, ладно?
11. Тебе надо последовать совету твоих родителей.
12. Это результат трехмесячной работы.
13. Расскажите нам о карьере этой актрисы.
14. Что ты знаешь о новой работе Фреда?
15. Это кресло нашего дедушки.
16. Сейчас он у своих родственников.
17. Эта деревня расположена в двух шагах от Брайтона.
18. Мистер Симпсон у зубного врача, он вернется через час.
19. Я слышу чей-то голос в прихожей. Кто это?
20. Давай поедem в клуб на машине Пита, ладно?

TOPIC 3. FAMILY

7. THE PRESENT SIMPLE

7. 1. FORMATION

№	person/number	affirmative	question	negative
1	I We You They	I go.	Do you go?	They don't go.
2	He She It	He goes.	Does she go?	She doesn't go.

Note

1. We add **-s** (or **-es**) in the **third person singular**: *work – (he) works*;
-es is added to verbs ending in **-o, -ss, -ch, -sh, -z, -x**:
(he) goes, does, misses, watches, wishes, buzzes, fixes.

2. If the verb ends in **consonant + -y**, it has **-ies** in the third person singular:
to try, carry, copy; – (he) tries, carries, copies; but: to play, to say; – (he) plays, says;

7. 2. USE

We use PRESENT SIMPLE when we speak about			
	use	example	comments
1	permanent actions (facts), laws of nature, general truths	My friends live in Paris. The Volga flows into the sea. Haste makes waste.	
2	customary, repeated actions	He gets up at seven every day. Do you ever go to the theatre?	with adverbs like: <i>always, usually, often, sometimes, from time to time, seldom, ever, never, every ...</i>
3	unfinished present actions		instead of Present Continuous
	with verbs of state not used in continuous forms	I hear you very well now. He knows it now.	
	in the sentences beginning with here and there	Here comes the bus. There runs the hare!	Вот идет автобус. Вон бежит заяц!

4	future actions		instead of Future Simple
	when we talk about timetables, programmes, public transport, cinemas, etc.:	The train leaves at 8 tonight. The film starts at five today.	
	sometimes after <i>hope</i>	I hope he comes soon. I hope he will come soon.	
	in adverbial clauses of time and condition after <i>when, as soon as, till / until, before, after, if, unless, in case.</i>	We will play chess when he comes . (когда?) We will play chess if he comes . If he comes , we will play chess. (при каком условии?)	but not in <u>object</u> clauses I wonder if he will come today. Интересно (что?), придет ли он? Tell me when he will come today. Скажи мне (что?), когда он сегодня придет?

8. THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE

8.1. FORMATION

We use the auxiliary verb *to be* (*am, is, are*) and the Present Participle of the notional verb to form the Present Continuous.

№	person/number	affirmative	question	negative
1	I	I am going.	Am I going?	I am not going.
	We You They	They are going.	Are you going?	We aren't going.
2	He She It	He is going.	Is she going?	She isn't going.

*I am reading a book. Mother is cooking. My brothers are playing football in the yard.
What are you reading? Mother isn't baking a cake now. Are your brothers playing football?*

8.2. USE

We use PRESENT CONTINUOUS			
	use	examples	comments
1	to speak about unfinished actions		
	going on just at the moment of speaking.	He is watching TV now.	with adverbs of time: <i>now, at the moment, at present, still</i>
	that have begun before the present moment and are still unfinished now	He is writing a new book.	
2	to describe changing or developing situations	The population of the world is growing very fast. Is his English getting better?	
3	to emphasize temporary character of an action	Usually I get up at 7, but <u>this week</u> I'm getting up at 6	with adverbs like: <i>today, these days, this week</i>

4	to express annoyance or criticism about frequently repeated actions	I am <u>always</u> losing things. You are <u>constantly</u> grumbling	in affirmatives with <i>always</i> or <i>constantly</i> Вечно я все теряю. Вечно ты ворчишь.
5	to speak about an action in the process of which another (habitual) action takes place	He often <u>watches</u> TV when he is eating .	Present Continuous for the action in progress Present Simple for the habitual action
6	to speak about personal plans and fixed arrangements for the near future	We are meeting at 7 <u>tonight</u> .	There must always be an adverb of time

8. 3. SPELLING RULES (present participle)

We add – *ing* to the verb to form the present participle.

№	what	when	examples	compare
1	We double the final consonant	after one short stressed vowel in the closed syllable.	<i>stop – stopping;</i> <i>plan – planning;</i> <i>be'gin – beginning;</i>	<i>write- writing</i> <i>come - coming</i>
2	We double the final -r	after one stressed vowel in the third type of the syllable	<i>pre'fer – preferring;</i> <i>stir – stirring;</i>	<i>'offer – offering;</i> <i>appear – appearing</i>
3	We double the final -l	a short vowel, stressed or unstressed (typical of British English)	<i>quarrel – quarrelling</i> <i>travel – travelling</i>	<i>appeal – appealing</i>
4	We change -ie into -y	always	<i>die – dying;</i> <i>lie – lying.</i>	
5	We don't change -y into -i	never	<i>try – trying;</i> <i>play – playing;</i> <i>copy – copying</i>	

8. 4. VERBS OF STATE (NOT used in Present Continuous)

№	group	examples
1	verbs of sense perception	
	see (= видеть), hear, feel	<i>We see and hear you well</i>
but	<i>see</i> in other meanings	<i>We are seeing him tomorrow. (встречаемся)</i>
but	<i>feel</i> and <i>look</i> (= <i>выглядеть</i>), for the present moment	<i>How do you feel now? How are you feeling now?</i> <i>You look nice today. You are looking nice today</i>
2	verbs of mental activity	
	know, believe, think (= считать), mean, remember, recognize, understand etc.	<i>I understand you now. He thinks he is clever.</i> <i>What do you mean?</i>
but	think (= <i>размышлять</i>)	<i>I am thinking about his offer.</i>
3	verbs of wish	
	want, wish etc.	<i>Now she wants a new car. What do you wish now?</i>

4	verbs of feelings	
	love, like, dislike, hate, prefer etc.	<i>They like this film. I love you, Fiona.</i>
but	to emphasize the feeling	<i>I'm just loving this film! I'm still loving you.</i>
5	verbs expressing physical properties of objects	
	taste (=ИМЕТЬ ВКУС), smell (=ПАХНУТЬ), weigh (=ИМЕТЬ ВЕС), sound (ЗВУЧАТЬ)	<i>The apple tastes sour. The flowers smell nice How much do you weigh? It sounds wonderful!</i>
		<u>These verbs can also denote an action.</u> <i>He is tasting the apple. (пробовать) They are smelling the flowers. (нюхать) He is weighing the meat. (взвешивать)</i>
6	abstract verbs	
	be, have (=ИМЕТЬ), own, belong, contain, consist, depend, seem etc.	<i>They depend on you now. Who owns this gun? He seems sad today.</i>
but	<i>be + adjective</i> in the meaning <i>вести себя</i>	<i>He is being very rude today. But: He is rude. (in general)</i>

JAZZ CHANTS

Banker's Wife's Blues

'Where does 'John , live?
He 'lives near the , bank
 'Where does he , work?
He 'works at the , bank
 , When does he .work?
He 'works 'all , day
And he 'works all , night
At the , bank, at the , bank
At the 'great 'big , bank
 'Where does he , study?
He 'studies at the , bank
 'Where does he , sleep?
He 'sleeps at the , bank
 `Why does he .spend
 'All , day, 'all , night (2)
 At the , bank, at the , bank?
Be'cause he 'loves his , bank
'More than his , wife
And he 'loves his , money
'More than his , life

Well, He Eats Like a Pig

'Well, he 'eats like a , pig
 He 'can't 'get e , nough
 He 'works like a `dog
 He 'looks 'real , tough
 He 'smokes like a , chimney
 Four 'packs a , day
 He 'sleeps like a , log
 'What , more can I say?
 He 'drinks like a , fish
 'Scotch on the , rocks
 'When he 'gets real , mad
 He 'hardly , talks
 He 'cries like a , baby
 'When he's 'feeling , sad
 He's the 'dearest , friend
 I've 'ever , had

He Loves the Ocean

He loves the ocean
 He loves the sky
 She loves to travel
 She loves to fly
 He likes the country
 He loves the clouds
 She likes the city
 She loves the crowds
 She loves the telephone
 She loves to talk
 He loves the mountains
 He loves to walk
 She loves to travel
 She loves to fly
 He loves the ocean
 He loves the sky

What's Going On This Morning?

The 'earth is , turning
 The 'toast is , burning
 The 'water is boiling
 The 'tea kettle's , whistling
 The 'faucet is , leaking
 The 'floor is , creaking

The 'plants are , dying
 The 'kids are , crying
 'What's , burning?
 The , toast is burning
 'What's , boiling?
 The , water is boiling

'How are the , plants?
 The 'plants are , dying
 'How are the , kids?
 The 'kids are , crying

EXERCISES

Add -s and -ing to the verbs.

Model: to do – does, doing.

Ex. 1

1) to enjoy; 2) to dry; 3) to lie; 4) to marvel; 5) to deal; 6) to pat; 7) to open; 8) to begin; 9) to bother; 10) to clear; 11) to deliver; 12) to carry; 13) to copy; 14) to destroy; 15) to die; 16) to sail; 17) to quarrel; 18) to set; 19) to hide; 20) to plan; 21) to water; 22) to occur; 23) to differ; 24) to swim; 25) to regret; 26) to come; 27) to marry; 28) to lay; 29) to skin;

30) to look; 31) to appear; 32) to stir; 33) to dig; 34) to bite; 35) to shop; 36) to expel; 37) to kneel; 38) to cost; 39) to write;

Ex. 2

1) to say; 2) to go; 3) to try; 4) to forget; 5) to cut; 6) to slip; 7) to sleep; 8) to sit; 9) to travel; 10) to conceal; 11) to rebel; 12) to buy; 13) to fly; 14) to pay; 15) to put; 16) to run; 17) to shoot; 18) to rise; 19) to get; 20) to skip; 21) to transfer; 22) to chatter; 23) to offer; 24) to refer; 25) to win; 26) to whine; 27) to shut; 28) to tie; 29) to stay; 30) to pity; 31) to obey; 32) to hit; 33) to hide; 34) to wish; 35) to watch; 36) to give; 37) to stop; 38) to dye;

Ex. 3. Make it third person singular.

1. My friends want to go to a cafe tonight. 2. They remember everything. 3. The children are enjoying this game. 4. Do your sisters play tennis? 5. My parents are walking in the park now. 6. They live in small wooden houses in the forest. 7. My brothers like Russian rock. 8. The students get books from the library. 9. Mike and Rick are riding powered scooters. 10. They want to buy some English books in the original. 11. Their holidays last three weeks. 12. My younger sisters are watching the new film about Harry Potter. 13. These interpreters translate from Chinese into Russian. 14. They have to get up early. 15. Our fathers work in the office and don't come home for lunch. 16. Anthony and his friends prefer vegetarian food now. 17. These people don't believe me. 18. Are those students staying after classes today? 19. Why don't they speak English at the lesson? 20. What are the boys doing? – They are supboarding. 21. They want to get away.

Ex. 4. Correct the sentences if necessary.

Model: The sun rises in the west. *The sun doesn't rise in the west. It rises in the east.*

1. You learn Japanese. 2. Carpenters make things from metal. 3. The River Amazon flows into the Pacific Ocean. 4. It is snowing now. 5. Mice catch cats. 6. The students of our group are sleeping now. 7. It often rains in January. 8. You are standing at the blackboard. 9. Sheep eat meat. 10. New York is the capital of the USA. 11. Your seatmate is playing golf tomorrow. 12. London stands on the River Severn. 13. Somebody is singing in the corridor. 14. Your mother always whistles while she is cooking. 15. People usually enjoy going to a dentist. 16. Your friends go to bed at nine. 17. The Indian Ocean lies between Europe and America. 18. Water boils at 10° C. 19. Your neighbour works for IBM. 20. You come to the university in a limousine. 21. Brad Pitt has dark hair and hazel eyes. 22. You drink coffee with sugar, lemon and brandy. 23. You have lots of free time. 24. The bell is going. 25. The exercise begins here.

Ex. 5. Ask questions for additional information.

1. Tom earns a lot of money. (How much?) 2. They arrive at the uni at the same time. (Why?) 3. Ann is having a housewarming. (When?) 4. Chris solves such problems. (How?) 5. They go to nightclubs every weekend. (Who?) 6. Sheila and Mary are dancing. (Who ...with?) 7. His parents never scold him. (Whose?) 8. The secretaries are typing. (What?) 9. They walk every evening. (Where?) 10. Tom likes music. (What kind of?) 11. The girls are crying. (Why?) 12. Her parents often go abroad. (How often?) 13. They have children. (How many?)

Ex. 6. Ask tag, yes/no and choice questions.

1. Steve works. 2. I am seventeen. 3. Time flies. 4. They are exercising in a gym. 5. She seldom talks on Skype. 6. Her friends take yoga classes. 7. Meg is learning to drive. 8. Tastes differ.

Ex. 7. Ask no less than 10 questions about the situation:

two tag questions (negative & positive), a yes/no question, a choice question and some wh-questions.

1. His parents go to the seaside in summer. 2. Jane studies a foreign language. 3. Her brother likes to drive fast. 4. Meg isn't working now. 5. His sisters rent a flat. 6. Chris plays in a band. 7. Her mum is shopping today. 8. Jill goes to bed late. 9. He is surfing the net. 10. They don't like winter.

Ex. 8. Put the verbs in brackets into the Present Simple or the Present Continuous tense.

1. Cuckoos (not build) nests. They (use) the nests of other birds. 2. You can't see Tom now. He (have) a shower. 3. She usually (eat) a lot but today she (eat) very little. 4. What he (do) in the evenings? – He usually (watch) TV. 5. I won't go out now as it (rain) hard. 6. The last train (leave) the station at 11:30. 7. What did he say? – I've no idea. He (speak) so fast that I (not understand) him. 8. Ann (make) a dress for herself now. She (make) all her own dresses. 9. I (wear) my sunglasses today because the sun is strong. 10. We can't cycle round the lake because Jim (repair) his bike. 11. How you (get) to work as a rule? – I usually (go) by minibus. 12. Why you (put) on your coat? – I (go) for a walk. 13. He always (buy) lottery tickets but he never (win). 14. ... you (write) with your left hand? 15. He never (listen) to me, he always (think) about something! 17. ... you (recognize) the man? – I (think) I (know) him but I (not remember) his name. 18. Stop! You (not see) the notice? – I (see) it but I can't read it as I (not wear) my glasses today. What it (say)? 19. I (think) you (get) fat. You should take more exercise. 20. I can't answer the phone now because I (paint) the wall. 21. ... you (believe) in devil?

Ex. 9. Put the verbs in brackets into the Present Simple or the Present Continuous tense.

1. She (look) wonderful today. 2. If he (return) late next time, don't scold him, please. 3. I'm tired of your stories. You always (lie) to me! 4. Phil and Lily (celebrate) their wedding anniversary on Sunday. 5. Why you (hurry)? – I (not want) to miss the train. It (leave) in ten minutes! 6. She isn't lonely any more, she (have) a family now. 7. Where is she? – She either (sit) in front of the computer or (chat) with her friends on the phone. 8. What you (eat)? – I (not eat), I (chew) a gum. 9. It (rain) again. 10. What you (do)? – I'm an interpreter. 11. Come to my place if you (be) free tomorrow. – I'm afraid I can't. I (play) volleyball tomorrow. 12. Kate (seem) to have some problems again. This girl always (complain) about something! 13. Look, Mom! I (swim)! 14. Your pronunciation (improve) with every passing day. 15. What (lie) over there? Is it my wallet? 16. I'm afraid, I (not recognize) you. Have we met? 17. She (think) of selling her house. 18. Yes! I (remember) now! We were at school together. 19. What you (do) on Saturday? – I (ride) with Mike. 20. Sometimes you (win), sometimes you (learn).

Ex. 10. Put the verbs in brackets into the Present Simple or the Present Continuous tense.

1. Look! The sun (rise)! 2. Who (make) that terrible noise? – This is my son. He (play) Indians with his friends. 3. I (not know) what he (want) now. 4. What you (look) for? – We (try) to find our Granny's glasses. 5. He often (sing) when he (take) a shower. 6. What time she (come) home as a rule? 7. How you (feel) now? – Much better, thank you. 8. Who (live) in the next flat? Who (play) the violin there now? It (sound) nice, ... it? 9. It (get) dark. Switch on the light, will you? 10. Usually she (watch) TV before going to bed, but today she (play) computer games. 11. He is too serious. He seldom (smile) and never (laugh). 12. ... you (hear) anything? – Yes, somebody (ring) the door bell. 13. Don't call them now. They (have) lunch. They always (have) lunch at this time. 14. Don't make a noise! The baby (sleep). 15. What you (do)? – I (taste) the soup. – Is it OK? – Yes, it (taste) very good. 16. She can't go out until she (finish) the translation, can she? 17. Call me as soon as you (be) ready. 18. They (have) a party tomorrow. Will you come? 19. What time the football match (start)? 20. What's up? You (be) so absent-minded today.

Ex. 11. Translate into English.

1. Мы сейчас очень заняты, так как завтра мы уезжаем. 2. Студенты сдают экзамены. Не шумите в коридоре. 3. Поторопись, последний поезд отходит через несколько минут. 4. Маленькие дети верят в Санта Клауса. 5. Чего мы ждем? 6. Они играют в футбол по пятницам. 7. Почему у него такой грустный вид? – У него завтра экзамен. 8. Позвони мне, когда пообедаешь, ладно? 9. Теперь я не понимаю тебя. Что ты хочешь? 10. Молоко кислое на вкус и у него странный запах. 11. Куда ты спешишь? – В университет. Занятия начинаются через 10 минут. 12. Обычно я хожу домой через парк, но на этой неделе я езжу на автобусе. 13. Наш город становится красивее с каждым годом. 14. Перезвони мне попозже, пожалуйста, у меня сейчас лекция по истории. 15. Почему она плачет? – Я не знаю. Я пытаюсь её утешить. 16. Мой младший брат ест 5 раз в день. 17. Вечно ты задаешь глупые вопросы. 18. Вот идет Джерри. Что он несет в руках? 19. Вон стоит Том. На что он смотрит? 20. Если он купит билеты, мы пойдем в кино. 21. Что ты о нем думаешь? – Я думаю, он умный и добрый. 22. Сейчас она знает 3 языка и учит четвертый. 23. Ты едешь загород на выходные? 24. Над какой книгой Вы работаете сейчас, мистер Шелдон?

Ex. 12. Translate into English.

1. Как тихо. Интересно, что дети делают сейчас. 2. Я забыл, где он живет сейчас. 3. Обычно я ложусь спать часов в 11, но на этой неделе у меня много работы, и я ложусь спать после полуночи. 4. Во сколько начинается сериал сегодня? – Я не помню. 5. Тони заходит за мной в 7 часов сегодня вечером. 6. О чем ты думаешь? – О завтрашней встрече. Надеюсь, все будет хорошо. 7. Сейчас Мэгги гостит у своей тети в Лондоне. 8. Ты понимаешь, что я имею в виду? 9. Куда ты идешь без зонтика? Разве ты не видишь, на улице дождь? Ты слышишь меня? 10. Что это с Сюзии? Она такая капризная сегодня. Обычно она спокойная и послушная. 11. Где бабушка? – Она пробует варенье. Ей кажется, что у него кислый вкус. 12. Ты работаешь завтра? – Ещё не знаю. 13. Успех нашей вечеринки зависит от тебя. Не подведи нас! 14. Ты так мало ешь эти дни. Ты что худеешь? Сколько ты вешишь сейчас? 15. Быстрее! Фильм уже начинается! 16. Я встречаю своих родственников в аэропорту завтра утром. Самолет прибывает в восемь. 17. Он не водит машину сам. У него есть шофер. 18. Куда вы едете в зимние каникулы? – Никуда. Мы остаемся в городе. 19. Кому ты покупаешь цветы? – Маме. У неё завтра день рождения. 20. Он прекрасно рисует. Все говорят, что он очень способный. 21. Дай мне знать, если он согласится нам помочь. 22. Почему все смеются? – Фред показывает свои детские фотографии. 23. Вечно ты оставляешь везде свои вещи. Ты такая рассеянная!

Ex. 13. Complete the sentences. Use the Present Simple or the Present Continuous.

1. I ... still ... 2. Here comes ... 3. There goes ... 4. I always ... when I ... 5. I often ... 6. From time to time I ... 7. I seldom ... 8. I never ... 9. I ... every other day (week, month etc.) 10. Usually he ... but these days he ... 11. I will go out tonight if ... 12. We'll go home when ... 13. I will take a rest when ... 14. I'll cook dinner if ... 15. I'll help you if ... 16. I'll be happy if ...

Ex. 14. Do the tasks using the two present tenses.

1. Speak about some facts of your life or your friends' and relatives' lives.
2. Name some universal truths.
3. Name your good and bad habits.
4. Look around and say what is happening around you.
5. Say what your friends and relatives are doing at the moment.
6. Speak about your nearest plans.
7. Criticize somebody. Use *always* or *constantly*.

TOPIC 4. HOLIDAYS

9. THE FUTURE SIMPLE TENSE

9.1. FORMATION

We use the auxiliary verbs *will* (and *shall* for the first person) and the infinitive of the notional verb without the particle *to*, to form the Future Simple tense.

№	person/number	affirmatives	questions	negatives
1	I We	I will go. We will go.	Will I go?	I won't go.
2	You, He, She It, They	You will go. He will go.	Will you go? Will she go?	You won't go. She won't go.

Note:

Only the first person auxiliary *shall* is used **in questions** which mean **suggestions, offers** or **asking for advice**.

<i>Shall we go for a walk?</i>	Пойдем гулять? (=предложение)	<u>вопрос</u> <i>Will we go for a walk?</i>
<i>Who shall I invite?</i>	Кого мне пригласить? (=совет)	<i>Who will I invite?</i>
<i>Shall I read the text?</i>	Мне (надо) читать текст? (=инструкция)	<i>Will I read the text?</i>

9.2. USE

№	We use future simple when we	examples
1	decide to do something at the moment of speaking	<i>We have no bread. I'll go and buy some</i>
2	offer something	<i>I left my pen at home. – I'll give you mine.</i>
3	agree or disagree to do something	<i>Can you give me that book? – OK, I'll bring it. He won't help us. The door won't open. Дверь никак не хочет открываться.</i>
4	promise to do something	<i>I promise I'll visit him tomorrow.</i>
5	ask somebody politely	<i>Will you open the window?</i>
6	suppose that something may happen	<i>I think, he will like such a present.</i>
7	speak about something inevitable	<i>The baby will be born after Christmas</i>

NOTE 1. We use *to be going to*:

1) when we have already **decided** to do something **before**:

I am going to meet him (tomorrow). =Я собираюсь встретиться с ним (завтра).

2) when we **predict** future happenings

and when there's something in the **present situation** that **makes us sure**

Look at these clouds. It's going to rain. It's 8 o'clock. We are going to be late.

NOTE 2. TALKING ABOUT THE FUTURE

Future Simple	Be going to	Present Continuous	Present Simple
on-the-spot decisions <i>It's cold here. I'll go inside.</i>	planned actions or intentions <i>I'm going to meet him today.</i>	fixed arrangements <i>I am meeting him today.</i>	programmes, time-tables <i>The plane arrives at 8.</i>
predictions that may or may not happen <i>Maybe he will win.</i>	there is evidence that something will definitely happen <i>The plane is going to take off</i>		sometimes after <i>hope</i> <i>I hope he comes soon.</i>
offers, promises, requests, refuses, uncontrollable actions <i>I will come soon. Will you help me?</i>			adverbial clauses of time and condition <i>If it rains, we'll stay at home.</i>

JAZZ CHANT

What Are You Gonna Do at Two?

'What are you 'gonna 'do at `two? 'Who are you 'gonna `see? 'What are you 'gonna `do?
 'What are you 'gonna `do? 'What are you 'gonna `say? 'Who are you 'gonna `see?
 'Where are you 'gonna be at `three? 'How are you 'gonna `go? 'Where are you 'gonna `leave?
 'Where are you 'gonna `be? 'Where are you 'gonna `stay? 'Where are you 'gonna `be?

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Put the verb in brackets into the correct form.

1. I hope he (come) back tonight. 2. Look up the program, please. Granny (want) to know when the new series (begin)? 3. you (do) me a favour? 4. Have you decided where to spend your holidays? – Yes, we (fly) to Hawaii. 5. Did you invite Helen? – Oh! I forgot. I (call) her now. 6. I am trying to find out why they have quarrelled, but they (not tell) me. 7. We (have) a housewarming next Sunday. Can you come? 8. Don't worry. I promise I (talk) to him about it. 9. Look at the watch. It's too late. We (miss) our train. 10. I'm sorry I can't join you for lunch tonight. I (meet) my relatives at the airport. 11. The computer (not work) again! 12. I think she (help) us to wash up.

Ex. 2. Put the verb in brackets into the present or future simple.

1. I (leave) him instructions when he (come). 2. If it (rain), come inside. 3. He (want) to know if you (be) at home at the weekend. 4. I wonder when we (see) each other again. 5. If they (need) your advice, they (get) in touch with you. 6. I (tell) you all about it when I (have) time. 7. Ask him when he (return) today. 8. If you (recognize) him, don't show it. 9. She (feel) better after this (be) over. 10. I want to ask her a few questions before she (go away) 11. I'm not sure if they (take) part in tomorrow's meeting. 12. If the weather (not change), we (stay) at home. 13. I can't tell you when they (marry). I hope it (happen) soon. 14. I have no idea when he (arrive) in town. 15. If he (lend) me his laptop, I (type) the essay. 16. Tell Joe to switch off the light before he (fall) asleep. 17. you (miss) him while he (be) on his business trip? 18. I wonder if they (be) on time. 19. If they (be) late he (get) very angry. 20. As soon as I (get) home, I (have) a meal. 21. If we (buy) a country house, we (grow) our own vegetables. 22. You (recognize) my daughter as soon as you (see) her, she's the image of me. 23. If he (come) earlier, he (wait) for me. 24. Life is like a book. Some chapters are sad, some are

happy and some are exciting. But if you never (turn) the page, you never (know) what the next chapter holds.

Ex. 3. Translate into English.

1. Интересно, когда они поженятся. 2. Когда они поженятся, они проведут медовый месяц в Италии. 3. Не забудь выключить свет перед тем, как уйдёшь. 4. Я не знаю, когда мы увидимся снова. 5. Когда тётя Эмили придет навестить нас, я испеку её любимое печенье. 6. Если вы увидите Мэри, попросите её поторопиться. 7. Я думаю, они будут счастливы вместе. 8. Мы собираемся за город в следующие выходные. 9. Если он опоздает, мы уйдём без него. 10. Когда станет темно, мы зажжём свет. 11. Я не уверен, уедут ли они в этом месяце. 12. Пожалуйста, не трогайте ничего до того, как придет полиция. 13. Он не знает, когда начнется фильм. 14. Я позвоню тебе, когда вернусь. 15. Интересно, помогут ли они нам. 16. Не ругай его, если он не сдаст экзамен. 17. Я тебя никогда не забуду.

Ex. 4. Ask no less than 10 questions about the situation: two tag questions (one negative and one positive), a yes/no question, a choice question and some wh-questions.

1. Julia will marry soon. 2. His parents are going to buy a car. 3. Brenda will celebrate Christmas with her friends. 4. Amy will have a birthday party. 5. Her uncle is going to find a new job. 6. Ben will take his exams in January. 7. Her mum is going to the hairdresser's tomorrow. 8. His kids will have a vacation soon. 9. Her family will support her. 10. The New Year is coming.

Dialogue 1. In Prison

Tom: Well. . . To-morrow we're 'going to 'leave this , place!

Fred: Yes. 'What are you 'gonna 'do , first?

Tom: Hmm. . . ~First, I'm 'going to 'rent a `big , car, 'meet my , girlfriend and 'take her to an ex'pensive , restaurant. We're 'gonna have , steak and 'drink cham , pagne. 'What about , you, Fred?

Fred: My , wife's 'gonna 'meet me 'outside the , prison. 'Then we're 'gonna have 'tea with her , mother.

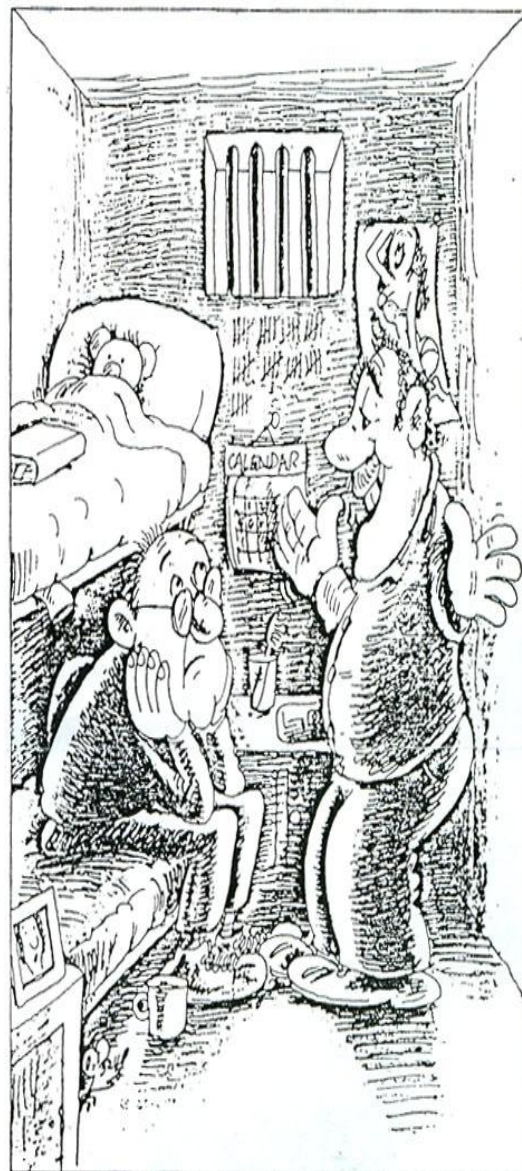
Tom: 'With her , mother! You're , joking!

Fred: 'No, I'm , not. I'm 'going to `work for my .wife's , mother.

Tom: , Really? You're 'not 'gonna 'work for your 'mother-in- , law!

Fred: , Yes. She's 'got a 'little , cafe in , London.

Tom: 'What are you 'gonna 'do `there?



Fred: I'm 'going to 'wash , up.

Tom: ´What! `Wash , up! `I'm .not .gonna , work! I'm 'going to 'have a 'good `time!

Fred: You're , lucky. . . I'm 'going to 'rob a `bank next , week.

Tom: `Why?

Fred: Be'cause I'm `happy in , prison!

Don't wait for the
perfect moment
take the moment
and make it
perfect.

REVISION EXAMINATION TEST

I. Ask questions for additional information.

1. They celebrate Christmas at home. (Who?)
2. They cook it at weekends. (What?)
3. She will have lunch at this café. (When?)
4. A thick brown carpet lies there. (Where?)
5. His sister is snowboarding. (choice)
6. Jane has got online friends. (How many?)
7. Betty studies French. (yes/no)
8. He plays games . (What kind of?)
9. The dogs are very fierce. (Whose?)
10. She goes to the pool. (How often?)
11. He won't take part in the show. (Why?)
12. They often invite people. (Whom?)

II. Ask tag-questions.

1. No one is late today.
2. Somebody has the keys.
3. I am ready.
4. That is your best friend.
5. There aren't any pets in the house.
6. Those are your relatives.
7. Come at four.
8. Let's play chess.
9. Don't call me so early.
10. I am not alone.

III. Make the sentences negative.

1. We meet some of them.
2. I am busy now.
3. Let's talk about it.
4. Everybody is present.
5. She has got a new iphone.
6. I want some help.
7. All the first-year students are here.
8. Turn on the light, please.
9. They have breakfast late.
10. They have internet tablets..

IV. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

1. Where is Mary? – She (chat) with her friends. They often (come) here.
2. Tell him the news when he (return) up.
3. If he (get) up late, he (miss) the train.
4. We (listen) to him now, but we (not hear) what he (say) as we (sit) too far.
5. She (meet) her nephew at the airport tonight. The plane (arrive) in two hours.
6. I wonder if he (have) a birthday party tomorrow.
7. Hurry up! The lesson (begin).

8. I'm tired of her. She always (lose) things!
9. Usually he (wake) up at 7 o'clock, but these days he (wake) up at half past six.
10. I have no idea when they (marry).

V. Choose the correct form.

1. What ... nice day! What ... fine weather! What ... white snow! What ... bright colours!
a) a b) an c) the d) –
2. We spoke to some at the conference.
a) Frenchmen and Germen b) Frenchmans and Germans c) Frenchmen and Germans
3. Let him ... to the party tonight. Ask him not ... alone.
a) go b) to go c) going d) gone
4. The Dutch live in
a) Denmark b) Holland c) Copenhagen d) Berlin
5. ... son is a student now. They are very proud of him.
a) The Stewarts' b) The Stewart's c) The Stewarts d) Stewarts'
6. ... a black cat, but ... tail is white. These are grey cats but ... tails are white too.
a) it's b) its c) their d) it
7. He is a ... man, rather shy and a good listener. He is ... strict with his children.
a) quite b) quiet c) quit d) quete
8. Our country house is ... walk from the station.
a) a ten-minutes b) in ten minutes c) ten-minute's d) ten minutes'
9. All his money ... in the bank. This ... good news.
a) is b) are c) are being d) is being
10. The police already here. Some policemen ... standing at the front door.
a) is b) are c) is being d) are being
11. I know the ... of these ...
a) chiefs b) chieves c) chiefes d) cheefs
a) companis b) companys c) companies d) companyes
12. Let ... introduce a friend of ... to you. He is also ... colleague.
a) my b) mine c) my one d) me
13. We haven't got ... newspapers here, but there are ... magazines in the next room.
a) some b) none c) no d) any
14. We promised to do it They don't want to do it
a) myself b) ourself c) themselves d) ourselves
15. How many kittens have you got? – We have ... cats at home. ... has.
a) no b) none c) nothing d) no one
16. There are no ... students in ... room 306. All ... students of our group are in ... canteen now.
a) a b) an c) the d) -
17. My dog is more intelligent than dog is very silly.
a) her b) hers c) her one d) hers one
18. He is ... on the sofa and watching TV. His wife is ... the table for dinner.
a) lieing b) laying c) laing d) lying
19. a) He comes often to this park. b) He comes to this park often.
c) He often comes to this park. d) Often he comes to this park.
20. The ... is between Europe and Africa.
a) Mediterranean b) Black Sea c) English Channel d) Sahara Desert
21. It's ... hot here in summer. It's very ... in the evenings.
a) quite b) quiet c) quit d) quete

22. Her job is very boring. She ... documents at the office. Now she ... some lease contracts.
a) study b) studies c) is studing d) is studying
23. Their ... are in danger. They ... too close to the volcano. Harry ... rather far from it.
a) lifes b) lives c) leaves d) live
24. What .. good advice! What ... bad work! What ... good job! What ... great progress! What ... life!
a) a b) an c) the d) –
25. ... her hair blonde or chestnut? Does she wear ... long or short?
a) are b) is c) do d) does
a) them b) they c) it d) its
26. Do ... of them come to this club? Does ... know their address?
a) some b) any c) anyone d) somewhere
27. John Lennon is an ... and Yoko Ono is a ...
a) English b) the British b) Englishman c) Irish
a) Japanese b) Japan c) Japanesean d) his wife
28. Here (come) the teacher. He (look) angrily at us.
a) is coming b) comes c) come d) will come
a) is looking b) looks d) look e) will look

TEST KEY

I. Ask questions.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Who celebrates Christmas at home? | 7. Does she study French at school or with a tutor? |
| 2. What do they cook at weekends? | 8. What kind of games does he play? |
| 3. When will her parents have lunch? | 9. Whose dogs are very fierce? |
| 4. Where does the carpet lie? | 10. How often does she go to the pool? |
| 5. Is she snowboarding alone or with her friends? | 11. Why won't he take part in the show? |
| 6. How many online friends has Jane got? | 12. Whom do they often invite? |

II. Ask tag-questions.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. No one is late today, are they? | 6. Those are your relatives, aren't they? |
| 2. Somebody has the keys, don't they? | 7. Come at 4, will you /won't you/ can you/could you? |
| 3. I am ready, aren't I? | 8. Let's play chess, shall we? |
| 4. That is your best friend, isn't it? | 9. Don't call me so early, will you? |
| 5. There aren't any pets in the house, are there? | 10. I am not at alone, am I? |

III. Make the sentences negative.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. We meet none of them. | 7. None of the first-year students are here. |
| 2. I am not busy now. | 8. Don't turn on the light, please. |
| 3. Let's not talk about it. | 9. They don't have breakfast late. |
| 4. Nobody / No one is present. | 10. He has no friends. / He doesn't have friends. |
| 5. She hasn't got a new television. | |
| 6. I don't want any help. | |

IV. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

- Where is Mary? – She **is chatting** with her friends. They often **come** here.
- Tell him the news when he **returns**.
- If he **gets** up late, he **will miss** the train.
- We **are listening** to him now, but we **don't hear** what he **is saying** as we **are sitting** too far.
- She **is meeting** her nephew at the airport tonight. The plane **arrives** in two hours.

6. I wonder if he **will have** a birthday party.
7. Hurry up! The lesson **is beginning**.
8. I'm tired of her. She **is** always **losing** things!
9. Usually he **wakes** up at 7 o'clock, but these days he **is waking** up at half past six.
10. I have no idea when they **will marry**.

V. Choose the correct form.

1. What **a** nice day! What **_** fine weather! What **_** white snow! What **_** bright colours!
a) a b) an c) the d) –
2. We spoke to some at the conference.
a) Frenchmen and Germen b) Frenchmans and Germans c) **Frenchmen and Germans**
3. Let him **go** to the party tonight. Ask him not **to go** alone.
a) go b) to go c) going d) gone
4. The Dutch live in
a) Denmark **b) Holland** c) Copenhagen d) Berlin
5. **The Stewarts'** son is a student now. **The Stewarts** are very proud of him.
a) The Stewarts' b) The Stewart's c) The Stewarts d) Stewarts'
6. **It's** a black cat, but **its** tail is white. These are grey cats but **their** tails are white too.
a) it's b) its c) their d) it
7. He is a **quiet** man, rather shy and a good listener. He is **quite** strict with his children.
a) quite b) quiet c) quit d) quete
8. Our country house is ... walk from the station.
a) a ten-minutes b) in ten minutes c) ten-minute's d) **ten minutes'**
9. All his money **is** in the bank. This **is** good news.
a) **is** b) are c) are being d) is being
10. The police **are** already here. Some policemen **are** standing at the front door.
a) is **b) are** c) is being d) are being
11. I know the ... of these ...
a) **chiefs** b) chieves c) chiefes d) cheefs
a) companis b) companys **c) companies** d) companyes
12. Let **me** introduce a friend of **mine** to you. He is also **my** colleague.
a) my b) mine c) my one d) me
13. We haven't got **any** newspapers here, but there are **some** magazines in the next room.
a) some b) none c) no d) any
14. We promised to do it **ourselves**. They don't want to do it **themselves**.
a) theirselves b) ourself c) themselves d) ourselves
15. How many kittens have you got? – **None**. We have **no** cats at home. **No one** has.
a) no b) none c) nothing d) no one
16. There are no **_** students in **_** room 306. All **the** students of our group are in **the** canteen now.
a) a b) an c) the d) -
17. My dog is more intelligent than **hers**. **Her** dog is very silly.
a) her b) hers c) her one d) hers one
18. He is **lying** on the sofa and watching TV. His wife is **laying** the table for dinner.
a) lieing b) laying c) laing d) lying
19. a) He comes often to this park. b) He comes to this park often.
c) He often comes to this park. d) Often he comes to this park.
20. The ... is between Europe and Africa.
a) Mediterranean b) Black Sea c) English Channel d) Sahara Desert
21. It's **quite** hot here in summer. It's very **quiet** in the evenings.
a) quite b) quiet c) quit d) quete
22. Her job is very boring. She **studies** documents at the office. Now she **is studying** some lease contracts.

- a) study b) studies c) is studing d) is studying
23. Their **lives** are in danger. They **live** too close to the volcano. Harry **lives** rather far from it.
a) lifes b) lives c) leaves d) live
24. What _ good advice! What _ bad work! What **a** good job! What _ great progress! What **a** life!
a) a b) an c) the d) –
25. **Is** her hair blonde or chestnut? Does she wear **it** long or short?
a) are **b) is** c) do d) does
a) them b) they **c) it** d) its
26. Do **any** of them come to this club? Does **anyone** know their address?
a) some b) any c) anyone d) somewhere
27. John Lennon is an ... and Yoko Ono is a ...
a) English b) the British **b) Englishman** c) Irish
a) Japanese b) Japan c) Japanesean d) his wife
28. Here ... the teacher. He ... angrily at us.ow.
a) is coming b) **comes** c) come d) will come
a) **is looking** b) looks d) look e) will look

SUPPLEMENT 1. READING RULES

FOUR TYPES OF STRESSED SYLLABLES

syllable type letter	I	II	III	IV
	open syllable	closed syllable	vowel + r (+consonant)	vowel + r + vowel
A [eɪ]	[eɪ] fable fate	[æ] fat	[ɑ:] far farm	[ɛə] fare daring
exceptions	[æ] have, habit [e] any, many	[ɑ:] example [eɪ] chamber		[ɑ:] are
E [i:]	[i:] me mete	[e] met	[ɜ:] her term	[ɪə] here hero
exceptions	[e] medal, very (in two-syllable words)	[ɪ] England, English	[ɑ:] clerk	[ɛə] where, there [ɜ:] were
I [aɪ]	[aɪ] hi pine	[ɪ] pin	[ɜ:] sir firm	[aɪə] fire firing
exceptions	[ɪ] give, live city, limit (two syllables)	climb [klaɪm]		
O [ɜʊ]	[ɜʊ] no note	[ɒ] not	[ɔ:] nor north	[ɔ:] more snoring
exceptions	[u:] who, whose, lose, do	folk [fɜʊk], off [ɔ:f]		
U [ju:]	[u:] [ju:] flu duke	[ʌ] cut	[ɜ:] fur turn	[(j)ʊə] sure during
exceptions	busy ['bɪzɪ]	usually after p,b: [ʊ] push, bull		bury ['berɪ]
Y [waɪ]	[aɪ] by type	[ɪ] gym	[ɜ:] Byrd	[aɪə] tyre tyrant
NOTE	When the stressed vowel is followed by double r , it is short like in the closed syllable		[æ] carry; [e] cherry; [ɪ] squirrel; [ɒ] sorry; [ʌ] hurry.	

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Distribute the words into four parts according to the type of the syllable.

Mare, smart, hire, gym, dime, bake, cut, cur, cure, hurt, lab, dome, nor, job, type, cry, bell, white, we, him, file, rhyme, myrtle, gas, here, fare, third, cot, data, darts, rob, robe, nude, photo, nut, hi, crane, navy, desk, them, theme, hot, wake, dare, pick, jerk, lore, fir, fire, stole, hit, torn, rust, no, yes.

open syllable.....

.....

closed syllable.....

.....

third type of syllable.....

.....

fourth type of syllable

WORD STRESS

No	position	the stress falls on	stressed vowel	examples	exceptions
TWO-SYLLABLE WORDS					
1	in most words	the first syllable '[1][2]		'city, 'model, 'wonder, 'circus, 'follow	ho'tel, o'bey, ma'ture, sup'ply
2	with prefixes: a-, ad-, be-, de-, ex-, com-, con-, cor-, for-; re-.	the second syllable [1]'[2]		a'muse, ad'vise, be'gin, de'fend, ex'pect, com'plain, con'tain, cor'rect, for'give, re'sult	'context, 'extract <u>but:</u> to ex'tract 'exile, etc
3	when the prefix re- means «repeat»	both syllables '[1]'[2]		're'write ['ri:'rait] or ,re'write	

Read the words. Mind the stress.

Ex. 2

abstain, abroad, admit, advise, advance, attract, attack, attach, attend, appear, approach, appoint, apply, achieve, assume, accuse, amuse, agree, assist, avoid, annoy, announce, allow, amount, account, arouse, arrive, arrest, address, affair, acute;

begin, become, believe, belong, betray, because, besides,
concern, contain, conclude, construct, confirm, consist,
command, commit, complain, correct, corrupt;

defend, depend, demand, detain, defeat, describe, depress, depict, devote, debate, detect, deceive,
deserve, delight, decide, destroy, deny, delay, declare,
expect, express, explain, expose, explode, extend, expand, expire, explore,
forbear, forbid, forget, forgive, forsake;

result, report, regret, remind, rely, reply, respect, reflect, reject, retreat, reform, resort, receive,
relieve, request, require, regard, refresh, reduce, reserve, remain, repair, restore, resist, react, refuse,
repeat, revise, reproach, recite, rewrite, reread, reopen, retranslate, rebuild, recharge, re-elect, refill.

No	position	the stress falls on	stressed vowel	examples	exceptions
THREE- AND FOUR-SYLLABLE WORDS					
4	in the open and closed syllable	the third syllable from the end '[3][2][1]	the stressed vowel is short	[æ] 'family [ɒ] 'popular,	u = [ju:] in the open syllable 'funeral
5	with added grammar inflexions	[4]'[3][2][1] [4]'[3][2][1][ed]		'demonstrate, 'demonstrated, 'demonstrating	
6	in the third type of syllable		the stressed vowel is long	'pharmacy [ɑ:]	

Ex. 3

dominate, demonstrate, complicate, confiscate, advertise, recognize, criticize, mineral, criminal, cultural, general, radical, typical, hospital, terrible, medical, sensible, national, factory, sympathy, liberty, ministry, industry, memory, enemy, tendency, colony, contrary, gallery, innocent, incident, benefit, regiment, interest, invalid, instrument, diplomat, president, ambulance, popular, primitive, politics, optimist, pessimist.

Ex. 4

economy, ecology, monopoly, apology, humanity, formality, stability, publicity, ability, facilities, activities, responsible, invincible, political, professional, particular, capitulate, commemorate, intensify, incompetent, conservative, eliminate, experiment, development.

No	position	the stress falls on	stressed vowel	examples	exceptions
WORDS WITH THE SUFFIX «-IC»					
7	in the words with two and three syllables	the last but one syllable [1]'[2] [ic]	the stressed vowel is short	[ɒ] 'com <u>i</u> c, his'tor <u>i</u> c [ɪ] spe'c <u>i</u> f <u>i</u> c	
8	in four -syllable words	can have a <u>secondary</u> stress on the first syllable	both stressed vowels are short	,demo'crat <u>i</u> c [e],[æ] ,eco'nom <u>i</u> c [ɪ], [ɒ]	
WORDS WITH THE SUFFIX «-ION»					
9	usually consist of four or five syllables	the last but one syllable + can have a <u>secondary</u> stress on the fourth syllable from the end ,[4][3]'[2][1] [5],[4][3]'[2][1]	the stressed vowel in the open syllable before -ion is read like in the alphabet	,dele'g <u>a</u> tion ,revo'l <u>u</u> tion con,gratu'l <u>a</u> tion	satisfaction [,sætɪs'fækʃ <u>ɪ</u> n] i =[ɪ] ,compe't <u>i</u> tion 'telev <u>i</u> s <u>i</u> on [ˈtelɪvɪz <u>ɪ</u> n]

Ex. 5

historic, specific, comic, fanatic, clinic, idiotic, classic, synthetic, traffic, democratic, economic, systematic, atomic, diplomatic, patriotic, realistic, terrific, pathetic, cynic, rhetoric, patronymic, hectic, erotic, hysteric, static, dogmatic, melodic, dramatic, erratic, photographic, hypnotic, ethic, pragmatic, acrobatic, geographic, problematic, anatomic, exotic, despotic, mechanic, astronomic, botanic, agnostic, sceptic, mystic.

Ex. 6

delegation, operation, irritation, indignation, domination, destination, decoration, transformation, conversation, population, complication, demonstration, transportation, relaxation, reputation, generation, cancellation, compensation, opposition, competition, corporation, satisfaction, adaptation, situation, constitution, television, congratulation, accommodation, determination, interpretation, examination, negotiation, imagination, consideration.

III. CONSONANTS

№	position	pronunciation	example	exception
1	BT (at the end)	[t]	debt, doubt	
2	C before A, O, U and before consonants	[k]	cat, come, cut, act, class, accuse	
3	C before E, I, Y	[s]	cell, city, cycle, accept	[ʃ] in the suffix CIAN musician [mju:ˈzɪʃn]
4	CH in Greek words in French words	[tʃ] [k] [ʃ]	chat school, ache, chemistry chef, chic, chute, Michigan, Chicago [ʃɪˈkɑ:gɜ]	choir [kwaɪə] sandwich ['sænwɪdʒ]
5	DG	[dʒ]	edge, bridge, judge	
6	G before E, I, Y	[dʒ]	gentleman, gin, gym	[g] get, girl, give, gift, geese etc.
7	G before A, O, U	[g]	gate, got, gut	
8	GH at the beginning after vowels	[g] isn't pronounced	ghost bright, thought	
9	GN at the beginning and at the end	[n]	gnat [næt] sign [saɪn]	

Read the words.

Ex. 7. B, C, D

amber, cell, chat, witch, cherry, doubt, city, Chi'cago (Fr.), calendar, dagger, cylinder, click, fact, ma'chine (Fr.), ache, chest, soldier, circle, candy, cage, cliff, cycle, Michigan, charm, charity, badge, church, absent, school, chute (Fr.), cinema, orchestra, sandwich, chart, cite, debt, cent, cart, chic (Fr.), chick, act, character, café.

Ex. 7. G, H

gift, gas, finger, gentle, gym, guilt, grand, hike, begin, gin, god, gulp, together, legal, rage, rag, game, harm, honest, hay, hour, choir, gum, ghost, Harry, grace, give, gypsy, gent, gaze, chase, chin, latch, gag, heir, gap, guard, chef, check, germ, honour, gulf, gender, hat, chemical (Gr.), page, bench, ghetto, garlic, catch, magic, ditch, peg, nag, age.

№	position	pronunciation	example	exception
10	NG at the end and with added inflexions sometimes in degrees of comparison	[ŋ] [ŋg] [ŋg]	sing, singer, singing English, language, angry, finger longer, longest	
11	H sometimes	[h] isn't pronounced	hello, honey hour, honest, heir [ɛə]	
12	KN	[n]	know, knee	

13	NK	[ŋk]	bank, ink	
14	L in modals and auxiliary verbs in the combinations ALM, ALF, ALV, ALK	isn't pronounced	could [kʊd] would [wʊd] should [ʃʊd] calm, half, halves, walk	
15	MB at the end MN at the end	[m]	limb, bomb autumn	
16	PH	[f]	phone	nephew, Stephen ['nevju:] ['sti:vɪn]
17	PS	[s]	psychology [saɪ'kɒlədʒi]	
18	RH	[r]	rhyme	

Ex. 9. J, K, L, M, N

damn, knit, numb, plumb, column, tank, knave, thumb solemn, kingdom, chink, knapsack, knot, kettle, keg, knock, tang, frank, prick, fang, hymn, lamb, sting, rank, nickel, Maggy, crumb, tangle, skirt, climb, language, riddle, idle, sank, bomb, smack, magnet, knight, sink, limb, kite, jail, sack, link, jazz, Marge, term, nanny, plank, navigation, jade, knob, literacy, maple, sang, hanger;

Ex. 10. P, R

parry, phlox, rhomb, parrot, Phil, piano, pharmacy, rhapsody, 'dolphin, photograph, phoney, rhythm, rhyme, puppet, plantation, ripple, retort, phrase, poplar, patch, phantom, phobia, prison, span, rattle, nymph, rare, rear, real, phase, Pete, plump, prepare, pride;

№	position	pronunciation	example	exception
19	S at the beginning before and after voiceless consonants in the prefix DIS	[s]	sit, snack, son ask, east, books disagree, disobey	sure [ʃʊə] или [ʃɔ:] scissors ['sɪzəz], possess [pə'zɛs]
20	S between the vowels after vowels and voiced consonants	[z]	easy, busy, days, bags, tables	island ['aɪlənd] aisle [aɪl]
21	SH	[ʃ]	shine, short	
22	STLE	[sl]	castle, whistle	
23	TH in structural words, between vowels	[θ] [ð]	thin, teeth, theme this, that, with breathe	Thomas, Thames ['tɒməs] [temz]
24	W before vowels	[w]	we, want, wig	answer ['ɑ:nɜ], sword [sɔ:d]
25	WH before O	[w] [h]	white, what, which who, whom, whole	
26	WR	[r]	write, wrong	
27	X before stressed vowels	[ks] [gz]	exercise, exit, exciting e'xam, e'xist	luxury ['lʌkjəri] anxious ['æŋkjəs] Xerox ['ziərəks]

Ex. 11. S, T

rashly, salary, spelt, the, there, ship, satisfaction, their, thumb, fashion, conversation, gossip, silver, rattle, confusion, restore, sob, tartan, occasion, depth, shark, essence, Thomas, trap, castle, addition, bustle, tiptoe, score, sinister, tickle, resist, permission, thirst, thy, Arthur, scheme, temptation, sense, success, tolerant, theme, these, Thames, thatch, thee (=you), share, splash, then.

Ex. 12. V, W, X, Z

wreck, auxiliary, vowel, ward, whose, 'extract, woe, 'exit, fizzy, wrestle, except, verb, witty, size, whip, water, exact, mix, whole, zest, extreme, excite, zip, e'xotic, dwarf, 'zodiac, who, wring, excuse, whale, zebra, wrangler, Rex, exam, 'exile, sword, Virgo, vase, exercise, zero, whom, Eve, wink, wrist, expression, zombie, Max.

IV. DIGRAPHS (two vowel letters which are read as one vowel sound)

No	position	pronunciation	examples	exceptions
1	AI / AY	[eɪ]	nail, hay	[e] said, says plait [plæt], aisle [aɪl]
2	EA often before D, TH	[i:]	sea, read, leader, clean	[ɪə] idea, ideal, theatre, real
		[e]	health, wealth, heavy, death, meant, deaf, cleanliness, head, leather, pleasure etc.	
		[eɪ]	steak, great, break;	
3	EE	[i:]	reed	
4	EI / EY	[eɪ]	veil, eight, grey	[i:] key; [aɪ] either, neither height [haɪt] leisure ['leɪʒə]
	CEI / SEI	[si:]	ceiling, deceive, seize	
5	IE in the middle	[i:]	believe	[e] friend, diet ['daɪət]
6	EU	[ju:]	neutral	
7	AU	[ɔ:]	autumn, taught	[ɑ:] aunt, laugh draught [dra:ft] sausage ['sɒsɪdʒ]
8	OA	[ɜʊ]	coat, boat, load	[ɔ:] broad
9	OI / OY	[ɔɪ]	boil, toy	
10	OO OOK	[u:]	soon	[ʊ] foot, stood, wood, good [ʌ] blood, flood
		[ʊk]	book	
11	OU	[aʊ]	about, loud, drought [draʊt]	[ɜʊ] shoulder, though cough [kɒf],
		[ʌ]	country, double tough [tʌf], rough [rʌf]	
	often in French words	[u:]	group, through [θru:]	[ɔ:] bought, thought
12	UI	[ju:]	suit, juice, nuisance	suite [swi:t]
		[ɪ]	build, guilt, quilt	
13	Y before vowels	[j]	yes, yard	

Ex. 13.

lain, double, hay, yard, foam, steak, poach, ought, broad, auction, look, aunt, yes, caution, stout, toast, laugh, vain, soap, cough, soup, cook, suit, suite, great, yet, drain, pail, either, sea, deceive, south, blood, weather, feather, roam, plait, loaf, said, shout, lead, stair, zoo, says, Audrey, gee, would, meadow, deaf, key, rough, toad, flood, out, boo, Taurus, breast, relief, cheat, doubt.

Ex. 14.

dean, bait, cause, doom, real, boast, break, daisy, death, deal, loud, ceiling, greet, lean, grey, dread, yell, height, greedy, sauce, build, beach, tough, treat, count, country, pause, should, taught, through, though, rook, road, shoulder, receive, seize, reign, draught, drought, brought, Yule, haunt, pound, moo, ouch, juice, joy, yield, wheel, fool, trout, preacher, sa'loon, neither, health, toil, friend.

V. DIGRAPHS + R

Nº	position	pronunciation	examples	exceptions
1	AIR / EIR	[ɛə]	chair, their	
2	EAR at the end in the middle	[ɪə] [ɜ:]	dear learn	[ɛə] pear, bear, wear, tear; year [jɪə] or [jɜ:]; [ɑ:] heart; beard [bɪəd]
3	EER	[ɪə]	deer	
4	OAR	[ɔ:]	board	
5	OOR	[ɔ:] [ʊə]	door poor	
6	OUR	[aʊə] [ɔ:] [ʊə]	hour four tour	

Ex. 15.

hoar, hour, pearl, earnest, beard, fear, hear, heard, heart, pour, beautiful, bear, beer, sneer, door, choice, sheer, year, four, tear, ear, earn, air, spear, heir, their, grief, near, dear, clear, deer, goal, coarse, appear, hoarse, stair, search, dairy, chair, boar, boor, cheer, pear, dreary, throat, retreat, our, wear, poor, sour, oar, roar, tourist, steer.

VI. CONSONANTS + VOWELS

Nº	position	pronunciation	examples	exceptions
CONSONANTS + A				
1	WA, QUA in closed syllables	[ɒ]	watch, quantity	[æ] wax, swam, wag, quack
2	WAR, QUAR	[ɔ:]	ward, quarter	
3	ASS ASK AST ASP AFT ATH AN + consonant (sometimes) ALM ALF ALV } L isn't pronounced	[ɑ:]	pass ask fast grasp after path plant, answer, chance, demand palm [pɑ:m] half [hɑ:f], calves [kɑ:vz]	[æ] mass, ass, lass, passive, classic [æ] gather

№	position	pronunciation	examples	exceptions
4	ALL ALT ALK (L isn't pronounced) AW AL+ consonant	[ɔ:]	ball salt chalk [fɔ:k] awful always, also	[æ] shall, rally, metallic, ally [æ] altitude
5	ANGE ASTE often at the end	[eɪ]	change waste	
CONSONANTS + E				
6	EW	[ju:]	new	sew [sɜʊ]
CONSONANTS + I				
7	IND	[aɪnd]	find	[ɪ] wind, cinders
8	ILD	[aɪld]	child	[ɪ] children, wilderness
9	IGN at the end	[aɪn]	sign	
10	IGH	[aɪ]	high, light	
CONSONANTS + O				
11	OLL	[ɜʊl]	roll	doll [dɒl]
12	OLD	[ɜʊld]	cold	
13	OST (sometimes)	[ɜʊst]	most	
14	O before M, N, V, TH (sometimes)	[ʌ]	some, son, love, mother	[u:] whom, move; [ɒ] shone, gone, moth; [ɜʊ] home
15	WOR	[wɜ:]	work	
16	OW unstressed at the end	[aʊ] [ɜʊ] [ɜʊ]	now, town low, blown pillow	
CONSONANTS + U				
	GU+ vowel at the beginning	[g]	guide, guard	GU+ vowel at the beginning
	QU	[kw]	quick	QU
	QUE at the end of French words	[k]	unique [ju:'ni:k] technique [tek'ni:k]	QUE at the end of French words

Ex. 16. (consonants + A)

swamp, swam, raft, ward, vast, call, shall, shawl, pal, pale, fall, pass, raw, mass, chance, branch, passive, wand, calm, quarter, lass, saw, mall, psalm, swan, wake, mask, waste, strange, half, tall, squash, lance, swallow, danger, mast, must, wasp, quarry, warn, awkward, fast, dance, ass, balm, haste, example, altitude, bath, baths, bathe, last, draft, palm, stalk, gather, paw, awe, wax, range, metallic, wag, classic, class, Baltic, ball, calf, change.

Ex. 17.

few, sew, now, sow, guess, chew, find, snow, sign, signal, signature, remind, news, dew, crew, father, mother, moth, host, mild, guilt, grant, bind, path, right, roll, son, guard, quick, sold, technique, hawk, behind, sigh, kind, hold, below, war, work, all, dawn, down, guest, wind (2), design, howl, hind, hint, slight, fold, poll, guide, mosque, move, dove, stove, love, mow, crow, bald, bold, fond, worth.

VII. VOWELS IN UNSTRESSED POSITION

№	position	pronunciation	examples	exceptions
1	A	[ə]	library, alive, delegate	
2	before L at the end	isn't pronounced	signal ['sɪgnl]	
3	AGE at the end ACE /ATE at the end of nouns and adjectives ATE at the end of verbs	[ɪdʒ] [əs]/[ət] or [ɪs]/ [ɪt] [eɪt]	courage ['kʌrɪdʒ]; palace, delicate to delegate	garage ['gærɑ:ʒ]
4	E	[ɪ]	pocket, escape	cafe ['kæfeɪ]
5	in the combinations EL /EN at the end	isn't pronounced	seven ['sevən], parcel ['pɑ:səl]	
6	I	[ɪ]	rabbit, invite	
7	in IL at the end	isn't pronounced	evil ['i:vəl]	
8	O	[ə]	pilot	
9	O at the end	[ʊ]	potato	
10	in OL / ON at the end	isn't pronounced	lesson ['lesn]	
11	U	[ə]	difficult	
12	U + consonant + mute E at the end	[ju:]	institute	minute ['mɪnɪt]
13	Y at the end of verbs Y, EY, LY at the end of adjectives, adverbs and nouns	[aɪ] [ɪ]	to classify, to multiply, to analyse pretty, city, early monkey	ally ['ælaɪ]
14	digraphs: in the suffix OUS AI / EI	[ə] [ə] or [ɪ]	famous mountain, foreign	
IN THE NOUN AND ADJECTIVE SUFFIXES				
15	AR ER / RE OR /OUR UR / YR	[ə]	collar, teacher, theatre doctor, colour Arthur, martyr	
16	SION SSION SURE SSURE	[ʒn] [ʃn] [ʃn] [zə] [ʃə]	illusion, pension expression pleasure pressure	
17	TURE TION TIAL	[tʃə] [ʃn] [ʃəl]	picture revolution essential	

Ex. 18. Transcribe the words and read them. Mind unstressed vowels.

meagre, grammar, kindness, partial, decision, mansion, mention, measure, nature, melon, devil, donkey, photo, motor, motto, bulbous, money, multitude, minute, mixture, distant, metre, author, substitute, parlour, honey, afraid, beggar, likeness, rapid, mirror, marrow, director, manager, lifeless,

division, aggression, treasure, sure, puncture, even, coffee, cafe.

REVISION EXERCISES

Ex. 19. Read the words. Mind the stress.

correct, historic, operation, galaxy, satisfaction, tendency, funeral, synthetic, comic, determination, ecology, nature, natural, nation, national, international, typical, advert, advertise, advertisement, cleanliness, unique, universe, university, generation, realistic, amuse, result, television, intensify, experiment, apologize, industry, industrial, logic.

Ex. 20. Read the words.

choir, sandwich, suite, cleanliness, chute, answer, sword, sausage, height, nephew, sew, donkey, monkey, year, were, where, wear, biscuit, busy, clerk, engineer, journalist, housewife, lawyer, drawing, photographer, auxiliary, soldier, salesman, usual, clothes, cloths, colleague, college, south, southern, course, cause, close, to close, Santa Claus, fiancé, handsome, moustache, surprise, eyebrows, image, magazine, hotel, Christmas, desert, dessert, house, houses, cough, though.

Ex. 21. Read the words.

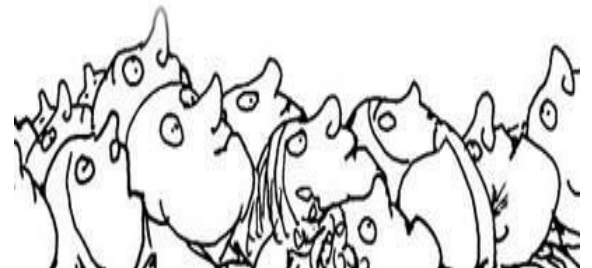
Chinese, Portuguese, Arabic, Tokyo, Japan, Japanese, Oslo, Polish, Egypt, Danish, Sweden, Swedish, Spanish, Switzerland, the Sahara, the Mediterranean, Australia, the Thames, Panama, the Suez Canal, the Channel, the Baltic Sea, the Canaries, the Bahamas, the Himalayas, the Bermudas, the Caucasus, the Crimea, the Urals, Helsinki, Europe, Asia.

Ex. 22. Find the odd man out.

1. most host cost toast coast;
2. great threat head said breath;
3. aren't aunt laugh heart fault;
4. foam soul shoulder broad load;
5. bull bush push pull fuss;
6. chain chute cheat chief chat;
7. call laugh raft draught rough;
8. tough rough love cough tuft;
9. steak make straight eight height;
10. through brought caught naughty raw;
11. soldier gym gift jacket wages;
12. steer real seal here fear;
13. there where were their bear;
14. heir hour honesty honour hostel;
15. few sew view suit flute;
16. fable table able baffle maple;
17. low cow crown shout bough;
18. phone pheasant Philip nephew philosophy;
19. chaste paste fast haste waist;
20. oven love move glove dove;
21. plead suite heed mete build;
22. good foot boot wood stood;
23. flood food hood soot toot;
24. was wax wall what wand;
25. water ought autumn sausage quartet;
26. folk coke oak balk soak;
27. worm ward word work worth;
28. these geese rose ease advise;
29. tour moor sour bluer sure;
30. beauty newt through cute foot;
31. year were sir fur pear;
32. Thames taste tear castle Thomas;
33. whistle thistle castle cattle bustle;

THE VOICE

There is a voice inside of you
That whispers all day long,
"I feel that this is right for me,
I know that *this* is wrong."
No teacher, preacher, parent, friend
Or wise man can decide
What's right for you—just listen to
The voice that speaks inside.



34. single singer longer English finger;

SUPPLEMENT 2. LISTENING & COMPREHENSION

Listen and do the tasks.

INTRODUCTORY COURSE

UNIT 1

FRIENDS OR STRANGERS

Are these people friends or strangers? Write F for *friends* and S for *strangers*.

C1	C2	C3	C4	C5	C6

UNIT 2

THE SMUGGLER

Mark the sentences as true, false or not given in the text.

1. Sam Louis was a customs officer.
2. He worked in a big and busy border town.
3. He had a brother and a sister.
4. Once a week he met Draper who was driving an expensive car.
5. When asked about his job, Draper laughed and said he was a smuggler.
6. When Sam retired he went to Bermuda for his holiday.
7. One day Sam met Draper in the hotel bar.
8. Draper didn't recognize Sam.
9. Draper lived in a luxurious house.
10. Sam was curious if Draper was really a smuggler.
11. Draper said he had smuggled drugs.

UNIT 3

WHAT DO YOU DO?

Who are these people talking to? Choose from the list of professions.

doctor, accountant, police officer, driver, waiter, bank clerk, teacher, secretary, babysitter

C1	C2	C3	C4	C5	C6

UNIT 4

BLUNDER

Choose the correct answer.

- 1) After having some art classes Sebastian
a) left the bank b) visited some famous art galleries c) realized that he only enjoyed painting
- 2) Sebastian painted
1) women portraits 2) in a classic manner 3) in a modern manner
- 3) In the bank Sebastian sometimes had to deal with a man who was
a) the owner of a picture shop b) a real artist c) an art critic
- 4) Sebastian invited the man to his home
a) to know his opinion about his pictures b) to show him one of his pictures c) to sell him his studio
- 5) A happy look appeared on the face of the visitor when he saw

- a) Sebastian b) Sebastian's pictures c) the place where Sebastian cleaned the paint off his brushes

UNIT 5

AN ACCIDENT

Put these events from the story into the correct order 1-6.

- a. They all ran up the beach as fast as possible.
- b. They played with a dolphin for a long time.
- c. Jenny started swimming for the beach.
- d. Andy and Tom followed Jenny.
- e. They saw a fin.
- f. Jenny explored an underwater cave.

UNIT 6

THE FALLING COW

TASK 1 Listen to the news item and mark the sentences as true or false.

1. The man was fishing when a cow fell from the sky.
2. The cow fell into the water far from the boat.
3. His insurance company believed his story.
4. The cow had been thrown from an Air Force airplane.
5. The American Embassy bought the fisherman a new boat.

TASK 2 Listen to the conversation and choose the best answer, a, b or c.

- 1) What does Bob say about the news story?
 - a. Most people will believe it.
 - b. He doesn't believe it.
 - c. He likes the story.
- 2) What does Jemma feel about the story?
 - a. It must be made up.
 - b. It's amusing.
 - c. It may be true.
- 3) Bob thinks that perhaps the fisherman
 - a. fell asleep
 - b. had no fish on board his boat
 - c. pretended the cow fell so that he could get the money for his boat
- 4) What is Bob going to do this summer?
 - a. go on a sailing holiday
 - b. go swimming in the Caspian Sea
 - c. buy a new sailing boat

TASK 3 Listen to *The Octopus's Garden*, a song by Ringo Star, and answer the questions.

1. Where does the singer want to be?
2. What would he ask his friends to do?
3. What would they all do beneath the waves?

UNIT 7

POLAR BEARS

Mark the sentences as true or false.

1. Zoos are big enough for bears.
2. Bears become mentally and physically disturbed in the cages.

3. Bears are hunters, explorers, they roam for long distances in their natural environment.
4. Polar bears are an endangered species.

UNIT 8

CATS

Match the statements (1-7) with the speakers (A–G).

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. I grew up together with my cat. | 5. Cats are most beautiful creatures. |
| 2. Each cat has a character of its own. | 6. My cat understands me like no one else. |
| 3. Cats are easy to take care of. | 7. Cats can make great company. |
| 4. Cats are very independent. | |

TOPIC 1. GETTING ACQUAINTED

UNIT 9

HOW DO YOU MEET AND GREET (Great Britain)

Listen to Greg's answers and match the letters and the numbers.

I. What do people do when they meet in his country?

- | | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 1. shake hands with each other | 5. kiss each other on the cheeks |
| 2. put their hand on the other person's shoulder | 6. kiss each other on the lips |
| 3. bow | 7. wave to each other |
| 4. hug each other | |

A. it's quite common in the family and with good friends **B.** girlfriends and boyfriends or couples do it
C. very common **D.** quite common **E.** sometimes **F.** some people do it to their friends **G.** never in everyday life

II. How does he greet these people?

A. good friends (male) **B.** good friends (female) **C.** acquaintances **D.** older neighbours
E. somebody important (his boss) **F.** his mother **G.** his father **H.** his small nephew or niece

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1. he says 'Hello' or 'Good morning' | 4. he hugs them or touches them on the head |
| 2. they kiss each other on the cheeks | 5. they shake hands |
| 3. they hug | |

III. How does he address people in II (A – H)?

1. Sir 2. Madam 3. their first name 4. a nickname 5. Mr / Mrs / Ms + their surname

IV. What happens if he sees his friend sitting with some people he doesn't know?

(Choose the correct answer)

1. His friend introduces him to the people.
2. He says "hi" to his friend and introduces himself to the people
3. The people stand up and introduce themselves to him.

V. What does he say if a new colleague at work introduces himself or herself to him?

1. Enchanted. 2. Pleased to meet you. 3. How old are you? 4. Hi, I am Mr... 5. Hi, I'm Greg.
6. Peace be with you. 7. Greetings.

- A. never B. it's possible C. sometimes D. often

VI. What does he say if he meets a teacher from his school in the street?

1. Hello, teacher! 2. Hello, Mr / Ms ... 3. Hello, + first name 4. Hello, Sir / Madam

VII. What does he normally say to attract someone's attention?

1. Listen! 2. Excuse me! 3. Hey, Mister / Miss! 4. You, there!

UNIT 10

GUESSING THE COUNTRY

Listen and guess the countries described.

1. 2. 3. 4.

UNIT 11

VACATION PLANS

Listen to the conversations. Find out which trips people prefer and why.

- C1. to the Caribbean / to the Philippines
 C2. a ski vacation / a Malaysian jungle trip
 C3. a Nile River trip / an Australian outback trip.....
 C4. a Grand Canyon rafting / an African safari
 C5. a Southeast Asian trip / a China tour.....
 C6. a European bus trip / a Russian train trip.....

UNIT 12

LOVE FOR TRAVEL

Answer the questions.

1. When did Johnny run away from home for the first time?
2. How did he manage to do it?
3. Who usually brought him home?
4. Why did Johnny run away?
5. How did Johnny get to Cairo?
6. What was his favourite subject at school?
7. What did Johnny want to become when he grew up?
8. Where was the expedition about to go?
9. What kind of young people were required for this expedition?

UNIT 13

GETTING TO KNOW SOMEONE

Mark the sentences as true, false or not given.

1. The girl is from Boston.
2. They are both fond of skateboarding.
3. She works as an interpreter.
4. She invites him to supper.
5. He is just out of University.
6. When he doesn't have money for travelling, he phones his father.
7. He is Austrian.
8. He has been travelling on business.

9. He wants to become a famous traveller.

UNIT 14

AND THEY ALL LIVED HAPPILY EVER AFTER

Put the sentences in the right order to make up a story.

1. We had a few days in Athens.
2. I suddenly got a letter from him.
3. We decided to go on a holiday to Greece.
4. I went back home and he went off to the States.
5. We got to the Greek border.
6. I've never ever regretted it. It's really fantastic!
7. I went out for a holiday there and he came back for a holiday here.
8. We got some money together and we went off.
9. The train to Athens was so crowded that we had to stand all the way.
10. We met and danced a couple of times at the disco.
11. Two years later we got married.

UNIT 15

DAVID LIVINGSTON

Mark the sentences as true, false or not given.

1. David Livingston was the first president of the USA.
2. When at school he was especially good at Geography.
3. He spent thirteen years travelling in Africa.
4. He was born in Edinburgh.
5. In 1841 he sailed to South Africa to join a Christian mission.
6. He travelled together with his wife.
7. His wife Mary was killed.
8. Some years later he set out on foot to find the source of the river Mississippi.
9. His favourite place in Africa was the Zambezi River.
10. He disappeared for some time and nobody knew what had happened to him.
11. In 1871 a British journalist saw him on the shore of Lake Tanganyika.
12. Mr Stanley said "Dr Livingston, I presume." and this phrase became famous.
13. His remains were buried in Westminster Abbey and his heart was buried in Africa.

TOPIC 2. DESCRIBING PEOPLE

UNIT 16

WHAT DO THEY LOOK LIKE?

Write what has changed in the appearance of the people described.

The woman:.....

The man

UNIT 17

DISCUSSING PEOPLE

C1 Choose what Sally doesn't say about Jake.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. He is bald. | 5. He is boring. |
| 2. His clothes aren't fashionable. | 6. He doesn't have a car. |
| 3. He is poor. | 7. He can't dance. |
| 4. He is much older than her. | 8. He can't speak French |

C2 Answer the question. Why does Sally think that Polly is lucky?

.....

C3 Answer the question. What does Polly like and dislike about herself?
her figure, nose, chin, hair, eyes, eyelashes, teeth, smile, complexion;

C4 Answer the question. How does Rob explain that Sally isn't happy with Jake?

C5 Marylyn & Pat

Mark the sentences as true, false or not given.

1. Marylyn has some brothers and sisters.
2. Marylyn's cousin has got a snub nose.
3. They are both angular.
4. Marylyn and her cousin are both short.
5. Pat is shorter than her mother.
6. Pat's mother nags at her father.
7. Pat is as easy-going as her father.

UNIT 18

SPOTTING THE CULPRITS

Add the missing details to the description.

The girl was darkish, her hair was quite short, she had an open-neck shirt or blouse and a velvet jacket on.

.....

The man was wearing a funny-colour woollen jacket, he was younger than her, his shortish hair was brushed back;.....

UNIT 19

DESCRIBING PEOPLE

Cross out the wrong words.

1. Trevor is kind of tall, has a tattoo, looks old, looks odd, a good laugh, very intelligent, stupid.
2. Rosa's colleague is a couch potato, know-it-all, party animal, globe-trotter, name-dropper.
3. Her boss is a control freak, funny bunch, book worm.
4. Tanya is kind of short, snub-nosed, a bit plump, smiley, two-faced, kind-hearted.
5. Carol is lovely, lively, has a heart of gold, has dimples on her cheeks.

UNIT 20

TATTOOS

C1 Answer the questions.

1. On what part of her body did Julie have a tattoo of Winnie-the-Pooh?
2. Did she feel pressured into getting the design?
3. Why did Julie's mum call the police?

C2 Match the statements A-E with the speakers 1-4.

- A. Teens don't need their parents' permission to have a tattoo.
- B. Teenagers are too young to make their own decisions.
- C. Tattoos are less dangerous than piercing.
- D. Young people should be informed about the dangers of tattooing.
- E. Tattoos make your body beautiful.

1	2	3	4

C3 Answer the questions.

1. Why was it silly of Julie to have a tattoo?.....
2. What are the advantages of henna tattoos?

TOPIC 3. FAMILY

UNIT 21

THE EMPTY CHAIR

Mark the sentences as true, false or not given.

1. Mr Jenkins went to the doctor because he had problems with nerves.
2. He came to Penquay on business.
3. He came to the village by car.
4. The landlady invited him to eat with her family because she liked him more than other guests.
5. She had been married for 20 years.
6. Catherine was an only child in the family.
7. She had thick brown hair and expressive green eyes.
8. She told Rob the story about her cousin who had disappeared three years ago.
9. Rob saw a short man with red moustache enter the room.
10. When he saw the man, he fainted.
11. Catherine was fond of playing tricks on people.
12. Her parents always punished her for making up stories.

UNIT 22

LOVE STORY

Mark the sentences as true or false.

1. Oliver studied at Radcliff University.
2. Oliver liked the library because it was quiet and it had books he needed.
3. Jennifer had beautiful blue eyes.
4. She thought Oliver looked clever and poor.
5. She called him “preppie” because he looked like he had finished a prep school (an expensive private school for the rich).
6. Talking to Oliver, Jennifer kept making fun of him.
7. He did well in his exam the next day.
8. Oliver’s grandfather had given Barrett Hall to Harvard University.
9. Jennifer studied the sixteenth century literature at university.
10. Jennifer wanted him to invite her for coffee because she found him attractive.

UNIT 23

COLD FEET

Answer the questions.

1. Why are Joanna and Eric afraid to get married?
2. What advice do their friends give to them?

Translate the American idioms into Russian.

- 1) I think I’m getting cold feet.
- 2) So, it’s money that’s making you have second thoughts.
- 3) Deep down you really want to get married.
- 4) Sometimes I think you can read my mind.
- 5) Marriage is for good.
- 6) Are you through?
- 7) Cut out all this nonsense.
- 8) Don’t be so chicken.

UNIT 24

WEDDINGS

Sort out the two stories about Ann's and Adrian's weddings.

We met last year.
She had three bride's maids: her sister and two of her cousins.
Some people say it's a waste of money, but it's a day to remember for all your life.
We didn't want an elaborate wedding.
It was a very sunny Saturday.
Her father hired a white Rolls Royce.
It was all very simple.
He couldn't afford the time.
The speeches went on a bit too long.
We got married in a registry office.
There was a pretty cold wind.
It took twenty minutes to read all the telegrams.
We got engaged last summer.
We didn't even bother with a cake.
We were both working in Birmingham.
Of course, some of them were a bit vulgar, but I suppose that's a tradition.
We just invited our parents and a couple of friends.
We spent our honeymoon in Scotland.
We didn't have a honeymoon.
We wanted to please our parents.
We didn't have a reception.
My car was covered with lipstick and they tied cans to the bumper.
The reception was at the Carton Hotel.
The page was her nephew and he was only three.

UNIT 25

SAYING "I WON'T"

Mark the statements as true or false.

Story 1 Elizabeth

1. She felt more and more relaxed.
2. Deep down inside she knew she didn't want to marry him.
3. She realized she loved him like a brother.
4. Afterwards it was such a disappointment.
5. Her sister was upset because she was fond of Paul.
6. They wore the wedding dresses at a fancy dress party.

Story 2 George

1. Everything was OK at the wedding rehearsal.
2. Vicky couldn't fill the forms in because she had a heart attack.
3. George suggested they should cancel the wedding.
4. They had a picnic on the lake a week later and enjoyed it very much.
5. They are going to marry soon.

Story 3 Nicole

1. Her bridegroom sent her a note saying he wouldn't marry her.
2. She felt like she was on a deserted island.
3. She invited her guests to have a party.
4. She drank a lot and danced non-stop at the party.
5. She can't understand why he did it.
6. She has forgiven him now.

UNIT 26

FAMILY RELATIONSHIP

Match the statements (A–G) with the speakers (1–6).

- A. My relationship with my brother/sister has changed
- B. I really look up to my brother/sister.
- C. My brother/sister doesn't respect my privacy.
- D. I think it's ok to make fun of my brother/sister.
- E. My brother/sister should accept the fact that we are different.
- F. My parents always support my brother/sister in an argument.
- G. I find my siblings' behaviour difficult, but I understand it.

UNIT 27

ARE YOU OF AGE?

Fill in the blanks.

1. What's wrong with today's? They want to be like adults but they won't take adult responsibilities. They just sit around

2. Do you have any with your teenage children?
My son's fine, at school. But I have problems with my
She, I think she doesn't even like us. She and her friends just use the house like And she wears I think she does it to upset us.

3. What do you think of your?
Well, they are I mean they want us to be like them and accept their way of life. They think we are all delinquents and just 'cause they don't like the way we look. They are afraid what the will think of our and clothes. I mean I like my mum and dad but they treat us like....., always ordering us around. I think they are jealous, because we have a time than they did when they were

UNIT 28

TALKING ABOUT FRIENDS

Match the statements to the speakers: 1. Sam 2. Jenny 3. Hugh 4. Elinor

- 1) He is really the kind of person who can understand other people however different they might be.
- 2) He says very funny things, and he makes me laugh like anything – he has me in stitches sometimes.
- 3) We've known each other for about ten years on and off.
- 4) I admire her most because she says exactly what she thinks.
- 5) I've been married three times – and I know I can be difficult.
- 6) I think that friends have to tell you the truth, don't you?

UNIT 29

I PREFER A BIG FAMILY

What advantages and disadvantages of being an only child and having a big family does the speaker mention?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

UNIT 30. CHILDHOOD MEMORIES

Correct the text .

Story 1

I used to like to do well just to see the look of happiness on my dad's face. He'd say 'Pet, it's like a tonic to me when you do well – I don't know how I have such pretty children. But I never felt I was pushed too hard. If I did bad, he'd just say 'Well, what will it matter a thousand years from now that you failed your History exam!

Story 2

Whatever I did was just never quite good enough. I wasn't very clever as a child – I used to get attacks of asthma, so I couldn't do PE or sports. Well, anyway when I was eleven I was so thrilled because I was put in the second eleven for football. I was sure he'd be displeased. Do you know what he said? 'Second team? When I was your age I was in the first for cricket, tennis, and hockey.' I felt so crushed, I just crawled away and shouted - in private, of course.

Story 3

Our house was seldom open to whoever came around. You'd never know how many people would sit down to a meal. My relatives were always inviting people in, and my cousins and I brought friends from college. They used to love coming to our house because they were made so welcome. There were no petty rules, and as long as we tidied they didn't object to what we did. We called a lot of my parents' friends 'Dad' or 'Mum' so-and-so. We never used to know who were our real friends. But what was so funny for us kids was that we grew up surrounded by a lot of adults, not just our parents, so we heard what they had to say, and they listened to us as well.

Story 4

I think it started out of sheer boredom – I mean – they gave me every material benefit, extra money any time I asked; I had my own brand new BMW when I was sixteen. I wanted for nothing except their money – I mean – they were always so angry, always getting dressed up to go somewhere, and so wrapped up in each other. I really don't know why they had children. They always said I was a problem. Anyway I started hanging about with this bunch of 'yobbos' and they said 'Do it' and I thought 'Why not? Who knows?'

Story 5

They finally split up when I was five. It's one of my memories – my dad seating me on his knee and saying, 'mummy and daddy have decided to live in different countries and I want you to decide which house you want to be in. Can you imagine asking a child of four? I hadn't a clue what to say, but my very much elder brother was standing behind him mouthing, 'Say "mum", say "mum". So I did and I never met my dad again except once when I was about ten – from the top of a double-decker train. At least I think it was him – I'm sure it was, that time – only I still keep thinking I see him all over the place. I've had four step-fathers – it's the same.

Story 6

She was like a lake of calm, nothing ruffled her, she never had time. Me and the others would be scrapping about something, and she'd say 'OK, OK let's calm down, let's go back to the end and sort it out – so we did, and it was sorted out!' I think of this school friend of mine, she fell off her motorbike and completely smashed her teeth. She didn't cry because she was hurt, but because her mother was so particular about her face. She said, 'She'd kill me, she thinks I have such lively teeth!' I thought 'Gosh! – how weird, I couldn't bear it if my mother was like this!' In fact this friend came to me first and she rang and told her mum what had happened to her. Fancy not being able to go to your mum!

UNIT 31
LIFESTYLE

Part 1. FRIENDS

Match the statements (A–G) with the speakers (1–6).

- A. I don't see this person very often any more.
- B. I have not always liked this person.
- C. My friend sometimes gets angry with me.
- D. Some people dislike my friend.
- E. This person is my best friend.
- F. My friend's character has changed.
- G. This person and I aren't friends any more.

Part 2. INTERNATIONAL EXCHANGE

Mark the statements as true, false or not stated.

- 1. Pete usually spends summer with his grandparents.
- 2. Amy thinks the student exchange program was expensive.
- 3. Amy stayed at one place on her trip.
- 4. Amy was upset that the other students on the trip were from different countries.
- 5. At first, Amy's parents didn't want her to go on the trip.
- 6. Both Pete and Amy enjoy Indian food.
- 7. Pete isn't interested in visiting India.

Part 3. UNIVERSITY LIFE

Choose the best answer.

- 1. The speaker's new lifestyle involved
 - a) getting up earlier b) making his own decisions c) cooking his own meals
- 2. His father wanted him to "follow in his footsteps", which means his father hoped his son
 - a) would be ambitious b) would have the same job he had c) would work for him
- 3. When choosing his course of study, he wanted to
 - a) make the decision by himself b) please his parents c) choose the subject he really enjoyed
- 4. The speaker grew up in
 - a) New York b) Cromwell c) London
- 5. He compares the people he saw in the city streets with ants because
 - a) they all looked the same b) they seemed very busy c) they seemed unpleasant
- 6. The speaker was happy to meet someone who
 - a) came from the similar background b) was from the same country c) was a suitable flatmate
- 7. After the first year at university, the speaker
 - a) changed for the better b) missed England a lot c) didn't get on well with his parents

UNIT 32

THE LONELY CYBORGS

Listen to the extract from the BBC radio programme and answer the questions.

1. What problem does this programme focus on?
2. Why do mass media call modern teens the lonely cyborgs?
3. How do people get online friends?
4. How do you understand such phenomena as *public display* and *impression management*?
5. Modern young people are digital vanguards. What problems can it lead to?
6. What kind of people do modern teens prefer to interact with online?
7. Is it true that face-to-face relationship is disappearing now and giving way to virtual relations?

UNIT 33

COMMUNICATION SKILLS

Choose the best answer.

1. Tom Burk is going to speak about how to
 - 1) make friends
 - 2) influence people
 - 3) make a favourable impression
2. According to Tom, when making an acquaintance you should not look to be
 - 1) interested
 - 2) too self-confident
 - 3) friendly
3. As for a talent for communication, Tom thinks that
 - 1) people are born with it
 - 2) it can be developed
 - 3) few people have it now
4. Tom thinks that online communication should be
 - 1) excluded
 - 2) promoted
 - 3) could be problematic
5. Tom says that “total honesty”
 - 1) is a very useful policy
 - 2) is not for the beginning of an acquaintance
 - 3) is never good
6. Tom thinks that for the first meeting conversation would be most suitable to talk about
 - 1) personal problems
 - 2) people around you
 - 3) cultural issues
7. According to Tom, communication problems may happen when people
 - 1) are strict with their kids
 - 2) talk about themselves
 - 3) meet after a long absence

TOPIC 4. HOLIDAYS

UNIT 34

THE BRITISH YEAR

Number the names of events and festivals according the order in which they are described.

Halloween
New Year
Easter
Christmas

St. Valentine Day
Guy Fawkes' Night
Wimbledon

UNIT 35
AMERICAN HOLIDAYS

Text 1. Public Holidays

Correct the mistakes.

Americans usually have one to two weeks' paid vacation a year, so they make the most of public holidays. Often public holidays fall on a Monday so people have only a minimum of extra time off. Public holidays are not the same throughout the country, although some states like Massachusetts and Maine have fewer holidays. They don't celebrate Patriot's Day on the first Monday in August to remember the last battle of the American Revolution.

Text 2. Here Comes Summer

Fill in the blanks.

Memorial Day and Labor Day mark the and end of the
Many people take vacations over the long holiday weekends. Others enjoy
or barbecues.

The first holiday, Memorial Day, honors who have died in the wars.
Labor Day is a holiday to honor all over America.

Independence Day, also known as, comes in the middle of
summer. It is another time with barbecues and picnics, and many towns and
cities across the nation have fireworks displays in the evening.
The Fourth of July is the day in when the Declaration of Independence was signed and
Americans started to fight for

Text 3. Autumn and Winter

Answer the questions.

1. What do the children shout at the houses they visit on Halloween?
2. Why do the people give children candy?
3. What kind of meal do the families share on Thanksgiving Day?
4. What do families and friends exchange at Christmas?
5. Where do children find presents from Santa Claus?
6. How long is Hanukkah? What does it celebrate?
7. Whose holiday is Kwanza?

UNIT 36
MY FAVOURITE HOLIDAYS

Match the statements (A–G) with the speakers (1–6).

- A. Girls are supposed to like it.
- B. This holiday has a meaningful history.
- C. One of this holiday traditions changed over time.
- D. This holiday can put you in a very special mood.
- E. People can behave any way on this holiday.
- F. This holiday is a time for new hopes.
- G. This holiday suits my character perfectly

REVISION LISTENING TEST

PART 1

You will hear six people talking about their career prospects. For questions **1- 6**, choose from the list **A-G** which statement applies to which speaker.

- A. I am determined to achieve my ambition.
- B. I'd like to have my own successful business.
- C. I haven't decided what I want to do yet.
- D. I believe there's more to life than work.
- E. Being successful is all I care about.
- F. I'd like to make a difference to people's lives.
- G. I want to make my own decisions about my future.

1	2	3	4	5	6
---	---	---	---	---	---

PART 2

You will hear two friends talking about a party.

Answer questions **1- 7** by writing **T** (for True), **F** (for False) or **N** (not stated).

1. Mary's dad is a pilot.
2. Mary's grandparents don't have a lot of money.
3. Pete thinks Mary and her brother should arrange a party in a restaurant.
4. Pete offers to make a cake for the party.
5. Mary doesn't want to have a DJ at the party.
6. Mary believes that her brother will agree to the idea of organizing a party.
7. Mary will send the invitations for the party by email.

PART 3

You will hear a man talking about his hobby. For questions **1- 7**, decide which of the choices **A**, **B** or **C** is the correct answer.

1. The man says his interest in butterflies began
 - A. after a visit to the country.
 - B. after he got a butterfly net.
 - C. after he saw a rare butterfly.
2. The man says that his friends
 - A. didn't know about his hobby.
 - B. teased him about his hobby.
 - C. weren't interested in his hobby
3. The man says that he prefers to take photos that
 - A. are unusual
 - B. are very creative.
 - C. show how butterflies live.
4. There are fewer butterflies now because
 - A. the weather has changed.
 - B. there are fewer flowers.
 - C. areas of countryside have disappeared.
5. The man says that Stratford-upon-Avon butterfly farm
 - A. is trying to save butterfly species.
 - B. sells butterflies to other farms.
 - C. gets its butterflies from abroad.
6. When the man says 'it wouldn't be my cup of tea' he means
 - A. he wouldn't release butterflies at his wedding.
 - B. he doesn't like the idea of making business out of butterflies.
 - C. he has no plans to get married any time soon.
7. The man is
 - A. the owner of a garden centre.
 - B. a professional gardener.
 - C. a writer for gardening magazines.

REVISION LISTENING TEST (KEY)

PART 1

You will hear six people talking about their career prospects. For questions 1- 6, choose from the list A-G which statement applies to which speaker.

- | | |
|---|---|
| A. I am determined to achieve my ambition. | E. Being successful is all I care about. |
| B. I'd like to have my own successful business. | F. I'd like to make a difference to people's lives. |
| C. I haven't decided what I want to do yet. | G. I want to make my own decisions about my future. |
| D. I believe there's more to life than work. | |

1 - B	2 - D	3 - C	4 - F	5 - A	6 - G
-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------

PART 2

You will hear two friends talking about a party.

Answer questions 1- 7 by writing **T** (for True), **F** (for False) or **N** (not stated).

1. Mary's dad is a pilot. **N**
2. Mary's grandparents don't have a lot of money. **N**
3. Pete thinks Mary and her brother should arrange a party in a restaurant. **F**
4. Pete offers to make a cake for the party. **F**
5. Mary doesn't want to have a DJ at the party. **F**
6. Mary believes that her brother will agree to the idea of organizing a party. **T**
7. Mary will send the invitations for the party by email. **N**

PART 3

You will hear a man talking about his hobby. For questions 1- 7, decide which of the choices A, B or C is the correct answer.

1. The man says his interest in butterflies began
 - A. after a visit to the country.
 - B. after he got a butterfly net.
 - C. after he saw a rare butterfly.**
2. The man says that his friends
 - A. didn't know about his hobby.**
 - B. teased him about his hobby.
 - C. weren't interested in his hobby
3. The man says that he prefers to take photos that
 - A. are unusual
 - B. are very creative.
 - C. show how butterflies live.**
4. There are fewer butterflies now because
 - A. the weather has changed.**
 - B. there are fewer flowers.
 - C. areas of countryside have disappeared.
5. The man says that Stratford-upon-Avon butterfly farm
 - A. is trying to save butterfly species.
 - B. sells butterflies to other farms.
 - C. gets its butterflies from abroad.**
6. When the man says 'it wouldn't be my cup of tea' he means
 - A. he wouldn't release butterflies at his wedding.**
 - B. he doesn't like the idea of making business out of butterflies.
 - C. he has no plans to get married any time soon.
7. The man is
 - A. the owner of a garden centre.
 - B. a professional gardener.**
 - C. a writer for gardening magazines.

VIDEOTASKS

TASK 1. MEETING PEOPLE

Answer the questions and do the tasks.

1. What greeting is used in № 1?.....
2. Complete the remark from № 2: “Hi, Miss Willer!
3. What greeting is used in № 3?.....
4. What is Edward York’s occupation?
5. Supply the remark from № 6: “Good morning, my name is Julius Caesar, I represent the Roman Empire! –
6. Complete the remark from № 7: “Good evening, professor!

TASK 2. AROUND THE WORLD

Answer the questions.

1. Why does Alison like people in Belfast?
2. Where is Erie? What’s the weather like in that place?
3. Where did Kathleen spend her childhood? What can you do in that place?
4. Where is Perth? For how long did Astrid live in Perth?
5. What did she like and dislike about living there?

TASK 3. AMAZING BUILDINGS

Match the information to the buildings.

№	building	№	information
1	The Eiffel Tower	A	It’s 87 metres high and only two metres wide.
2	The Opera House	B	The architect used a computer to design it.
3	The Flatiron building	C	The roof is from Sweden, the glass is from France and the architect is Danish.
4	The Gherkin (the Swiss Re Tower)	D	It was opened in 1889, but it looks modern now.
5	The Guggenheim Museum	E	It’s an icon of the city and you can see it in the film <i>Love Actually</i> .

Where are these buildings? Sidney, Bilbao (Spain), Paris, London, New York;

TASK 4. THE NOTTING HILL CARNIVAL

Mark the sentences as true or false.

1. The Notting Hill Carnival is in Rio de Janeiro.
2. About a million people take part in the carnival.
3. The major event of the carnival is a spectacular parade.
4. The carnival is competitive.
5. Clary Salandy is the queen of the band.
6. Carnival costumes can take months to design and make.
7. It’s unforgettable experience if you win.

TASK 5. JAMIE OLIVER

Describe Jamie and say what you think of him.

TASK 6. COMMUTING

Answer the questions.

1. What do people do on their way to work?.....
2. What are the bad points of travelling to work?
3. Why is it easy to come in time in Japan?.....

TASK 7. LONDON

Arrange the events in the order they are mentioned in the video.
 People go to the clubs.
 Office workers arrive from the suburbs.
 People go to the restaurants.

Tourists visit famous sights.
 The rush hour begins.
 The shops in Oxford Street open for business.
 People take a rest in the parks.
 It's the best time to make deliveries.

TASK 8. THE BEATLES STORY

Watch the film and complete the sentences.

Part 1

1. John Lennon's aunt Mimi said she would always remember Bill Harry because he was the first to call John a
2. John had abilities not only of a musician but also of
3. Paul impressed the Quarrymen because he knew and could
4. The Cavern DJ Bob Wooler wrote about Beatles: rugged, but, appealing to sexes, jaunty but not flaunty, they were extremely on stage, their was infectious, their was infectious, their was very powerful, their was perfect.
5. The birth date of was the Beatles' appearance at the top-rated ITV variety show *Sunday Night at the London Palladium*.

Part 2

6. Before the song *Twist and Shout* John Lennon addressed the audience with the words, "Those who are in the, clap your hands, the rest of you, rattle your"
7. The film *Hard Day's Night* was nominated for, it was the peak of their, they were adored
8. *Yesterday* was the most in history with about versions.
9. In his interview for *The London Evening Standard* John Lennon said, "The Beatles are..... than Jesus now".
10. In the USA teen magazine the phrase was changed into "The Beatles are than Jesus"

Parts 3 and 4

11. The Beatles stopped their tours, because they felt like, always off in the hotel suites, they couldn't at the concerts because of screaming fans.
12. George Martin had a background and the ability to do with studio
13. George Harrison acquainted the Beatles with music and transcendental
14. The Beatles' girlfriends were always in the background, Yoko Ono was the first one who took part in their
15. became one of the most creative and best selling albums of all time.

The Beatles inspired and fascinated all over the world.

TASK 10. THE UNTOLD STORY

Watch the film and choose the best answer.

Part 1 (30 minutes)

1. Freddie's childhood in Zanzibar was ...
a) exciting b) quiet c) poor d) unhappy
2. ... in Zanzibar acknowledges or celebrates the importance of Freddie Mercury
a) Everything b) Everybody c) Nobody d) Nothing
3. Freddie was confirmed into the faith ...
a) in the fire temple b) against his will c) at the age of 11 d) on his birthday
4. For Zoroastrianism (unlike other religions) life is a ...
a) fight b) celebration c) meditation d) communication
5. At St Peter's school in India Freddie was a mediocre ...
a) pianist b) table tennis player c) cross-country runner d) boxer
6. The Bulsara family left Zanzibar because of ...
a) bad climate b) financial problems c) natural disaster d) bloody revolution

Part 2 (28 minutes)

7. While in art school Freddie got interested in ...
a) fashion design b) literature c) sport d) modelling
8. When on stage Freddie wanted to ...
a) sing better b) play the piano c) be a different character d) change rock music
9. Mary Austin and Freddie ...
a) were married b) loved each other c) lived together for 16 years d) were just good friends
10. Zandra Rhodes ...
a) made Freddie's clothes b) advised him in fashion c) designed his stage costumes d) sang with him

Part 3 (27 minutes)

11. Montserrat Caballé ...
a) was a Spanish rock singer b) met him at Barcelona c) sang his songs d) was an opera diva
12. Once Freddy said about Montserrat, ...
a) 'I love the music she sings' b) 'I love her' c) 'She loves me' d) 'I love music and she is the music'
13. Freddy thought it was his duty
a) to tell his close friends about his illness b) to pay his debts c) to conceal his illness from all
14. Freddie behaved very bravely when he was dying and he timed his own death when ...
a) he couldn't record anymore b) his friends left him c) he got tired d) his pains became unbearable

SUPPLEMENT 3. WRITTEN SPEECH PRACTICE

1. PRESENTATION OF WRITTEN WORK

Read, translate, learn the following and use it in your written work.

1. A margin, 2-3 cm wide, is drawn on the left.
2. The date is written in the top right-hand corner and usually underlined.
e.g. 15 October *or* 15 October 2004 *or* October 15 *or* October 15 2004
These are read as follows:
the fifteenth of October, twenty o four / October the fifteenth, twenty o four
3. The name and the group number should be put in the top left-hand corner, against the margin, and also underlined.
e.g. Irina Ivanova, group 12 E/G
4. The heading may be written: either in the centre or on the left, against the margin.
All the words in a heading should be written with a capital letter except for articles and prepositions. We don't use a full stop in the heading.
e.g. A Day in My Life
5. Paragraphs should be clearly indicated. Each new paragraph should begin a little way in from the margin or a line between paragraphs should be omitted.
6. Abbreviations, such as *etc.*, *i.e.*, *e.g.*, & should be avoided.
7. In addition, numbers up to at least twenty are best written in words.

2. PUNCTUATION MARKS AND DICTATION TERMS

While dictating, the teacher may pronounce punctuation marks and dictation terms.

Read, translate and learn the terms

. full stop (AmE: period)	? question mark
, comma	! exclamation mark
: colon	(AmE: exclamation point)
; semi-colon	« » quotation marks
– dash	A capital letter
<i>well-read</i> hyphen	a small letter
() brackets	new paragraph

3. TEACHER'S NOTES ON STUDENT'S MISTAKES

While correcting your written work, the teacher will mark your mistakes for you to correct them.

This is the usual way of doing it:

<i>gr</i> = grammar	<i>vt</i> = verb tense
<i>prep</i> = preposition	<i>wo</i> = word order
<i>art</i> = article	<i>ww</i> = wrong word
<i>sp</i> = spelling	<i>uw</i> (/) = unnecessary word
<i>ow</i> (λ) = omitted word	<i>p</i> = punctuation
<i>voc</i> = vocabulary (word choice)	<i>cap</i> = the wrong use of capital letters
<i>vf</i> = verb form	

e. g. teacher's notes

gr, prep, cap

ow, prep

student's sentence

He live on Kirov street.

I look forward λ meeting with you.

the correct sentence

He lives in Kirov Street.

I look forward to meeting you.

SUPPLEMENT 4. DICTATIONS INTRODUCTORY COURSE

NOUNS 1

1. теленок – телята
2. волк – волки
3. эльф – эльфы
4. нож – ножи
5. жена – жены
6. лист – листья
7. половина – половины
8. жизнь – жизни
9. полка – полки
10. буханка – буханки
11. вор – вору
12. карлик – карлики (2)
13. шарф – шарфы (2)
14. носовой платок — носовые платки
15. человек – люди (2)
16. народ - народы
17. женщина – женщины
18. гусь – гуси
19. ступня – ступни
20. зуб – зубы
21. мышь – мыши
22. вошь – вши
23. ребенок – дети
24. бык – быки

NOUNS 2

1. ключ - ключи
2. младенец - младенцы
3. армия – армии
4. радио – радио
5. комар – комары (2)
6. фото(графия) – фото(графии)
7. кило(грамм) – кило(граммы)
8. пианино – пианино
9. негр - негры
10. ноль – ноли (2)
11. помидор - помидоры
12. герой – герои
13. джентльмен – джентльмены
14. мышеловка – мышеловки
15. немец – немцы
16. людоед – людоеды
17. прохожий – прохожие
18. теща – тещи
19. взрослый – взрослые
20. незабудка – незабудки
21. карусель – карусели
22. альвеола – альвеолы

23. средства массовой информации
24. диссертация – диссертации
25. данное – данные
26. феномен – феномены

NOUNS 3

1. Это плохой совет.
2. Мне нужны эти сведения.
3. Какая удача!
4. Их знания хорошие.
5. Где деньги? – Они в сейфе.
6. Их успехи большие.
7. Он получил разрешение.
8. Она много путешествует.
9. Это хорошая работа. (2)
10. У него много работы.
11. Сдайте свои работы.
12. Ее волосы темные.
13. Это плохая новость (плохие новости)
14. Фонетика – трудный предмет.
15. Эти две овечки находятся во дворе.
16. Мы поймали пять рыбок.
17. Где мои джинсы?
18. Твоя пижама (твои пижамы) здесь.
19. Ножницы лежат на столе.
20. Где мои очки?
21. Это бинокль. (=Это бинокли.)
22. Где твоя одежда? – Она здесь.
23. У него большая зарплата.
24. один сериал – два сериала
25. один вид птиц – 20 видов птиц

PROFESSIONS 1

1. Кем Вы работаете?
2. Чем Вы занимаетесь?
3. Кто он? (по профессии)
4. бухгалтер
5. актер, актриса
6. художник (2)
7. архитектор
8. парикмахер (2)
9. строитель
10. бизнесмен + мн. число
11. плотник
12. клерк, служащий
13. тренер + мн. число
14. композитор
15. проводник, дирижер
16. повар
17. дантист
18. декан
19. директор, режиссер
20. доктор
21. водитель, шофер
22. инженер
23. фермер

24. модельер
25. гид
26. директор школы / директриса
27. домохозяйка + мн. число

PROFESSIONS 2

1. переводчик (2)
2. журналист, репортер, корреспондент
3. юрист, адвокат
4. слесарь
5. менеджер
6. механик
7. шахтер
8. модель
9. музыкант
10. няня (3)
11. медсестра
12. фотограф
13. полицейский + мн. число
14. почтальон + мн. число
15. программист
16. продавец (3)
17. моряк
18. ученый
19. секретарь + мн. число
20. певец
21. солдат
22. хирург
23. учитель, репетитор
24. официант, официантка
25. рабочий
26. писатель, автор

ANIMALS 1

1. муравей
2. медведь
3. пчела – пчелы
4. жук, клоп
5. бабочка - бабочки
6. верблюд
7. кошка (котенок)
8. петух (2)
9. корова, теленок – телята
10. крокодил
11. один олень – два оленя
12. собака, щенок - щенки
13. осел – ослы (2)
14. утка
15. орел
16. слон
17. лиса – лисы
18. лягушка

19. жираф – жирафы

20. коза

21. гусь – гуси

22. хомяк

ANIMALS 2

1. заяц
2. ежик
3. курица, цыпленок
4. лошадь
5. один кенгуру – два кенгуру
6. леопард
7. лев
8. обезьяна – обезьяны
9. сова
10. попугай
11. павлин
12. пингвин
13. одна свинья – две свиньи (2)
14. голубь, голубка
15. кролик
16. косуля
17. одна овца – две овцы, ягненок
18. змея
19. воробей
20. белка
21. ласточка
22. лебедь
23. клещ
24. тигр
25. индюк – индюки
26. черепаха сухопутная / морская
27. кит
28. волк – волки
29. дятел

ONOMOPHONES & SIMILAR WORDS

1. воздух 2. ухо 3. наследник
4. голый 5. медведь 6. пиво
7. покупать 8. пока! 9. около
10. стул 11. ободрять
12. сметь 13. дорогой 14. олень
15. прекрасный 16. плата за проезд 17. страх
18. волосы 19. заяц 20. слышать 21. здесь
22. линия 23. лев
24. Мэри 25. жениться 26. веселый
27. пара 28. груша 29. пэр
30. мир 31. кусок
32. тихий 33. довольно
34. хвост 35. сказка
36. чем 37. тогда
38. их 39. там
40. прилив 41. связал 42. усталый

43. к 44. два 45. тоже
46. носить на себе 47. были 48. где
49. лес 50. вспомогательный глагол
51. писать 52. правильный 53. ритуал

NUMERALS

- 1) один 2) первый 3) одиннадцать
4) два 5) второй 6) двенадцать
7) двенадцатый 8) двадцать 9) двадцатый
10) три 11) третий 12) тринадцать
13) четыре 14) четырнадцать 15) сорок
16) пять 17) пятый 18) пятьдесят
19) девять 20) девятый 21) девятнадцатый
22) девяносто 23) сто
24) 6,715,238

PRONOUNS 1

1. Он живет один. (2)
2. Веди себя хорошо!
3. Развлекайся!
4. Угощайся.
5. Чувствуй себя как дома.
6. Хватит.
7. Вот и все.
8. Вот именно.
9. Решено.
10. Я тоже.
11. Вас также.
12. В то же время, на том же месте.

PRONOUNS 2

1. В целом, ... (2)
2. Ни я, ни мои дети не устали.
3. Ни мои дети, ни я не устали.
4. Как-нибудь в другой раз.
5. Он приходит сюда через день.
6. Я видел его на днях.
7. Я увижу его на днях.

TOPIC 1. GETTING ACQUAINTED

COUNTRIES

1. Австралия
2. Австрия
3. Бельгия
4. Бразилия
5. Болгария
6. Канада
7. Китай
8. Дания
9. Египет
10. Финляндия
11. Франция
12. Германия
13. Великобритания (3)

14. Греция
15. Индия
16. Ирландия
17. Италия
18. Япония
19. Мексика
20. Нидерланды / Голландия
21. Новая Зеландия
22. Норвегия
23. Польша
24. Португалия
25. Россия
26. Испания
27. Швеция
28. Швейцария
29. Турция
30. США (2)

CAPITALS

1. Канберра
2. Вена
3. Брюссель
4. Бразилия
5. София
6. Оттава
7. Пекин
8. Копенгаген
9. Каир
10. Хельсинки
11. Париж
12. Берлин
13. Лондон
14. Афины
15. Нью-Дели
16. Дублин
17. Рим
18. Токио
19. Мехико
20. Амстердам
21. Веллингтон
22. Осло
23. Варшава
24. Лиссабон
25. Москва
26. Мадрид
27. Стокгольм
28. Берн
29. Анкара
30. Вашингтон

LANGUAGES & NATIONALITIES

1. австралийский
2. (все) австрийцы
3. бельгиец
4. (все) бразильцы

5. болгарский
6. канадец
7. (все) датчане (2 варианта)
8. арабский
9. египтянин
10. финский
11. два француза
12. (все) французы
13. два немца
14. (все) британцы, англичане
15. два англичанина
16. грек
17. индийский
18. (все) ирландцы
19. два ирландца
20. итальянец
21. два японца
22. мексиканец
23. (все) голландцы
24. два голландца
25. новозеландский
26. норвежский
27. польский
28. поляк
29. португалец
30. (все) русские
31. (все) испанцы (2 варианта)
32. (все) шведы (2 варианта)
33. два швейцарца
34. турецкий
35. турок
36. (все) американцы

GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES 1

1. Африка
2. Антарктида
3. Австралия
4. Евразия (Европа и Азия)
5. Северная Америка
6. Южная Америка
7. Атлантический океан
8. Северный Ледовитый океан
9. Индийский океан
10. Тихий океан
11. Балтийское море
12. Черное море
13. Каспийское море
14. Средиземное море.
15. озеро Байкал
16. Мичиган
17. река
18. Амазонка
19. Дунай
20. Миссисипи
21. Нил

22. Темза
23. Панамский канал
24. Суэцкий канал
25. Ла-Манш
26. Мексиканский залив

GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES 2

1. гора
2. Анды
3. Альпы
4. Кавказ
5. Кордильеры
6. Гималаи
7. Урал
8. Эльбрус
9. Эверест
10. Монблан
11. Килиманджаро
12. Канарские острова, Канары
13. Гавайские острова, Гавайи
14. Багамы
15. Бермуды
16. Британские острова
17. Корсика
18. Кипр
19. Исландия
20. Мадагаскар
21. Сицилия.
22. Арктика
23. Антарктика
24. Крым
25. экватор
26. Дальний Восток
27. Ближний Восток (2)
28. Северный полюс /Южный полюс

ARTICLE "A"

1. Жаль.
2. Какая жалость!
3. Это удовольствие. Какое удовольствие!.
4. Это разочарование. Какое разочарование!
5. Не спеши.
6. В результате мы опоздали.
7. Как правило, он не опаздывает.
8. Повеселитесь там!
9. Они в растерянности.
10. Не лги мне!
11. Поспи немного.
12. Не простудись.
13. Она простыла.

ARTICLE "THE"

1. Об этом не может быть и речи.
2. Читай книги в оригинале.
3. Скажи мне правду.
4. В целом, он прав.

5. С одной стороны, он не прав.
6. С другой стороны, мне жаль его.
7. Между прочим, он опаздывает.
8. Ты играешь на пианино или на скрипке?
9. Мы редко ходим в кино и в театр.
10. Давай поедem за город, ладно?
11. Не выходи из дома на всякий случай.
12. Не вставай с постели, пожалуйста.
13. Что нового? 14. Что случилось?
15. Скажи, пожалуйста, который час.

ZERO ARTICLE

1. Давай поедem автобусом.
2. Давай пойдem пешком.
3. Он играет в теннис или футбол?
4. Это любовь с первого взгляда.
5. Она дома или на работе?
6. Они встретились случайно.
7. Он сделал это по ошибке.
8. Он зовет ее по имени.
9. Выучи текст наизусть с начала до конца.
10. Ему жаль в глубине души.
11. Не принимай это близко к сердцу.
12. Не падай духом.
13. Не обижайся.
14. Он разрешит.
15. Ей разрешат.
16. Попроси разрешение.
17. Она ведет домашнее хозяйство.
18. Он встает на заре.
19. Они гуляют на закате рука об руку.
21. У него долги.

ARTICLES (ORAL REVISION)

1. Жаль! Об этом не может быть и речи.
2. Он делает все второпях.
3. С одной стороны, новостей нет.
4. С другой стороны, это неплохо.
5. В результате у него долги.
6. Он читает книги в оригинале.
7. Как правило, он встает на рассвете.
8. Давай пойдem к кино или в театр.
9. Прочитай текст с начала до конца.
10. В чем дело? – Ее нет дома.
11. Мы хорошо проводим время здесь.
12. Мы были в растерянности.
13. Они лгут или говорят правду?
14. Он пошел туда по ошибке.
15. Она принимает все близко к сердцу.
16. Они ходят, взявшись за руки.
17. Мы не падаем духом.
18. Они ложатся спать поздно.
19. Он любит лежать в кровати по утрам.
20. Она всегда обижается.
21. Он дал разрешение.

22. Мы получили разрешение.
23. Мы не спрашиваем разрешения.
24. Она приехала ненадолго.
25. Он понравился нам с первого взгляда.
26. Они учат стихи наизусть.
27. Я простыла. – Как жаль!
28. Они ходили от дома к дому.
29. Они встретились лицом к лицу.
30. Можно звать Вас по имени?
31. Какое удовольствие!
32. Какое разочарование!
33. Ты это знаешь в глубине души.
34. Она сказала нам, который час.
35. Он услышал это случайно.
36. В целом, я с вами согласен.
37. Они играли в футбол на днях.
38. Между прочим, он на работе.
39. Мы играем в теннис здесь.
40. Она играет на фортепьяно.
41. Я не играю на скрипке.
42. Они сидят дома.
43. Кто ведет домашнее хозяйство?
44. Спроси его на всякий случай.
45. Он мокрый с головы до ног.
46. Я не хочу идти пешком.
47. Какие новости?

TOPIC 2. APPEARANCE

VOC. 1 (part 1)

1. У него приятная внешность.(2)
2. Она хорошенькая.
3. Он красивый, не так ли?
4. Какая очаровательная девушка!
5. На неё приятно посмотреть.
6. У нее хорошая / стройная / пухленькая, полная / изящная / хорошо скроенная / с хорошими формами фигура.
7. Он сутулый.
8. Он крепкого / хрупкого / хорошего телосложения.
9. Он узкоплечий / широкоплечий
10. Она длинноногая.
11. У нее густые / тонкие / кудрявые / волнистые / прямые / покрашенные / белокурые / рыжие / темные волосы.
12. Она носит стрижку / челку.
13. У него короткая стрижка.
14. Она носит длинные волосы / короткие / до плеч.
15. Она носит косу.
16. Её волосы собраны в хвост.
17. Он лысый.
18. Он носит бороду / усы / бачки.
19. Он всегда чисто выбрит.
20. У нее обычное / круглое / овальное лицо.

21. У него правильные / неправильные / грубые / тонкие черты лица.
22. У него высокий / открытый / низкий лоб.
23. У нее бледный / розовый / светлый / смуглый / загорелый цвет лица.

VOC. 1 (part 2)

1. У нее голубые / широко посаженные / близко посаженные / глубоко посаженные / раскосые / маленькие / большие / выразительные глаза.
2. У нее длинные / короткие / загнутые ресницы.
3. У него густые / тонкие / кустистые / изогнутые, прямые брови.
4. У него длинный / короткий / прямой / орлиный / курносый / вздёрнутый нос.
5. У нее впалые / пухлые / розовые щёки.
6. У него острый / двойной / круглый / квадратный подбородок.
7. У нее тонкие / полные / красивые губы.
8. У него ровные / неровные зубы.
9. Она голубоглазая и розовощёкая.
10. Он светловолосый и круглолицый.
11. У нее гладкая кожа / веснушки.
12. У него ямочка на подбородке / ямочки на щеках.
13. Она похожа на маму внешне.
14. Они похожи как две капли воды.
15. Он копия своего отца.
16. Она очень не похожа на старшую сестру

VOC. 2. CHARACTER

1. рассеянный
2. яркий, жизнерадостный, способный
3. способный
4. умный, хитрый
5. умный, интеллектуальный
6. честный
7. гостеприимный
8. справедливый
9. добродушный
10. легкомысленный
11. капризный
12. надежный
13. эгоистичный
14. серьезный
15. небрежный, безответственный
16. общительный
17. упрямый
18. доверчивый
19. начитанный
20. остроумный

VOC. 3 AGE

1. Каков ваш возраст?

2. Сколько тебе лет?
3. Ему нет еще 17.
4. Ему почти 17.
5. Ему больше 17.
6. Ему около 17.
7. Он четырнадцатилетний мальчик
8. Он несовершеннолетний.
9. Она скоро станет совершеннолетней.
10. Он подросток. (2 варианта)
11. Ему слегка за 30.
12. Ему между 30 и 40.
13. Ему далеко за 30.
14. Он пожилой.
15. Она средних лет.
16. Она не выглядит на свой возраст.
17. Они одного возраста.
18. Джиму столько же лет, сколько Дэйву.
19. Она на 3 года младше меня. (2)
20. Она на 3 года старше меня. (2)

TOPIC 3. FAMILY

ТЕХТ 1

1. Число разводов увеличилось.
2. У современного британского ребёнка немного дружеского общения.
3. Средняя семья имеет 2 или 3 ребёнка.
4. Большинство из них живут с родителями.
5. Они оставляют их грустными и одинокими в пустом гнезде.
6. Они наслаждаются своей свободой от родительских обязанностей.
7. Многие взрослые остаются с родителями во время учебы в колледже.
8. Они возвращаются домой после окончания учёбы временно или на постоянное проживание.
9. Члены семьи поддерживают отношения.
10. Они гордятся своей независимостью.
11. Они не хотят быть обузой для детей.
12. Они видятся реже чем раньше.
13. Люди уезжают из родного города.
14. Семья становится разьединенной.
15. Рождество – традиционное время для воссоединения.
16. Родственники часто едут издалека, чтобы провести праздники вместе.
17. Семейные празднования могут быть ещё более радостными.

ТЕХТ 2

1. Из всех моих родственников ...
2. Она самая младшая сестра моей мамы.
3. Она никогда не была замужем.
4. Она живёт одна в маленькой деревне.

5. Ей далеко за пятьдесят, но она довольно молода душой.
6. У неё светлый цвет лица.
7. У неё густые темно-русые волосы, которые она носит в пучке.
8. Её лицо немного морщинистое.
9. Она всё ещё довольно привлекательна.
10. Первое, что вы замечаете, когда встречаете ее, это её улыбка.
11. Она такой человек, к которому всегда можно подойти, если у тебя проблема.
12. Она все еще совершает долгие прогулки по холмам.
13. Она чрезвычайно щедрая.
14. Она не очень терпима к людям, которые с ней не соглашаются.
15. Надеюсь, я буду так же доволен жизнью как она, когда я буду в её возрасте.

VOC. 1. RELATIVES BY BIRTH

1. мать, мама (4)
2. отец, папа (3)
3. сестра, сводная сестра
4. брат, сводный брат
5. сын, дочь
6. близнецы
7. бабушка и дедушка (1 слово)
8. бабушка, бабуля (3)
9. дедушка, дедуля
10. внук, внучка, внуки
11. прадедушка, прабабушка
12. правнуки
13. дядя, тетья
14. двоюродный брат, двоюродная сестра
15. троюродный брат или сестра
16. племянник, племянница
17. близкие родственники,
18. дальние родственники

VOC. 2. RELATIVES BY MARRIAGE

1. муж
2. жена (+ мн. число)
3. свекор, тесть
4. свекровь, теща
5. зять
6. невестка, сноха
7. невестка, золовка, свояченица
8. зять, шурин, свояк, деверь
9. родители мужа или жены
10. мачеха
11. отчим
12. пасынок
13. падчерица
14. неродные дети
15. неродной брат

VOC. 3. WORD COMBINATIONS

1. Кто вам этот человек? Как его фамилия? Он вам родственник?
2. У Мэри куча родственников со стороны матери.
3. Скажите своё имя и отчество, пожалуйста.
4. Какое у него прозвище?
5. Билл наш знакомый. Он мой тезка.
6. Дэвид твой сосед?
7. Он ее близкий друг / партнер.
8. Где вы познакомились?
9. Фред мой одноклассник / сосед по парте / напарник.
10. Питер холостой.
11. Вильям развелся с ней. Он разведен.
12. Элис вдова. Брайан вдовец.
13. Том и Сюзан помолвлены.
14. Когда была свадьба?
15. У них был счастливый брак.
16. невеста до свадьбы, на свадьбе
17. жених до свадьбы, жених на свадьбе

VOC. 4. WORD COMBINATIONS

1. Они поженились в прошлом году.
2. Робин женился на Джулии.
3. Он женат на ней.
4. Кейт родила ребенка вчера.
5. Джим родился вчера.
6. Роберт единственный ребенок.
7. Келли была хорошенькая в детстве.
8. Маргарет не очень хорошая хозяйка.
9. Нас четверо в семье.
10. У нас много / мало общего.
11. У них дружная семья
12. С Джорджем легко общаться.
13. Мартина уважают коллеги.
14. Лиз только что закончила школу.
15. Эрнст ушел на пенсию год назад.
16. Марк на пенсии.
17. Джон умер в прошлом году.
18. Стивен мертв.

VOC. 6. PROVERBS

1. Кровь гуще воды.
2. Яблоко от яблони недалеко падает.
3. В семье не без урода.
4. Друг познается в беде.
5. Для чего же тогда друзья?
6. Всяк задним умом крепок.

7. Если держишь собаку, сам не лай.
8. Кот из дома - мыши в пляс.
9. Дареному коню в зубы не смотрят.

10. Не суди о книге по обложке.
11. Внешность обманчива.

HOLIDAYS 1

1. Давай устроим праздник и зажжем бенгальские огни.
2. Они отмечают годовщину свадьбы завтра. Ты пойдешь на празднование?
3. Когда у тебя день рождения? Ты собираешься его праздновать?
4. Кого мы пригласим на званый обед? В какой ресторан мы пойдем?
5. Гости будут есть и пить, шутить и смеяться, петь и танцевать.
6. Все будут развлекаться, веселиться (2) и хорошо проводить время.
7. Дети любят играть в игры и запускать фейерверки. Это очень весело.
8. Давай разыграем его и купим ему смешные воздушные шары. Это очень смешно.
9. Мы пошлем ему открытку и поздравим его с Рождеством.
10. Давай подарим ей игрушку на день рождения. (2)

HOLIDAYS 2

1. Мама всегда готовит что-то вкусное, а мы накрываем праздничный стол.
2. Я хочу сказать тост. Давайте выпьем шампанское за Ваше здоровье!
3. Давайте наполним бокалы вином. Бокалы наполнены вином. (2)
4. Они любят наряжаться (2) на праздник.
5. Они наденут костюмы (2) и пойдут на маскарад.
6. Мы всегда ставим елку и украшаем ее игрушками и мишурой.
7. Мы обычно украшаем дом гирляндами и разноцветными лампочками.
8. Сначала мы провожаем старый год, а потом встречаем новый год.
9. Кремлевские куранты бьют двенадцать и все поднимают бокалы.
10. С праздником! – Вас также!
11. С днем рождения! Желаю долгих лет жизни!
12. С Новым Годом! Веселого Рождества!
13. Поздравляем! Ваше здоровье!



23. mass media
24. thesis – theses
25. datum – data
26. phenomenon – phenomena

DICTIONARY KEYS

INTRODUCTORY COURSE

NOUNS 1

1. calf – calves
2. wolf – wolves
3. elf – elves
4. knife – knives
5. wife – wives
6. leaf – leaves
7. half – halves
8. life – lives
9. shelf – shelves
10. loaf – loaves
11. thief – thieves
12. dwarf – dwarfs / dwarves
13. scarf – scarfs / scarves
14. handkerchief – handkerchiefs
15. man – men / person – people
16. people – peoples
17. woman – women
18. goose – geese
19. foot – feet
20. tooth – teeth
21. mouse – mice
22. louse – lice
23. child – children
24. ox – oxen

NOUNS 2

1. key – keys
2. baby – babies
3. army – armies
4. radio – radios
5. mosquito – mosquitos / mosquitoes
6. photo – photos
7. kilo – kilos
8. piano – pianos
9. Negro – Negroes
10. zero – zeros / zeroes
11. tomato – tomatoes
12. hero – heroes
13. gentleman – gentlemen
14. mouse-trap – mouse-traps
15. German – Germans
16. man-eater – man-eaters
17. passer-by – passers-by
18. mother-in-law – mothers-in-law
19. grown-up – grown-ups
20. forget-me-not – forget-me-nots
21. merry-go-round – merry-go-rounds
22. alveolus – alveoli

NOUNS 3

1. This is bad advice.
2. I want this information.
3. What luck!
4. Their knowledge is good.
5. Where is the money? – It's in the safe.
6. Their progress is great.
7. He got permission.
8. There's a lot of travel in her life.
9. This is good work. / This is a good job.
10. He's got a lot of work.
11. Hand in your works.
12. Her hair is dark.
13. This is bad news.
14. Phonetics is a difficult subject.
15. These two sheep are in the yard.
16. We caught five fish.
17. Where are my jeans?
18. Your pyjamas are here.
19. The scissors are on the table.
20. Where are my glasses?
21. These are binoculars.
22. Where are your clothes? – They are here.
23. His wages are high.
24. one TV series – two TV series
25. one bird species – 20 bird species

PROFESSIONS 1

1. What do you do (for a living)?
2. What is your occupation?
3. What is he?
4. accountant
5. actor, actress
6. artist, painter
7. architect
8. hairdresser / barber
9. builder
10. businessman – businessmen
11. carpenter
12. clerk, office worker
13. coach – coaches
14. composer
15. conductor
16. cook
17. dentist
18. dean
19. director
20. doctor
21. driver
22. engineer
23. farmer
24. fashion designer

25. guide
26. headmaster / headmistress
27. housewife – housewives

PROFESSIONS 2

1. translator / interpreter
2. journalist, reporter, correspondent
3. lawyer
4. locksmith
5. manager
6. mechanic
7. miner
8. model
9. musician
10. nanny / child minder / babysitter
11. nurse
12. photographer
13. policeman – policemen
14. postman – postmen
15. programmer
16. salesperson / salesman / shop assistant
17. sailor
18. scientist
19. secretary – secretaries
20. singer
21. soldier
22. surgeon
23. teacher, tutor
24. waiter, waitress
25. worker
26. writer, author

ANIMALS 1

1. ant
2. bear
3. bee – bees
4. beetle, bug
5. butterfly – butterflies
6. camel
7. cat (kitten)
8. cock, rooster
9. cow, calf – calves
10. crocodile
11. one deer – two deer
12. dog, puppy – puppies
13. donkey – donkeys, ass – asses
14. duck
15. eagle
16. elephant
17. fox – foxes
18. frog
19. giraffe – giraffes
20. goat
21. goose – geese

22. hamster

ANIMALS 2

1. hare
2. hedgehog
3. hen, chicken
4. horse
5. one kangaroo – two kangaroos
6. leopard
7. lion
8. monkey – monkeys
9. owl
10. parrot
11. peacock
12. penguin
13. one pig – two pigs / one swine – two swine
14. pigeon, dove
15. rabbit
16. roe
17. one sheep – two sheep, lamb
18. snake
19. sparrow
20. squirrel
21. swallow
22. swan
23. tick
24. tiger
25. turkey – turkeys
26. tortoise / turtle
27. whale
28. wolf – wolves
29. woodpecker

HOMOPHONES & SIMILAR WORDS

1. air 2. ear 3. heir
4. bare 5. bear 6. beer
7. buy 8. Bye! 9. by
10. chair 11. cheer
12. dare 13. dear 14. deer
15. fair 16. fare 17. fear
18. hair 19. hare 20. hear 21. here
22. line 23. lion
24. Mary 25. marry 26. merry
27. pair 28. pear 29. peer
30. peace 31. piece
32. quiet 33. quite
34. tail 35. tale
36. than 37. then
38. their 39. there
40. tide 41. tied 42. tired
43. to 44. two 45. too

46. wear 47. were 48. where
 49. wood 50. would
 51. write 52. right 53. rite

NUMERALS

- 1) one 2) first 3) eleven
 4) two 5) second 6) twelve
 7) twelfth 8) twenty 9) twentieth
 10) three 11) third 12) thirteen
 13) four 14) fourteen 15) forty
 16) five 17) fifth 18) fifty
 19) nine 20) ninth 21) nineteenth
 22) ninety-eighth 23) a hundred
 24) six million seven hundred and fifteen
 thousand two hundred and thirty-eight

PRONOUNS 1

1. He lives by himself. He lives on his own.
2. Behave yourself!
3. Enjoy yourself!
4. Help yourself.
5. Make yourself at home.
6. That's it.
7. This is it.
8. That's just it.
9. And that's that.
10. Same with me.
11. The same to you. 12. Same time, same place

PRONOUNS 2

1. On the whole / All in all, ...
2. Neither I nor my children are tired.
3. Neither my children nor I am tired.
4. Some other time.
5. He comes here every other day.
6. I saw him the other day.
7. I'll see him one of these days.

TOPIC 1. GETTING ACQUAINTED

COUNTRIES

1. Australia
2. Austria
3. Belgium
4. Brazil
5. Bulgaria
6. Canada
7. China
8. Denmark
9. Egypt
10. Finland
11. France
12. Germany
13. Great Britain / the UK / the United Kingdom
of Great Britain and Northern Ireland
14. Greece

15. India
16. Ireland
17. Italy
18. Japan
19. Mexico
20. the Netherlands / Holland
21. New Zealand
22. Norway
23. Poland
24. Portugal
25. Russia
26. Spain
27. Sweden
28. Switzerland
29. Turkey
30. the USA \ the United States of America

CAPITALS

1. Canberra
2. Vienna
3. Brussels
4. Brasilia
5. Sofia
6. Ottawa
7. Beijing (Peking)
8. Copenhagen
9. Cairo
10. Helsinki
11. Paris
12. Berlin
13. London
14. Athens
15. New Delhi
16. Dublin
17. Rome
18. Tokyo
19. Mexico City
20. Amsterdam
21. Wellington
22. Oslo
23. Warsaw
24. Lisbon
25. Moscow
26. Madrid
27. Stockholm
28. Bern
29. Ankara
30. Washington

LANGUAGES & NATIONALITIES

1. Australian
2. the Austrians
3. a Belgian
4. the Brazilians
5. Bulgarian
6. a Canadian
7. the Danish \ the Danes

8. Arabic
9. an Egyptian
10. Finnish
11. a Finn
12. two Frenchmen
13. the French
14. two Germans
15. the British, the English
16. two Englishmen
17. a Greek
18. Indian
19. the Irish
20. two Irishmen
21. an Italian
22. two Japanese
23. a Mexican
24. the Dutch
25. two Dutchmen
26. New-Zealand
27. Norwegian
28. Polish
29. a Pole
30. a Portuguese
31. the Russians
32. the Spanish \ the Spaniards
33. the Swedish \ the Swedes
34. two Swiss
35. Turkish
36. a Turk
37. the Americans

GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES 1

1. Africa
2. Antarctica
3. Australia
4. Eurasia (Europe and Asia)
5. North America
6. South America
7. the Atlantic Ocean
8. the Arctic Ocean
9. the Indian Ocean
10. the Pacific Ocean
11. the Baltic Sea
12. the Black Sea
13. the Caspian Sea
14. the Mediterranean Sea
15. Lake Baikal
16. Lake Michigan
17. river
18. the Amazon
19. the Mississippi
20. the Nile
21. the Danube
22. the Thames
23. the Panama Canal
24. the Suez Canal
25. the (English) Channel

26. the Gulf of Mexico

GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES 2

1. mountain
2. the Andes
3. the Alps
4. the Caucasus
5. the Cordilleras
6. the Himalayas
7. the Urals
8. Elbrus
9. Everest
10. Mont Blanc
11. Kilimanjaro
12. the Canary Islands, the Canaries
13. the Hawaiian Islands, the Hawaii
14. the Bahamas
15. the Bermudas
16. the British Isles
17. Corsica
18. Cyprus
19. Iceland
20. Madagascar
21. Sicily
22. the Arctic
23. the Antarctic
24. the Crimea
25. the Equator
26. the Far East
27. the Near East / the Middle East
28. the North Pole / the South Pole

ARTICLE "A"

1. It's a pity.
2. What a pity!
3. It's a pleasure. What a pleasure!
4. It's a disappointment. What a disappointment.
5. Don't be in a hurry.
6. As a result, we were late.
7. As a rule, he isn't late.
8. Have a good time there!
9. They are at a loss.
10. Don't tell me a lie!
11. Sleep for a while.
12. Don't catch (a) cold.
13. She has a cold.

ARTICLE "THE"

1. It's out of the question.
2. Read books in the original.
3. Tell me the truth.
4. On the whole, he is right.
5. On the one hand, he is wrong.

6. On the other hand, I am sorry for him.
7. By the way, he is late.
8. Do you play the piano or the violin?
9. We seldom go to the cinema and to the theatre
10. Let's go to the country, shall we?
11. Keep to the house to be on the safe side.
12. Keep to the bed, please.
13. What's the news?
14. What's the matter?
15. Tell me the time, please.

ZERO ARTICLE

1. Let's go by bus.
2. Let's go on foot.
3. Does he play tennis or football?
4. It's love at first sight.
5. Is she at home or at work?
6. They met by chance.
7. He did it by mistake.
8. He calls her by name.
9. Learn the text by heart from beginning to end.
10. He is sorry at heart.
11. Don't take it to heart.
12. Don't lose heart.
13. Don't take offence.
14. He will give permission.
15. She will get permission.
16. Ask permission.
17. She keeps house.
18. He gets up at sunrise.
19. They walk at sunset hand in hand.
20. He is in debt.

ARTICLES (ORAL REVISION)

1. It's a pity! It's out of the question.
2. He does everything in a hurry.
3. On the one hand, there is no news.
4. On the other hand, it's not bad
5. As a result he is in debt.
6. He reads books in the original.
7. As a rule, he gets up at sunrise.
8. Let's go to the cinema or to the theatre.
9. Read the text from beginning to end.
10. What's the matter? – She isn't at home.
11. We have a good time here.
12. We were at a loss.
13. Do they tell a lie or the truth?
14. He went there by mistake.
15. She takes everything to heart.
16. They walk hand in hand.
17. We don't lose heart.
18. They go to bed late.
19. He likes to stay in bed in the morning.
20. She always takes offence.
21. He gave permission.
22. We got permission.
23. We don't ask permission.

24. She came for a while.
25. We liked him at first sight.
26. They learn poems by heart.
27. I have a cold. – What a pity!
28. They went from house to house.
29. They met face to face.
30. May I call you by name?
31. What a pleasure!
32. What a disappointment!
33. You know it at heart.
34. She told us the time.
35. He heard it by chance.
36. On the whole, I agree with you.
37. They played football the other day.
38. By the way, he is at work.
39. We play tennis here.
40. She plays the piano.
41. I don't play the violin.
42. They keep to the house.
43. Who keeps house?
44. Ask him to be on the safe side.
45. He is wet from head to foot.
46. I don't want to go on foot.
47. What's the news?

TOPIC 2. APPEARANCE

VOC. 1 (part 1)

1. He is good-looking / pleasant-looking
2. She is pretty.
3. He is handsome, isn't he?
4. What a charming girl!
5. She is nice to look at.
6. She has a good / slender / plump / stout / graceful / well-cut / well-shaped figure
7. He is stooping.
8. He's strongly built / slightly built / well built
9. He's narrow-shouldered / broad-shouldered
10. She is long-legged.
11. She has thick / thin / curly / wavy / straight dyed / blonde / red / dark / hair.
12. She wears a haircut / a fringe.
13. He has a crew cut.
14. She wears her hair long / short / shoulder-length.
15. She wears a plait.
16. Her hair is done in a pony tail.
17. He is bald.
18. He wears a beard / (a) moustache / sideburns.
19. He is always clean-shaven.
20. She has a common / round / oval face.
21. He has regular / irregular / rough / delicate features.
22. He has a high / open / low forehead.
23. She has a pale / rosy / fair / dark / tanned complexion.

VOC. 1 (part 2)

1. She has blue / wide-set / close-set / deep-set slanting / small / large / expressive eyes
2. She has long / short / curving eyelashes.
3. He has thick / thin / bushy / arched / straight eyebrows
4. He has a long / short / straight / aquiline / snub / turned-up nose.
5. She has hollow / plump / rosy cheeks.
6. He has a pointed / double / round / square chin.
7. She has thin / full / well-shaped lips.
8. He has even / uneven teeth.
9. She is blue-eyed and rosy-cheeked.
10. He is fair-haired and round-faced.
11. She has smooth skin / freckles.
12. He has a dimple in (on) his chin / dimples on his cheeks.
13. She is like Mum in appearance.
14. They are as like as two peas.
15. He is the image of his father.
16. She is very different from her elder sister.

VOC. 2. CHARACTER

1. absent-minded
2. bright
3. capable
4. clever
5. intelligent
6. honest
7. hospitable
8. just
9. kind-hearted
10. light-minded
11. naughty
12. reliable
13. selfish
14. serious
15. slap-dash
16. sociable
17. stubborn
18. trustful
19. well-read
20. witty

VOC. 3 AGE

1. What's your age?
2. How old are you?
3. He is under 17.
4. He is nearly 17.
5. He is over 17.
6. He is about 17.

7. He is a fourteen-year-old boy.
8. He is under age.
9. She will come of age soon.
10. He is a teenager. / He is in his teens.
11. He is in his early thirties.
12. He is in his mid thirties.
13. He is in his late thirties.
14. He is elderly.
15. She is middle-aged.
16. She doesn't look her age.
17. They are (of) the same age.
18. Jim is the same age as Dave. / Jim is as old as Dave.
19. She is three years younger than me. / She is three years my junior.
20. She is three years older than me. / She is three years my senior.

TOPIC 3. FAMILY

TEXT 1

1. The number of divorces has increased.
2. The contemporary British child doesn't have a lot of companionship.
3. The average family has one or two children.
4. Most of them live with their parents.
5. They leave them sad and lonely in their empty nest.
6. They enjoy their release from parental responsibilities.
7. Many adults stay with their parents during their college years.
8. They return home after graduation temporarily or on a long-term basis.
9. Members of the family keep in touch.
10. They take pride in their independence.
11. They don't want to be a burden to their children.
12. They see less of each other than they used to.
13. People move away from home town.
14. The family becomes scattered.
15. Christmas is the traditional season for reunions.
16. Relatives often travel many miles in order to spend the holidays together.
17. Family parties may be all the more joyous.

TEXT 2

1. Of all my relatives...
2. She is my mother's youngest sister.
3. She has never married.
4. She lives alone in a small village.
5. She is in her late fifties, but she is quite young in spirit.
6. She has a fair complexion.

7. She has thick brown hair, which she wears in a bun.
8. Her face is a little wrinkled.
9. She is still rather attractive.
10. The first thing you notice when you meet her is her smile.
11. She is the sort of person you can always go to if you have a problem.
12. She still goes for long walks over the hills.
13. She is extremely generous.
14. She isn't very tolerant with people who don't agree with her.
15. I hope I am as contented as she is when I am her age.

VOC. 1. RELATIVES BY BIRTH

1. mother, mummy, mum, mom
2. father, daddy, dad
3. sister, half-sister
4. brother, half-brother
5. son, daughter
6. (identical) twins
7. grandparents
8. grandmother, granny, grandma
9. grandfather, grandpa
10. grandson, granddaughter, grandchildren
11. great-grandfather, great-grandmother
12. great-grandchildren
13. uncle, aunt
14. cousin
15. second cousin
16. nephew, niece
17. close relatives
18. distant relatives

VOC. 2. RELATIVES BY MARRIAGE

1. husband
2. wife, wives
3. father-in-law
4. mother-in-law
5. son-in-law
6. daughter-in-law
7. sister-in-law
8. brother-in-law
9. parents-in-law
10. stepmother
11. stepfather
12. stepson
13. stepdaughter
14. stepchildren
15. stepbrother



VOC. 3. WORD COMBINATIONS

1. Who is this man to you? What is his surname? Is he a relation to you?
2. Mary has a world of relatives on her mother's side.
3. Tell me your name and patronymic, please.
4. What is his nickname?
5. Bill is our acquaintance. He is my namesake.
6. Is David your neighbour?
7. He is her close friend / partner.
8. Where did you get acquainted?
9. Fred is my schoolmate / seatmate / workmate.
10. Peter is single.
11. William divorced her. He is divorced.
12. Alice is a widow. Brian is a widower.
13. Tom and Susan are engaged.
14. When was the wedding?
15. They had a happy marriage.
16. fiancée, bride
17. fiancé, bridegroom

VOC. 4. WORD COMBINATIONS

1. They married last year.
2. Robin married Julia.
3. He is married to her.
4. Kate had a baby yesterday.
5. Jim was born yesterday.
6. Robert is an only child.
7. Kelly was pretty in her childhood.
8. Margaret isn't much of a housewife.
9. We are four in the family.
10. We have much / little in common.
11. They have a happy family.
12. George is easy to deal with.
13. Martin is respected by his colleagues.
14. Liz is just out of school.
15. Ernest retired a year ago.
16. Mark is retired.
17. John died last year.
18. Stephen is dead.

VOC. 6. PROVERBS

1. Blood is thicker than water.
2. Like father, like son.
3. Every family has a black sheep.
4. A friend in need is a friend indeed.

5. What are friends for?
6. It's easy to be wise after the event.
7. Don't keep a dog and bark yourself.
8. When the cat is away, the mice will play.
9. Never look a gift horse in the mouth.

10. Never judge a book by its cover.
11. Beauty is only skin deep.

HOLIDAYS 1

1. Let's have a holiday and light the sparklers.
2. They are marking their wedding anniversary tomorrow. Will you go to the celebration?
3. When is your birthday? Are you going to have a birthday party?
4. Who shall we invite to the dinner party? What restaurant shall we go to?
5. The guests will eat and drink, joke and laugh, sing and dance.
6. Everybody will entertain themselves, make merry (=have fun) and have a good time.
7. Children like to play games and let off fireworks. It's a lot of fun.
8. Let's play a trick on him and buy him some funny balloons. It's very funny.
9. We'll send him a greeting card and congratulate him on Christmas.
10. Let's give her a toy for her birthday. Let's present her with a toy.

HOLIDAYS 2

1. Mum always makes some tasty things and we lay a festive table.
2. I want to propose a toast. Let's drink champagne to your health!
3. Let's fill the glasses with wine. The glasses are filled with wine. The glasses are full of wine.
4. They like to dress up (to put on their best clothes) for the holiday.
5. They will put on costumes (fancy dresses) and go to a fancy dress ball.
6. We always set a fir tree and decorate it with toys and tinsel.
7. We usually decorate the house with garlands and coloured lights.
8. First we see the Old Year out and then we see the New Year in.
9. The Kremlin chimes beat twelve and everybody raises glasses.
10. Happy Holiday! – The same to you!
11. Happy Birthday! Many happy returns of the day!
12. Happy New Year! Merry Christmas!
13. Congratulations! Cheers!



SUPPLEMENT 5. SONGS

Without music life would be a mistake
(Friedrich Nietzsche)

TEN LITTLE INDIANS

One little, two little, three little Indians,
four little, five little, six little Indians,
seven little, eight little, nine little Indians,
ten little Indian boys.

Ten little, nine little, eight little Indians,
seven little, six little, five little Indians,
four little, three little, two little Indians,
one little Indian boy.

ONE MAN WENT TO MOW

One man went to mow
He went to mow on meadow
One man and his dog (wow, wow)
Went to mow on meadow.

Two men went to mow
They went to mow on meadow
Two men, one man and his dog (wow, wow)
Went to mow on meadow.

Three men went to mow
They went to mow on meadow
Three men, two men, 1 man and his dog (wow, wow)
Went to mow on meadow.

Four men went to mow
They went to mow on meadow
Four men, three men, two men, one man and
his dog (wow, wow)
Went to mow on meadow.

Five men went to mow
They went to mow on meadow
Five men, four men, three men, two men,
one man and his dog (wow, wow)
Went to mow on meadow.

Ten men went to mow
They went to mow on meadow
Ten men, nine men, eight men, seven men, six
men, five men, four men, three men, two men,
one man and his dog (wow, wow)
Went to mow on meadow.

TEN GREEN BOTTLES

Ten green bottles hanging on the wall (2)
And if one green bottle should accidentally fall ..

There'll be nine green bottles hanging on the wall
Nine green bottles hanging on the wall
And if one green bottle should accidentally fall ..

There'll be eight green bottles hanging on the wall
Eight green bottles hanging on the wall
And if one green bottle should accidentally fall ..

There'll be seven green bottles hanging on the wall
Seven green bottles hanging on the wall
And if one green bottle should accidentally fall ..

There'll be six green bottles hanging on the wall
Six green bottles hanging on the wall
And if one green bottle should accidentally fall ..

There'll be five green bottles hanging on the wall
Five green bottles hanging on the wall
And if one green bottle should accidentally fall ..

There'll be four green bottles hanging on the wall
Four green bottles hanging on the wall
And if one green bottle should accidentally fall ..

There'll be three green bottles hanging on the wall
Three green bottles hanging on the wall
And if one green bottle should accidentally fall ..

There'll be two green bottles hanging on the wall
Two green bottles hanging on the wall
And if one green bottle should accidentally fall ..

There'll be one green bottle hanging on the wall
One green bottle hanging on the wall
And if one green bottle should accidentally fall ..
There'll be no green bottles hanging on the wall

OLD MACDONALD HAD A FARM

Old McDonald had a farm, E-I-E-I-O!
And on his farm he had some chicks, E-I-E-I-O!
With a cluck, cluck here and a cluck, cluck there,
Here a cluck, there a cluck,
Everywhere a cluck, cluck
Old McDonald had a farm, E-I-E-I-O!

Old McDonald had a farm, E-I-E-I-O!
And on his farm he had some cows, E-I-E-I-O!
With a moo, moo here and a moo, moo there
Here a moo, there a moo
Everywhere a moo, moo
Old McDonald had a farm, E-I-E-I-O!

Old McDonald had a farm, E-I-E-I-O!
And on his farm he had some ducks, E-I-E-I-O!
With a quack, quack here and a quack, quack there
Here a quack, there a quack
Everywhere a quack, quack
Old McDonald had a farm, E-I-E-I-O!

Old McDonald had a farm, E-I-E-I-O!
And on his farm he had some pigs, E-I-E-I-O!
With an oink, oink here and an oink, oink there
Here an oink, there an oink
Everywhere an oink, oink
Old McDonald had a farm, E-I-E-I-O!

Old McDonald had a farm, E-I-E-I-O!
And on his farm he had some sheep, E-I-E-I-O!
With a baa, baa here and a baa, baa there
Here a baa, there a baa
Everywhere a baa, baa

Oink, oink here and oink, oink there
 Here an oink, there an oink
 Everywhere an oink, oink
 Quack, quack here and a quack, quack there
 Here a quack, there a quack
 Everywhere a quack, quack
 Moo, moo here and a moo, moo there
 Here a moo, there a moo
 Everywhere a moo, moo
 Cluck, cluck here and a cluck, cluck there,
 Here a cluck, there a cluck,
 Everywhere a cluck, cluck
 Old McDonald had a farm, E-I-E-I-O!
 (There are no dinosaurs on a farm!)

THE FOX (Ylvis)

Dog goes woof, cat goes meow
 Bird goes tweet and mouse goes squeek
 Cow goes moo, frog goes croak
 And the elephant goes toot
 Ducks say quack and fish go blub
 And the seal goes ow ow ow
 But there's one sound that no one knows

What does the fox say?

Ding-ding-ding-ding-dingeringeding! (3)
 What the fox say?
 Wa-pa-pa-pa-pa-pa-pow! (3)
 What the fox say?
 Hatee-hatee-hatee-ho! (3)
 What the fox say?
 Joff-tchoff-tchoffo-tchoffo-tchoff! (3)
 What the fox say?

Big blue eyes, pointy nose
 Chasing mice and digging holes
 Tiny paws up the hill
 Suddenly you're standing still
 Your fur is red, so beautiful
 Like an angel in disguise
 But if you meet a friendly horse
 Will you communicate by mo-o-o-o-orse? (3)
 How will you speak to that ho-o-o-o-orse? (3)

What does the fox say?

Jacha-chacha-chacha-chow! (3)
 What the fox say?
 Fraka-kaka-kaka-kaka-kow! (3)
 What the fox say?
 A-hee-ahee ha-hee! (3)
 What the fox say?
 A-oo-oo-oo-ooo! (2)
 What does the fox say?

The secret of the fox, ancient mystery
 Somewhere deep in the woods I know you're hiding
 What is your sound? Will we ever know?
 Will always be a mystery ... what do you say?
 You're my guardian angel hiding in the woods
 What is your sound? Will we ever know?
 I want to, I want to, I want to know!

(Fox sings) Abay-ba-da bum-bum bay-do

THIS IS THE HOUSE THAT JACK BUILT

This is the house that Jack built.
 This is the malt that lay in the house that Jack built.
 This is the rat that ate the malt that lay in the house that Jack built.
 This is the cat that ate the rat that ate the malt hat lay in the house that Jack built.
 This is the dog that worried the cat that ate the rat that ate the malt that lay in the house that Jack built.

SEVEN DAYS (Craig David)

On my way to see my friends
 Who lived a couple blocks away from me
 As I walked through the subway
 It must have been about quarter past three
 In front of me stood
 A beautiful honey with a beautiful body
 She asked me for the time, I said it'd cost her her name
 A six digit number and a date with tomorrow at nine
 Did she decline? – No.
 Didn't she mind? – I don't think so.
 Was it for real? – Damn sure.
 What was the deal? – A pretty girl aged 24.
 So was she keen? – She couldn't wait.
 Cinnamon queen? – Let me update.
 What did she say? – She said she'd love to rendezvous.
 She asked me what we were gonna do
 Said we'd start with a bottle of moët for two
Chorus: Monday

 Took her for a drink on Tuesday
 We were making love by Wednesday
 And on Thursday and Friday and Saturday
 We chilled on Sunday
 I met this girl on Monday
 Took her for a drink on Tuesday
 We were making love by Wednesday
 And on Thursday and Friday and Saturday
 We chilled on Sunday

Nine was the time cos I'll be getting mine
 And she was looking fine – smooth talker
 She told me she'd love to unfold me all night long
 Ooh I loved the way she kicked it
 From the front to back she flipped
 And I oh I yeah hope that she'd care
 Cos I'm a man who'll always be there – ooh yeah
 I'm not a man to play around baby – ooh yeah
 Cos a one night stand isn't really fair
 From the first impression girl hmm
 You don't seem to be like that
 Cos there's no need to chat
 For there'll be plenty of time for that
 From the subway to my home
 Endless ringing of my phone
 When you're feeling all alone
 All you gotta do is just call me call me

Chorus:

 Since I met this special lady
 I can't get her off my mind
 She's one of a kind
 And I ain't about to deny it
 It's a special kind of thing with you – oh ...

FRIDAY I'M IN LOVE (The Cure)

I don't care if Monday's blue
 Tuesday's gray and Wednesday's too
 Thursday I don't care about you
It's Friday I'm in love

Monday you can fall apart
 Tuesday Wednesday break my heart
 Thursday doesn't even start
It's Friday I'm in love

Saturday wait
 And Sunday always comes too late
 But Friday'll never hesitate ...

I don't care if Monday's black
 Tuesday Wednesday heart attack
 Thursday's never looking back
It's Friday I'm in love

Monday you can hold your head
 Tuesday Wednesday stay in bed
 On Thursday watch the walls instead
It's Friday I'm in love

Saturday wait
 And Sunday always comes too late
 But Friday'll never hesitate ...

Dressed up to the eyes
 It's a wonderful surprise
 To see your shoes and your spirits rise
 Throwing out your frown
 And just smiling at the sound
 And as sleek as a shriek
 Spinning round and round
 Always take a big bite
 It's such a gorgeous sight
 To see you eat in the middle of the night
 You can never get enough
 Enough of this stuff
It's Friday I'm in love

HELLO (Lionel Richie)

I've been alone with you inside my mind
 And in my dreams I kissed your lips
 A thousand times
 I sometimes see you pass outside my door
 Hello! Is it me you're looking for?
 I can see it in your eyes
 I can see it in your smile
 You're all I've ever wanted
 And my arms are opened wide
 'Cause you know just what to say
 And you know just what to do
 And I want to tell you so much 'I love you'

I long to see the sunlight in your hair
 And tell you time and time again
 How much I care
 Sometimes I feel my heart will overflow
 Hello! I've just got to let you know
 'Cause I wonder where you are
 And I wonder what you do
 Are you somewhere feeling lonely
 Or is someone loving you?

Tell me how to win your heart
 For I haven't got the clue
 But let me start by saying 'I love you'

MY BONNIE

My bonnie lies over the ocean
 My bonnie lies over the sea
 My bonnie lies over the ocean
 Oh, bring back my bonnie to me
 Bring back, bring back,
 Oh, bring back my bonnie to me, to me
 Bring back, bring back,
 Oh, bring back my bonnie to me
 Last night as I lay on my pillow
 Last night as I lay on my bed
 Last night as I lay on my pillow
 I dreamed that my bonnie was dead
 Bring back, bring back,
 Oh, bring back my bonnie to me, to me
 Bring back, bring back,
 Oh, bring back my bonnie to me
 Oh, blow ye winds over the ocean
 And, blow ye winds over the sea
 Oh, blow ye winds over the ocean
 And bring back my bonnie to me
 Bring back, bring back,
 Oh, bring back my bonnie to me, to me
 Bring back, bring back,
 Oh, bring back my bonnie to me
 The winds have blown over the ocean
 The winds have blown over the sea
 The winds have blown over the ocean
 And brought back my bonnie to me
 Bring back, bring back,
 Oh, bring back my bonnie to me, to me
 Bring back, bring back,
 Oh, bring back my bonnie to me

GO DOWN, MOSES (Lois Armstrong)

*Go down, Moses,
 Way down in Egypt land
 Tell old pharaoh
 To let my people go*
 Now when Israel was in Egypt land
Let my people go
 Oppressed so hard they couldn't stand
Let my people go
 So the Lord said, "Go down, Moses,
 Way down in Egypt land
 Tell old pharaohs
 To let my people go".
 So Moses went to Egypt land
Let my people go
 He made old pharaoh understand
Let my people go
 Yes the Lord said, "Go down, Moses,
 Way down in Egypt land
 Tell old pharaohs
 To let my people go".
 Thus spoke the Lord, bold Moses said
Let my people go
 If not I'll smite your first-born dead
Let my people go

'Cause the lord said, "Go down, Moses,
Way down in Egypt land
Tell old pharaoh
To let my people go".

ENGLISHMAN IN NEW YORK (Sting)

I don't drink coffee I take tea my dear
I like my toast done on one side
And you can hear it in my accent when I talk
I'm an Englishman in New York
See me walking down Fifth Avenue
A walking cane here at my side
I take it everywhere I walk
I'm an Englishman in New York

Chorus: Woh, oh, I'm an alien

I'm a legal alien

I'm an Englishman in New York

If 'manners maketh man' as someone said
Then he's the hero of the day
It takes a man to suffer ignorance and smile
Be yourself no matter what they say

Chorus:

Modesty propriety can lead to notoriety
You could end up as the only one
Gentleness, sobriety are rare in this society
At night the candle's brighter than the sun
Takes more than combat gear to make a man
Takes more than a license for a gun
Confront your enemies, avoid them when you can
A gentleman will walk but never run
If 'manners maketh man' as someone said
Then he's the hero of the day
It takes a man to suffer ignorance and smile
Be yourself no matter what they say

I AM SAILING (Rod Stewart)

I am sailing, I am sailing
Home again across the sea
I am sailing, stormy waters
To be near you, to be free
I am flying, I am flying
Like a bird across the sky
I am flying, passing high clouds
To be where you, to be free
Can you hear me?
Can you hear me?
Through the dark night far away
I'm dying, forever trying
To be with you who can say:
We are sailing, we are sailing
Home again across the sea
We are sailing, stormy waters
To be near you, to be free
Oh, Lord, to be near you, to be free

MY PRETTY MAID

Where are you going to, my pretty maid?
Where are you going to, my pretty maid?
'I'm going a-milking, sir', she said,
sir, she said, sir, she said
'I'm going a-milking', sir, she said
May I go with you, my pretty maid?
May I go with you, my pretty maid?

'You're kindly welcome, sir', she said,
sir, she said, sir, she said
'You're kindly welcome, sir', she said
What is your fortune, my pretty maid?
What is your fortune, my pretty maid?
'My face is my fortune', sir, she said,
sir, she said, sir, she said
'My face is my fortune, sir', she said
Then I can't marry you, my pretty maid.
Then I can't marry you, my pretty maid.
'Nobody asked you, sir', she said,
sir, she said sir she said
'Nobody asked you, sir', she said

BILLY BOY

Where have you been all the day, Billy boy, Billy boy?
Where have you been all the day, charming Billy?
I have been to seek a wife
She's the idol of my life
She's a young thing and cannot leave her mother
Did she bid you come in, Billy boy, Billy boy?
Did she bid you come in, charming Billy?
Yes she bade me to come in
She's a dimple on her chin
She's a young thing and cannot leave her mother
Did she set for you a chair, Billy boy, Billy boy?
Did she set for you a chair, charming Billy?
Yes, she set for me a chair
She has ringlets in her hair
She's a young thing and cannot leave her mother
Can she bake a cherry pie, Billy boy, Billy boy?
Can she bake a cherry pie, charming Billy?
She can bake a cherry pie
Quick as the cat can wink her eye
She's a young thing and cannot leave her mother
How old is she, Billy boy, Billy boy?
How old is she, charming Billy?
Three times six and four times seven,
Twenty eight and eleven
She's a young thing and cannot leave her mother

STRONG ENOUGH (Sheryl Crow)

God, I feel like hell tonight
Tears of rage I cannot fight
I'd be the last to help you understand
Are you strong enough to be my man?
Nothing's true and nothing's right
So let me be alone tonight
As you can't change the way I am
Are you strong enough to be my man?
Lie to me, I promise I'll believe
Lie to me, but please don't leave
I have a face I cannot show
I make the rules up as I go
It's try and love me if you can
Are you strong enough to be my man?
When I've shown you that I just don't care
When I'm throwing punches in the air
When I'm broken down and I can't stand
Would you be man enough to be my man?
Lie to me, I promise I'll believe
Lie to me, but please don't leave

SATISFACTION (Rolling Stones)

I can get no satisfaction (2)
 'Cause I try and I try and I try and I try
 I can get no, I can get no
 When I'm driving in my car
 And that man comes on the radio
 And he's telling me more and more
 About some useless information
 Supposed to fire my imagination.
 I can get no, oh no no no
 Hey hey hey, that's what I say.

I can get no satisfaction (2)
 'Cause I try and I try and I try and I try
 I can get no, I can get no

When I'm watching my TV
 And that man comes on to tell me
 How white my shirts can be.
 Well he can't be a man 'cause he doesn't smoke
 The same cigarettes as me
 I can get no, oh no no no
 Hey hey hey, that's what I say

I can get no satisfaction
 I can get no girl with action
 'Cause I try and I try and I try and I try
 I can get no, I can get no

When I'm riding round the world
 And I'm doing this and I'm signing that
 And I'm trying to make some girl
 Who tells me baby better come back later next week
 'cause you see I'm on losing streak.
 I can get no, oh no no no
 Hey hey hey, that's what I say
 I can get no, I can get no, I can get no
 satisfaction, no satisfaction, no satisfaction, no
 satisfaction

PLAY WITH FIRE (Rolling Stones)

Well, you've got your diamonds
 And you've got your pretty clothes
 And the chauffer drives your car
 You let everybody know
 But don't play with me 'cause you play with fire
 Your mother, she's an heiress
 Owns a block in Saint John's Wood
 And your father'd be there with her
 If he only could
 But don't play with me 'cause you play with fire
 Your old man took her diamonds
 And tiaras by the score
 Now she gets her kicks in Stepney
 Not in Nightsbridge anymore
 So don't play with me 'cause you play with fire
 Now you've got some diamonds
 And you will have some others
 But you'd better watch your step, girl
 Or start living with your mother
 So don't play with me 'cause you play with fire
 So don't play with me 'cause you play with fire

ANYBODY SEEN MY BABY? (Rolling Stones)

She confessed her love to me
 Then she vanished on the breeze
 Trying to hold on to that was just impossible
 She was more than beautiful
 Closer to ethereal
 With a kind of down to earth flavor

Close my eyes
 It's three in the afternoon
 Then I, I realize that she's really gone for good

Anybody seen my baby?
 Anybody seen her around?
 Love has gone and made me blind
 I've looked but I just can't find
 She has got lost in the crowd

I was flipping magazines
 In that place on Mercy Street
 When I thought I spotted her
 Getting on a motor bike
 Looking really lady like
 Didn't she just give me a wave?

Salty tears
 It's three in the afternoon
 Has she disappeared?
 Has she really gone for good?
 Anybody seen my baby?
 Anybody seen her around?

If I just, just close my eyes
 I'll reach out and touch the prize
 Anybody seen her around?

 Anybody seen my baby?
 Anybody seen her around?
 If I just, just close my eyes
 I'll reach out and touch the prize
 Anybody seen her around?
 Anybody seen my baby?
 Anybody seen her around?
 Lost, lost and never found, oh yeah
 I must have called her a thousand times
 Oh, sometimes I just think she's just in my
 imagination
 Lost in the crowd

**AIN'T**

NO SUNSHINE (Lighthouse Family)

Ain't no sunshine when she's gone
 It's not warm when she's away
 Ain't no sunshine when she's gone
 And she's always gone too long
 Anytime she goes away
 Wonder this time where she's gone
 Wonder if she's gone to stay
 Ain't no sunshine when she's gone
 And this house just ain't no home
 Anytime she goes away

I know, I know, I know, I know
 Hey I ought to leave young thing alone

Ain't no sunshine when she's gone
 Only darkness every day
 Ain't no sunshine when she's gone
 And this house just ain't no home
 Anytime she goes away
 Ain't no sunshine when she's gone
 It's not warm when she's away
 Ain't no sunshine when she's gone
 And she's always gone too long
 Anytime she goes away ...

IF IT TAKES FOREVER

If it takes forever, I will wait for you
 For a thousand summers I will wait for you
 Till you are back beside me, till I'm holding you
 Till I hear you sigh here in my arms

Anywhere you wander, anywhere you go
 Every day remember how I love you so
 In your heart believe what in my heart I know
 That forever more I'll wait for you

Chorus:

The clock will tick away the hours one by one
 And then the time will come when all the waiting's done
 The time when you return and find me here and run
 Straight to my waiting arms

If it takes forever, I will wait for you
 For a thousand summers I will wait for you
 Till you are here beside me, till I'm touching you
 And for evermore sharing our love
 Till you are here beside me, till I'm touching you
 And for evermore I will wait for you

TIGHT ROPE (Papa Roach)

My words are weapons
 In which I murder you with
 Please don't be scared
 Please do not turn your head
 We are the future the 21st century
 Dyslexic, glue-sniffing cybersluts
 With homicidal minds and handguns
 We are insane, nothing'll change

Chorus:

There's a thin line between
 what is good and what is evil
 And I will tiptoe down that line
 but I will feel unstable
 My life is a circus
 And I'm tripping down the tight rope

Well there is nothing to save me now
 So I will not look down
 And again and again and again
 And it happens again and again and again
 There's no beginning there is no end
 there is only change
 Progression backwards, is this where we are heading
 Take back your soul, forget your emptiness

Chorus:

There's a thin line between
 what is good and what is evil
 And I will tiptoe down that line
 but I will feel unstable
 My life is a circus
 And I'm tripping down the tight rope
 Well there is nothing to save me now
 I'm falling to the ground, falling to the ground
 Down to the ground

I speak of madness, my heart and soul
 I cry for people who ain't got control
 Let's take our sanity
 Let's take compassion
 And be responsible for every action
 Hell know, know how
 The way, the way, the way know how
 The way know how

Chorus:

There's a thin line between
 what is good and what is evil
 And I will tiptoe down that line
 but I will feel unstable
 My life is a circus
 And I'm tripping down the tight rope
 Well there is nothing to save me now
 I'm falling to the ground, falling to the ground
 Down to the ground all the way down ...
 hidden in the dirt

I JUST CALLED (Stevie Wonder)

No New Year's Day to celebrate
 No chocolate covered candy hearts to give away
 No first of spring, no song to sing
 In fact it's just another ordinary day
 No April rain, no flowers bloom
 No wedding Saturday within the month of June
 But what it is, is something true
 Made up of these three words that I must say to you
 I just called to say 'I love you'
 I just called to say how much I care
 I just called to say 'I love you'
 And I mean it from the bottom of my heart
 No summer's time, no warm July
 No harvest moon to light one tender August night
 No autumn breeze, no falling leaves
 Not even time for birds to fly to southern skies
 No Libra sun, no Halloween
 No giving thanks to all, the Christmas joy you bring
 But what it is, so old, so new
 To fill your heart like no three words that I ever knew
 I just called to say 'I love you'
 I just called to say how much I care (I do)
 I just called to say 'I love you'
 And I mean it from the bottom of my heart

MERRY CHRISTMAS, EVERYONE

Snow is falling all around me
Children playing having fun
It's the season
Of love and understanding
Merry Christmas, everyone!
Time for parties and celebrations
People dancing all night long
Time for presents and exchanging kisses
Time for singing Christmas songs
Chorus: We gonna have a party tonight
I'm gonna find that girl
Underneath a mistletoe
And kiss by candlelight

Room is swaying
Records playing
All the old songs
Love to give
All I wish that
Every day was Christmas
What a nice way to spend the year!
Chorus: We gonna have a party tonight
I'm gonna find that girl
Underneath a mistletoe
And kiss by candlelight
Snow is falling all around me
Children playing having fun
It's the season of love and understanding
Merry Christmas, everyone!

WE WISH YOU A MERRY CHRISTMAS

We wish you a merry Christmas (3)
and a happy New Year!
Good tidings to you wherever you are
Good tidings for Christmas
And a happy New Year!
Please bring us some figgy pudding (3)
And a cup of good cheer
Good tidings to you wherever you are
Good tidings for Christmas,
And a happy New Year!
We won't go until we've get some (3)
Please bring some out here!
We wish you a merry Christmas (3)
and a happy New Year!

From me and my little brother
From father and from my mother
And aunts, uncles and my cousins
And all of us here!

Good tidings to you wherever you are
Good tidings for Christmas
And a happy New Year!
We wish you a merry Christmas (3)
and a happy New Year!

JINGLE BELLS

Dashing through the snow
In a one-horse open sleigh
O'er the fields we go
Laughing all the way
Bells on bob-tail ring
Making spirits bright
What fun it is to ride and sing
A sleighing song tonight

Chorus: Oh, jingle bells, jingle bells
Jingle all the way
Oh, what fun it is to ride
In a one-horse open sleigh!

A day or two ago
I thought I'd take a ride
And soon Miss Fannie Bright
Was seated by my side
The horse was lean and lank
Misfortune seemed his lot
He got into a drifted bank
And we, we got upset

Chorus: Oh, jingle bells, jingle bells
Jingle all the way
Oh, what fun it is to ride
In a one-horse open sleigh!

Now the ground is white
Go it while you are young
Take the girls tonight
And sing a sleighing song
Just get a bob-tailed bay
Two-forty for his speed
Then hitch him to an open sleigh
And 'Crack!' you'll take the lead

CHRISTMAS IS COMING

Christmas is coming, the geese are getting fat,
Please put a penny in the old man's hat.
If you have no penny, a ha'penny will do;
If you have no ha'penny, then God bless you!

OH CHRISTMAS TREE

Oh Christmas tree, oh Christmas tree
How evergreen your branches!

Oh Christmas tree, oh Christmas tree
How evergreen your branches!

They're green when summer days are bright
They're green when winter snow is white

Oh Christmas tree, oh Christmas tree
How evergreen your branches!

SILENT NIGHT

Silent night, holy night,
All is calm, all is bright,
Round young virgin mother and child
Holy infant so tender and mild,
Sleep in heavenly peace,
Sleep in heavenly peace.

Silent night, holy night,
Shepherds quake at the sight
Glories stream from heaven afar,
Heav'nly hosts sing alleluia,
Christ, the Savior, is born,
Christ, the Savior, is born.

Silent night, holy night
Son of God, Love's pure light,
Radiant beams from Thy holy face
With the dawn of redeeming grace
Jesus, Lord at Thy birth,
Jesus, Lord at Thy birth.

TWELVE DAYS OF CHRISTMAS

On the first day of Christmas my true love sent to me
A partridge in a pear tree
On the 2nd day of Christmas my true love sent to me
Two turtle doves and ...
On the third day of Christmas my true love sent to me
Three French hens ...
On the 4th day of Christmas my true love sent to me
Four calling birds ...
On the fifth day of Christmas my true love sent to me
Five golden rings ...
On the sixth day of Christmas my true love sent to me
Six geese a-laying ...
On the 7th day of Christmas my true love sent to me
Seven swans a-swimming ...
On the 8th day of Christmas my true love sent to me
Eight maids a-milking ...
On the ninth day of Christmas my true love sent to me
Nine ladies dancing ...
On the tenth day of Christmas my true love sent to me
Ten lords a-leaping ...
On the 11th day of Christmas my true love sent to me
Eleven pipers piping;
On the 12th day of Christmas my true love sent to me
Twelve drummers drumming
Eleven pipers piping
Ten lords a-leaping
Nine ladies dancing
Eight maids a-milking
Seven swans a-swimming
Six geese a-laying
Five golden rings
Four calling birds
Three French hens
Two turtle doves
And a partridge in a pear tree!

БЕЗМОЛВНАЯ НОЧЬ

Безмолвная ночь, святая ночь
Всё тихо, всё ясно
Вокруг юной непорочной матери и дитя
Святого младенца такого нежного и кроткого,
Которые спят в небесном покое

Безмолвная ночь, святая ночь
Пастухи трепещут, видя это
Благодать нисходит с далёких небес
Небесные жители поют "аллилуя"
Христос, Спаситель, родился

Безмолвная ночь, святая ночь
Божий сын, свет чистой любви
Сверкающими лучами исходит от
Твоего святого лица
Зарёй всепрощающей благодати
Твоего рождения, Господь наш Иисус

SANTA CLAUS IS COMING TO TOWN

Oh! You better watch out, you better not cry,
You better not pout, I'm telling you why:
Santa Claus is coming to town!
He's making a list, he's checking it twice,
He's gonna find out who's naughty or nice.
Santa Claus is coming to town!
He sees you when you're sleeping,
He knows when you're awake.
He knows if you've been bad or good,
So be good for goodness sake!
So...You better watch out, you better not cry
You better not pout, I'm telling you why.
Santa Claus is coming to town.
Little tin horns, little toy drums.
Rudy-toot-toot and rummy tum tums.
Santa Claus is coming to town.
Little toy dolls that cuddle and coo,
Elephants, boats and Kiddie cars too.
Santa Claus is coming to town.
The kids in Girl and Boy Land will have a jubilee.
They're gonna build a toyland town
All around the Christmas tree.
Oh....You better watch out, you better not cry.
You better not pout, I'm telling you why.



Santa
Claus is
comin'
to town.

Read the text about John Lennon and do the tasks.

JOHN LENNON

John Lennon was shot and killed outside the apartment block where he lived on December 8th 1980. People all around the world felt a terrible loss. They had grown up with this man's music, and everything he had done had affected their lives. Now it was all over.

The group he had formed, The Beatles, had changed pop music forever. From their first single, 'Love Me Do', in 1962, people heard something different to the usual pop music of the time. Their songs seemed more musical than others, and more exciting than the kind of thing most artists were then recording. The Beatles also looked nicer than anyone else. Many more people began to listen to pop music than before. Soon the following that the group had was like nothing anyone had ever seen: a hysteria that the newspapers called 'Beatlemania' swept Britain and soon America.

John Lennon was born in Liverpool on October 9 1940, and formed his first group when he was still at school. He took more interest in music than he did in schoolwork. His report books can still be read and are full of angry comments by his teachers. In 1956 he met Paul McCartney, who joined Lennon's group, The Quarry Men. The two began to compose songs together, and it was these songs that drew people's attention to them. But their first professional concerts were in Hamburg, Germany, and it was here that they perfected their sound. They had to play night after night, and by the end of their two years there, they had become an exciting band to watch.

When they moved back to Liverpool, they began to play at the Cavern Club, where all the new bands were playing. But their songs and their professionalism set them apart. They acquired a manager. Brian Epstein, who gave them a new 'clean' image. He tried to get them a record company deal, but at first no one would take them on. Finally it was a small label, Parlophone, who released 'Love Me Do', a Lennon-McCartney composition.

Their next single, 'Please Please Me' reached number one in March 1963. When the media focused on the new group, it soon became obvious that Lennon was not like other pop stars. His answers to reporters' questions showed an unusual intelligence and wit. He was always a rebel and hated pretension. He was

never quite comfortable with the Beatles' 'nice' image.

In fact it was Lennon who began to break away from this image, and change the public perception of the Beatles. His remarks began to offend some people. His and McCartney's music changed and became more 'psychedelic'. The Beatles grew beards and long hair. They were no longer those four clean-cut young men that even parents liked.



George Harrison John Lennon Ringo Starr Paul McCartney

In 1966, Lennon met Japanese artist Yoko Ono. She was not beautiful in the glamorous way many of the Beatles' followers were, but he fell in love with her. To his surprise he found he loved listening to her views on art, and admired her independence. She brought something new to his life, and soon he found there was more he wanted to do on his own, or with Yoko, than he wanted to do with the Beatles. In 1968



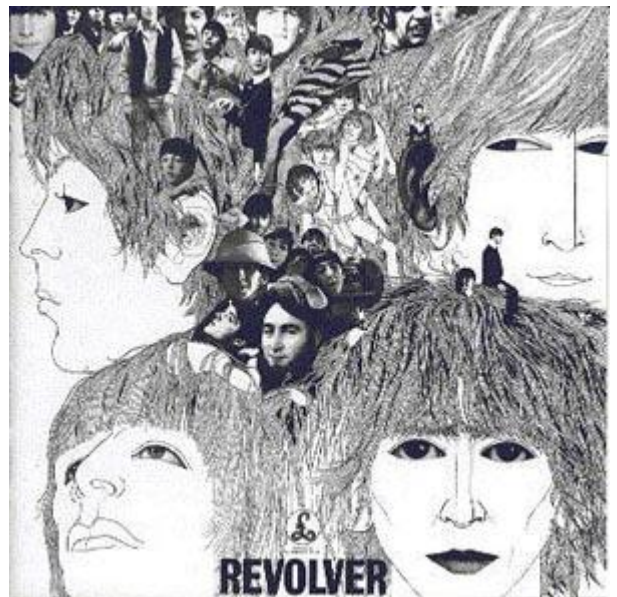
he told the other Beatles of his decision to leave, although the real split did not come until 1971, when Paul McCartney also decided their partnership should end. Lennon married Yoko Ono in 1969.

Of all the former Beatles, Lennon made the most promising start as a solo artist. In 1971 he recorded the song by which most people remember him, 'Imagine'. But in 1975 he stopped making records. For a while he and Yoko separated, partly because of the problems he was having with drugs and alcohol, but eventually he settled down with her again in New York. He devoted himself to looking after their son, Sean - becoming a 'house husband' while Yoko was the 'power wife', going out to work. He also spent time trying to become an American citizen, something which was difficult because of his drugs convictions and unpopularity with the government. But John and Yoko were together for good now, even looking forward to old age together.

In 1980 he released a new album that celebrated their lives, *Double Fantasy* and it, and the single 'Just Like Starting Over' seemed to signal a new, positive phase in both his private life and in his musical career. But that came to its end too soon on the street outside his home in December 1980.

TRUE OR FALSE?

1. John Lennon was born in London.
2. He did well at school.
3. *The Beatles* became professionals in Germany.
4. Lennon was a typical pop star of the 60s.
5. He was quiet and shy.
6. In 1969 John married a Japanese actress.
7. Lennon was the first to leave *the Beatles*.
8. The beginning of his solo career was the most successful of all the former *Beatles*.
9. John and Yoko never parted.
10. Lennon wanted to become an American citizen.
11. His last album was called *Just Like Starting Over*.
12. He died in a car crash.
13. *The Beatles* changed pop music forever.



Answer the question:

How did *the Beatles* change pop music?

The following are three stories by John Lennon – one in the original and two in translation.

Talented people, as a rule, are talented in all — this proves to be true in John Lennon's case. His literary parodies and ironical miniatures constructed on an infinite word-play, dazzling with neologisms, at times seem full nonsense from which suddenly appears certain hidden sense. It is extremely difficult to translate them (the literal translation is simply impossible), it is possible only to interpret, try to transfer style and mood of the text, but for this purpose it is necessary to carry out the same improbable experiments on the Russian language as Lennon carried out on English.

Nicely Nicely Clive

To Clive Barrow it was just an ordinary day nothing unusual or strange about it, everything quite navel, nothing outstanley just another day but to Roger it was somthing special, a day amongst days... a red lettuce day... because Roger was getting married and as he dressed that morning he thought about the gay batchelor soups he'd had with all his pals. And Clive said nothing. To Roger everything was different, wasn't this the day. his Mother had told him about, in his best suit and all that, grimming and sha-keing hands, people tying boots and ricebudda on his car.

To have and to harm... till death duty part... he knew it all off by hertz. Clive Barrow seemed oblivious. Roger could visualise Anne in her flowing weddy drag, being wheeled up the aisle, smiling a blessing. He had butterfly in his stomarce as he fastened his bough tie and brushed his hairs. «I hope I'm doing the right thing» he thought looking in the mirror, «Am I good enough for her?» Roger need not have worried because he was «Should I have flowers all round the spokes» said Anne polishing her foot rest. «Or should I keep it syble?» she continued looking down on her grain haired Mother.

«Does it really matter?» repaid her Mother wearily wiping her sign. «He won't be looking at your spokes anyway.» Anne smiled the smile of someone who's seen a few laughs.

Then luckily Annes father came, home from sea and cancelled the husband.

Присшествие, происшедшее с миссом Дафилд

Среди многих скучаев в моей заливной книжке примечательна запись о даже дливом дне, что стоял в городке Гастроно графства Вшир в конце Кош-марта одна тысяча восемьсот девяносто второго года. Мы сид ели за обедом, как вдруг Шерлок Хамс получает телемаму. Он смолчал, но я заметил, что брови его нахмырились, лицо поселезnelo. Сглотив кекст, он оборотился ко мне, хитро дядя прищученными глазами.

«Комплементарно, Ваксон, — резко икнул он — Угадайте-ка, кто сбежал из замочления?»

Я принялся вспоминать всех предстатников, недавно сбежавших или сбежавших из-за решки.

«Эрик Морли?» — Он помысал головой.

«Оксо Витни?» — пред лажил я. Никаких реакция.

«Риго Харгрейвх?»

«Нет, Навигатсон, не угадаlee! Оксо Витни, вот кто!» — крикнул он мне на другую сторону улицы, хотя я был на этой.

«Хамс, как Вы догадались?» — подраженно шепнул я.

«Алиментарно, Позватсон!»

В этот фермент в тверь постучал высокий, странно худой, высокий странный человек.

«Ухватсон, это он!»

«Хамс, ради дога объясните, откуда Вы знаете», — ухнул я, падая со стула в кресло.

«Ориентально, Кваксон», — брыкнул Хамс, выстукивая трупку о костыль. И тут в комнату ввалился — кто бы Вы думали? — Оксо Витни собственной перцовой.

Хамс попал в дочку.

Перевод с английского Ф. Урнова

Пес-борец

В веселом царстве-государстве, что за долами дальними, за морями, за пальмами, и оттуда далеко, и отсюда нелегко, где стоит чудо-гора и сегодня и вчера, на которой ворона не воронится и воробью не спится, жили да жевали граждане и горожане. Числом великим, если верить (целых тридцать девять), на маленьком островке-поздравке. куда ехать-плыть не одну тысячу миль. Наступило там время урожая-уважайное. Народ этой страны — без стены — праздновал на всю кукушку, плясками пел да песни плясал.

Господину Пэрри (он был в тех краях за полумера) полагалось по традиции из-под земли достать (это ему было под стать) к торжеству что-нибудь этакое-такое, можно малое, можно большое (однажды он мимо дома пригласил даже гнома).

А в этот раз Пэрри с шумом открыл двери, и все увидели не говорящего кита, не усатого скворца, а настоящего пса-борца!!!

Но кто же схватится с такой зверюгой? Хоть борьба и не драка, но борец-то собака!

PLEASE PLEASE ME

Last night I said these words to my girl,
I know you never even try, girl,
C'mon... Please please me, whoa yeah, like I please you.

You don't need me to show the way, love.
Why do I always have to say "love,"
C'mon... Please please me, whoa yeah, like I please you.

I don't wanna sound complainin',
But you know there's always rain in my heart.
I do all the pleasin' with you, it's so hard to reason
With you, whoah yeah, why do you make me blue.

Verse 1 repeated

I SAW HER STANDING THERE

1 - 2 - 3 - 4 !
Well, she was just 17,
You know what I mean,
And the way she looked was way beyond compare.
So how could I dance with another
When I saw her standin' there.

Well she looked at me, and I, I could see
That before too long I'd fall in love with her.
She wouldn't dance with another
When I saw her standin' there.

Well, my heart went "boom,"
When I crossed that room,
And I held her hand in mine...

Whoah, we danced through the night,
And we held each other tight,
And before too long I fell in love with her.
Now I'll never dance with another
Since I saw her standing there

TWIST AND SHOUT (Medley/Russell)

Well, shake it up, baby, now,
Twist and shout.
C'mon c'mon, c'mon, c'mon, baby, now,
Come on and work it on out.
Well, work it on out, honey.
You know you look so good.
You know you got me goin', now,
Just like I knew you would.

Well, shake it up, baby, now,
Twist and shout.
C'mon, c'mon, c'mon, c'mon, baby, now,
Come on and work it on out.

You know you twist your little girl,
You know you twist so fine.
Come on and twist a little closer, now,
And let me know that you're mine.

Well, shake it, shake it, shake it, baby, now.

A TASTE OF HONEY (Scott/Marlow)

A taste of honey... tasting much sweeter than wine.
I dream of your first kiss, and then,
I feel upon my lips again,
A taste of honey... tasting much sweeter than wine.

I will return, yes I will return,
I'll come back for the honey and you.

Yours was the kiss that awoke my heart,
There lingers still, 'though we're far apart,
That taste of honey... tasting much sweeter than wine.

I will return, yes I will return,
I'll come back for the honey and you.

CAN'T BUY ME LOVE

Can't buy me love, love
Can't buy me love

I'll buy you a diamond ring my friend
if it makes you feel alright
I'll get you anything my friend if it makes you feel alright
'Cause I don't care too much for money,
money can't buy me love

I'll give you all I got to give if you say you love me too
I may not have a lot to give but what I got I'll give to you
I don't care too much for money, money can't buy me love

Can't buy me love, everybody tells me so
Can't buy me love, no no no, no

Say you don't need no diamond rings and I'll be satisfied
Tell me that you want the kind of things
that money just can't buy
I don't care too much for money, money can't buy me love

HELP

Help, I need somebody,
Help, not just anybody,
Help, you know I need someone, help.
When I was younger, so much younger than today,
I never needed anybody's help in any way.
But now these days are gone, I'm not so self assured,
Now I find I've changed my mind
and opened up the doors.

Chorus: Help me if you can, I'm feeling down
And I do appreciate you being round.
Help me, get my feet back on the ground,
Won't you please, please help me?

And now my life has changed in oh so many ways,
My independence seems to vanish in the haze.
But every now and then I feel so insecure,
I know that I just need you like I've never done before.

Chorus

Verse 1

Chorus

YESTERDAY

Yesterday, all my troubles seemed so far away
 Now it looks as though they are here to stay
 Oh, I believe in yesterday
 Suddenly, I'm not half the man I used to be
 There's a shadow hanging over me
 Oh, yesterday came suddenly

Why she had to go
 I don't know
 She wouldn't say
 I said something wrong
 Now I long for yesterday
 Yesterday love was such an easy game to play
 Now I need a place to hide away
 Oh, I believe in yesterday...

Why she had to go
 I don't know
 She wouldn't say
 I said something wrong
 Now I long for yesterday
 Yesterday love was such an easy game to play
 Now I need a place to hide away
 Oh, I believe in yesterday...
 Mm mm mm mm mm mm

ELEANOR RIGBY

Ah, look at all the lonely people
 Ah, look at all the lonely people

Eleanor Rigby picks up the rice in the church where a
 wedding has been
 Lives in a dream
 Waits at the window, wearing the face that she keeps in a
 jar by the door
 Who is it for?

Chorus

All the lonely people
 Where do they all come from?
 All the lonely people
 Where do they all belong?

Father McKenzie writing the words of a sermon
 that no one will hear
 No one comes near
 Look at him working, darnin' his socks in the night when
 there's nobody there
 What does he care?

Chorus

Ah, look at all the lonely people
 Ah, look at all the lonely people

Eleanor Rigby died in the church and was buried
 along with her name
 Nobody came

Father McKenzie wiping the dirt from his hands
 as he walks from the grave

No one was saved

*Chorus***WHEN I AM SIXTY-FOUR**

When I get older, losing my hair
 many years from now
 Will you still be sending me a valentine
 Birthday greetings, bottle of wine?
 If I'd been out till quarter to three
 Would you lock the door?

Will you still need me, will you still feed me
 When I'm sixty-four?

You'll be older too
 And if you say the word I could stay with you
 I could be handy mending the fuse
 When your lights have gone
 You can knit a sweater by the fireside
 Sunday mornings go for a ride
 Doing the garden, digging the weeds
 Who could ask for more?

Will you still need me, will you still feed me
 When I'm sixty-four?

Every summer we can rent a cottage
 In the Isle of Wight if it's not too dear
 We shall scrimp and save
 Grandchildren on your knee:
 Vera, Chuck and Dave
 Send me a postcard, drop me a line
 Stating point of view
 Indicate precisely what you mean to say
 Yours sincerely, wasting away
 Give me your answer, fill in a form
 Mine forever more

Will you still need me, will you still feed me
 When I'm sixty-four?

JULIA

Half of what I say is meaningless
 But I say it just to reach you, Julia

Julia, Julia, ocean child calls me
 So I sing a song of love, Julia
 Julia, seashell eyes, windy smile calls me
 So I sing a song of love, Julia

Her hair of floating sky is shimmering,
 glimmering in the sun

Julia, Julia, morning moon, touch me
 So I sing a song of love, Julia

When I cannot sing my heart
 I can only speak my mind, Julia

Julia, sleeping sand, silent cloud, touch me
 So I sing a song of love, Julia

Hum hum hum hum... calls me
So I sing a song of love for Julia, Julia, Julia

ROCKY RACCOON

Now somewhere in the black mountain hills of Dakota
There lived a young boy named Rocky Raccoon
And one day his woman ran off with another guy
Hit young Rocky in the eye Rocky didn't like that
He said I'm gonna get that boy
So one day he walked into town
Booked himself a room in the local saloon.

Rocky Raccoon checked into his room
Only to find Gideon's bible
Rocky had come equipped with a gun
To shoot off the legs of his rival

His rival it seems had broken his dreams
By stealing the girl of his fancy.
Her name was Magil and she called herself Lil
But everyone knew her as Nancy.

Now she and her man who called himself Dan
Were in the next room at the hoe down
Rocky burst in and grinning a grin
He said Danny boy this is a showdown
But Daniel was hot – he drew first and shot
And Rocky collapsed in the corner.

Now the doctor came in stinking of gin
And proceeded to lie on the table
He said Rocky you met your match
And Rocky said, Doc it's only a scratch
And I'll be better I'll be better doc as soon as I am able.

Now Rocky Raccoon he fell back in his room
Only to find Gideon's bible
Gideon checked out and he left it no doubt
To help with good Rocky's revival.

HEY, JUDE

Hey, Jude, don't make it bad
Take a sad song and make it better
Remember to let her into your heart
Then you can start to make it better
Hey, Jude, don't be afraid
You were made to go on and get her
The minute you let her under your skin
Then you begin to make it better

And anytime you feel the pain
Hey, Jude, refrain
Don't carry the world upon your shoulders
For, well, you know that it's a fool
Who plays it cool
By making this world a little colder
Da da da – da da da da da

Hey, Jude don't let me down
You have found her, now go and get her
Remember to let her into your heart

Then you can start to make it better
So let it out and let it in
Hey, Jude, begin
You're waiting for someone to perform with
And don't you know that it's just you
Hey, Jude you'll do
The movement you need is on your shoulder
Da da da – da da da da da

Hey, Jude, don't make it bad
Take a sad song and make it better
Remember to let her under your skin
Then you'll begin to make it better...

REVOLUTION 1

You say you want a revolution
Well you know
We all want to change the world
You tell me that it's evolution
Well you know
We all want to change the world
But when you talk about destruction
Don't you know that you can count me out (in)
Don't you know it's gonna be alright ...

You say you got a real solution
Well you know
We'd all love to see the plan
You ask me for a contribution
Well you know
We're all doing what we can
But when you want money for people with minds that hate
All I can tell you is brother you have to wait
Don't you know it's gonna be alright ...

You say you'll change the constitution
Well you know
We'd all love to change your head
You tell me it's the institution
Well you know
You'd better free your mind instead
But if you go carrying pictures of Chairman Mao
You ain't going to make it with anyone anyhow
Don't you know know it's gonna be alright ...

BLACKBIRD

Blackbird singing in the dead of night
Take these broken wings and learn to fly
All your life
You were only waiting for this moment to arise.

Blackbird singing in the dead of night
Take these sunken eyes and learn to see
All your life
You were only waiting for this moment to be free.

Blackbird fly Blackbird fly
Into the light of the dark black night.

Blackbird singing in the dead of night
Take these broken wings and learn to fly
All your life
You were only waiting for this moment to arise

You were only waiting for this moment to arise
You were only waiting for this moment to arise

LET IT BE

When I find myself in times of trouble
Mother Mary comes to me
Speaking words of wisdom
Let it be
And in my hour of darkness
She is standing right in front of me
Speaking words of wisdom
Let it be
Let it be, let it be, let it be, let it be
Whisper words of wisdom
Let it be

And when the broken-hearted people
Living in the world agree
There will be an answer
Let it be
For though they may be parted
There is still a chance that they will see
There will be an answer

Let it be
Chorus: Let it be, let it be, let it be, let it be
There will be an answer
Let it be
Let it be, let it be, let it be, let it be
Whisper words of wisdom
Let it be

And when the night is cloudy
There is still a light that shines on me
Shine until tomorrow
Let it be
I wake up to the sound of music
Mother Mary comes to me
Speaking words of wisdom
Let it be

Chorus:

IMAGINE (John Lennon)

Imagine there's no heaven
It's easy if you try
No hell below us
Above us only sky
Imagine all the people
Living for today, a-ha

Imagine there's no countries
It isn't hard to do
Nothing to kill or die for
And no religion too
Imagine all the people
Living life in peace, yu-hu

You may say I'm a dreamer
But I'm not the only one
I hope some day you'll join us
And the world will be the one

Imagine no possessions
I wonder if you can
No need for greed or hunger
A brotherhood of men
Imagine all the people
Sharing all the world, yu-huh

You may say I'm a dreamer
But I'm not the only one
I hope some day you'll join us
And the world will live as one

When I was 5 years old, my mother always told me that happiness was the key to life. When I went to school, they asked me what I wanted to be when I grew up, I wrote down 'happy! They told me I didn't understand the assignment, and I told them they didn't understand life.

John Lennon

Read and translate the text and do the task

FREDDY MERCURY & QUEEN

Freddy Mercury, the lead singer for *Queen*, whose worldwide hits combined theatrical pomp with heavy metal, was born September 5th 1946 on the African island of Zanzibar, in the family of a British government accountant.



His real name was Frederick Bulsara. He was raised in Bombay, India, and moved to England with his parents shortly before reaching his teens. Earning a degree in graphic design at art college, he joined a local blues-rock group called *Wreckage*. He called himself Freddy Mercury after the mythological messenger of the gods.

He was definitely a man who could hold an audience in the palm of his hand. Beginning in the early seventies Mercury – who called Jimi Hendrix and Lisa Minelli as his main influences – led *Queen* through 18 albums that sold 80 million copies worldwide. The other *Queen* members: Brian May, Roger Taylor and John Deacon say he was the band's driving

force, a tremendously creative man.

“I had an idea of calling a group *Queen* for a long time”, Freddie said in the interview. “It was a very strong name, very universal, it had a lot of visual potential and was open to all sorts of interpretations.”

The debut album of the group called *Queen* (1973) went unnoticed, but its more eclectic *Queen-2* (1974) made the British charts. The group's third effort *Sheer Heart Attack* made it popular in America on the strength of a hit single about a high-class callgirl *Killer Queen*.

After the successful tours in the US and Japan *Queen* recorded *A Night In The Opera* highlighted by Mercury over-the-top *Bohemian Rhapsody* with the famous opera section.

The next album *News of the World* went platinum in the US thanks to Mercury's *We Are the Champions* and May's *We Will Rock You*. Both songs became instant hits.

After their next album called *Jazz*, *Queen* reigned as one of the biggest rock-acts in the world, a position, strengthened by *Crazy Little Thing Called Love* (1979), *Another One Bites the Dust*, *Under Pressure*, *Radio Ga-Ga*, *Body Language* and others.

According to his producer, making records with Mercury was like one continuous party. Freddie had a fabulous sense of humour and was absolutely outrageous. But when he went out in public he was very quiet. He had the power to vibrate the air around him at will, yet he could also turn it off. He never had a desire to be seen everywhere, what was happening in his own life was more important to him.

Excess also defined his private life. He often boasted he'd had more lovers than Elizabeth Taylor. Freddie always looked like a star and acted like a star even when he was penniless.

When he learned he had AIDS and realized the end was coming, he faced it with incredible bravery. In his statement before the death he explained that he had waited so long to tell the truth about his illness because his privacy had always been very special to him.

On November 24th 1991 he died in his London home. A brief funeral service in Zoroastrian faith was held for his family and friends. Freddy Mercury was one of the most beloved persons in the history of rock and he is missed and will be missed primarily as a personality.

TRUE OR FALSE?

1. Freddy Mercury was born on an island in the Indian Ocean.
2. He believed in Jesus Christ.
3. He spent his childhood in India.
4. He finished an art college in Bombay.
5. Before joining *Queen* he sang with Jimi Hendrix.
6. Queen Elizabeth suggested calling the group *Queen*.
7. *Killer Queen* is the name of their first album.
8. He liked to tell people about his private life.
9. The audience was completely under his power at the concerts.
10. He died of AIDS.



KILLER QUEEN

She keeps Moët et Chandon
In her pretty cabinet
'Let them eat cake' she says
Just like Marie Antoinette
A built-in remedy
For Krushchev and Kennedy
At any time an invitation
You can't decline

Caviar and cigarettes
Well versed in etiquette
Extraordinarily nice

Chorus:

She's a Killer Queen
Gunpowder, gelatine
Dynamite with a laser beam
Guaranteed to blow your mind
Anytime
Recommended at the price
Insatiable an appetite
Wanna try?

To avoid complications
She never kept the same address
In conversation
She spoke just like a baroness
Met a man from China
Went down to Geisha Minah
Then again incidentally
If you're that way inclined
Perfume came naturally from Paris
For cars she couldn't care less
Fastidious and precise

Chorus:

Drop of a hat she's as willing as
Playful as a pussy cat
Then momentarily out of action
Temporarily out of gas
To absolutely drive you wild, wild
She's all out to get you

Chorus:

Recommended at the price
Insatiable an appetite
Wanna try?
You wanna try...

BOHEMIAN RHAPSODY

Is this the real life?
Is this just fantasy?
Caught in a landslide,
No escape from reality.
Open your eyes, Look up to the skies and see,
I'm just a poor boy, I need no sympathy,
Because I'm easy come, easy go, little high, little low,
Any way the wind blows doesn't really matter to me, to me.
Mama, just killed a man,
Put a gun against his head,
pulled my trigger, now he's dead.

Mama, life had just begun,
But now I've gone and thrown it all away.
Mama, ooh, didn't mean to make you cry,
If I'm not back again this time tomorrow,
Carry on, carry on as if nothing really matters.

Too late, my time has come,
Sends shivers down my spine, body's aching all the time.
Goodbye, everybody, I've got to go,
Gotta leave you all behind and face the truth.
Mama, ooh, I don't want to die,
I sometimes wish I'd never been born at all.

I see a little silhouette of a man,
Scaramouche, Scaramouche, will you do the Fandango.
Thunderbolt and lightning, very, very fright'ning me.
(Galileo.) Galileo. (Galileo.) Galileo, Galileo figaro
Magnifico.

I'm just a poor boy and nobody loves me.
He's just a poor boy from a poor family,
Spare him his life from this monstrosity.
Easy come, easy go, will you let me go.
Bismillah!

No, we will not let you go.
(Let him go!) Bismillah! We will not let you go.
(Let him go!) Bismillah! We will not let you go.
(Let me go.) Will not let you go. (Let me go.) Ah.

No, no, no, no, no, no, no.
(Oh mama mia, mama mia.) Mama mia, let me go.
Beelzebub has a devil put aside for me, for me, for me.

So you think you can stone me and spit in my eye.
So you think you can love me and leave me to die.
Oh, baby, can't do this to me, baby,
Just gotta get out, just gotta get right outta here.
Nothing really matters, anyone can see,
Nothing really matters,
Nothing really matters to me ...
Anyway the wind blows

LOVE OF MY LIFE

Love of my life – you've hurt me,
You've broken my heart and now you leave me.
Love of my life can't you see,
Bring it back, bring it back,
Don't take it away from me, because you don't know -
what it means to me.
Love of my life don't leave me,
You've taken my love, you now desert me,
Love of my life can't you see,
Bring it back, bring it back,
Don't take it away from me because you don't know –
what it means to me.

You will remember –
When this is blown over
And everything's all by the way -
When I grow older
I will be there at your side to remind you how I still love
you – I still love you.
Back - hurry back,
Please bring it back home to me,
because you don't know what it means to me –
Love of my life ...
Love of my life...

WE WILL ROCK YOU (May)

Buddy you're a boy make a big noise
 Playin' in the street gonna be a big man some day
 You got mud on yo' face
 You big disgrace
 Kickin' your can all over the place
 Singin'
 We will we will rock you
 We will we will rock you
 Buddy you're a young man hard man
 Shoutin' in the street gonna take on the world some day
 You got blood on yo' face
 You big disgrace
 Wavin' your banner all over the place
 Singin'
 We will we will rock
 We will we will you

Buddy you're an old man poor man
 Pleadin' with your eyes
 gonna make you some peace some da
 You got mud on your face
 You big disgrace
 Somebody better put you back into your place
 We will we will rock you
 We will we will rock you

WE ARE THE CHAMPIONS

I've paid my dues -
 Time after time -
 I've done my sentence
 But committed no crime -
 And bad mistakes
 I've made a few
 I've had my share of sand kicked in my face -
 But I've come through
 We are the champions - my friends
 And we'll keep on fighting - till the end -
 We are the champions -
 We are the champions
 No time for losers
 'Cause we are the champions - of the world -

I've taken my bows
 And my curtain calls -
 You brought me fame and fortune
 - and everything that goes with it -I thank you all
 But it's been no bed of roses
 No pleasure cruise -
 I consider it a challenge before the whole human race -
 And I ain't gonna lose -

We are the champions - my friends
 And we'll keep on fighting - till the end -
 We are the champions -
 We are the champions
 No time for losers
 'Cause we are the champions - of the world -

FRIENDS WILL BE FRIENDS

Another red letter day
 So the pound has dropped and the children are creating
 The other half ran away

WHO WANTS TO LIVE FOREVER (May)

There's no time for us,
 There's no place for us,
 What is this thing that builds our dreams
 Yet slips away from us.
 Who wants to live forever?
 Who wants to live forever? Who?
 There's no chance for us,
 It's all decided for us,
 This world has only one sweet moment set aside for us.
 Who wants to live forever, (2)
 Who dares to love forever,
 When love must die.
 But touch my tears with your lips,
 Touch my world with your fingertips,
 And we can have forever,
 And we can love forever,
 Forever is our today,
 Who wants to live forever,
 Who wants to live forever,
 Forever is our today,
 Who waits forever anyway?

MY MELANCHOLY BLUES

Another party's over -
 And I'm left cold sober -
 My baby left me for somebody new -
 I don't wanna talk about it
 Want to forget about it
 Wanna be intoxicated with that special brew -
 So come and get me -
 Let me -
 Get in that sinking feeling
 That says my heart is on and all time low - So -
 Don't expect me -
 To behave perfectly -
 And wear that sunny smile
 My guess is I'm in for a cloudy & overcast
 Don't try and stop me
 'Cause I'm heading for that stormy weather soon -
 I'm causing a mild sensation -
 With this new occupation
 I'm permanently glued -
 To this extraordinary mood, so now move over -
 And let me take over -
 With my melancholy blues -

I'm causing a mild sensation
 With this new occupation
 I'm in the news
 Just getting used to this my new exposure
 Come into my enclosure
 And meet my - melancholy blues -

Taking all the cash and leaving you with the lumber
 Got a pain in the chest
 Doctors on strike

What you need is a rest
It's not easy life, but you've got friends you can trust

Friends will be friends
When you're in need of love
they give you care and attention
Friends will be friends
When you're through with life and all hope is lost
Hold out your hand 'cos friends will be friends -
right to the end

Now it's a beautiful day
The postman delivered a letter from your lover
Only a 'phone call away
You tried to track him down
but somebody stole his number
As a matter of fact
You're getting used to life without him in your way
It's so easy now, 'cos you got friends
you can trust

Friends will be friends
When you're in need of love
they give you care and attention
Friends will be friends
When you're through with life
and all hope is lost
Hold out your hand 'cos friends will be friends -
right to the end

It's so easy now, 'cos you got friends
you can trust
Friends will be friends
When you're in need of love
they give you care and attention
Friends will be friends
When you're through with life
and all hope is lost
Hold out your hand 'cos friends will be friends -
right to the end

Friends will be friends
When you're in need of love
they give you care and attention
Friends will be friends
When you're through with life
and all hope is lost

JIM MORRISON AND 'THE DOORS'



Hold out your hand 'cos right till the end -
friends will be friends
Yeah yeah

THE SHOW MUST GO ON

Empty spaces - what are we living for
Abandoned places - I guess we know the score
On and on, does anybody know what we are looking for...
Another hero, another mindless crime
Behind the curtain, in the pantomime
Hold the line, does anybody want to take it anymore

(The) show must go on,
(The) show must go on
Inside my heart is breaking
My make-up may be flaking
But my smile still stays on.

Whatever happens, I'll leave it all to chance
Another heartache, another failed romance
On and on, does anybody know what we are living for?
I guess I'm learning, I must be warmer now
I'll soon be turning, round the corner now
Outside the dawn is breaking
But inside in the dark I'm aching to be free
(The) show must go on
(The) show must go on
Inside my heart is breaking
My make-up may be flaking
But my smile still stays on

My soul is painted like the wings of butterflies
Fairytale of yesterday will grow but never die
I can fly - my friends
(The) show must go on
(The) show must go on
I'll face it with a grin
I'm never giving in
On - with the show -

I'll top the bill, I'll overkill
I have to find the will to carry on
On with the -
On with the show -
(The) show must go on...

When
the
doors
of
percep
tion
are
cleanse
d,
things
will



appear as they truly are, infinite.

(William Blake)

There's a bit of lore that Jim Morrison liked to tell: when he was four years old, his family drove past an overturned truck on a highway in New Mexico, where a number of Pueblo Indians lay on the road, dying. The scene upset the young Morrison considerably, and he would later tell friends that when the family drove away, the soul of a dying Indian passed into his body. That story is often used (as it was in director Oliver Stone's biopic *The Doors*) to explain the quality that made Morrison one of the most charismatic and mythologized performers in rock-and-roll history during his time with the group the Doors. "He was a shaman," said Ray Manzarek, the Doors' keyboardist. "He was an electric shaman."

Morrison, the son of a U.S. Navy rear admiral, and Manzarek met in the mid-sixties at U.C.L.A., where they were both studying film. They decided to form a band, one that was less influenced by the music of the time than by Manzarek's interest in blues, as well as the jazz orientation of guitarist Robbie Krieger and drummer John Densmore. Atop this mixture were Morrison's lyrics--image-rich poems inspired by the writings of Nietzsche, Blake, Rimbaud, and others, about lust, alienation, and the search for a higher existence. The mood of the Doors' music was dark and daring and--best of all--erotic. On the first chorus of the group's self-titled 1967 debut album, Morrison announced the goal, to "break on through to the other side." The Beatles wanted to hold your hand. The Rolling Stones wanted to spend the night together. But the Doors wanted to light your fire. Even that was tame compared to "The End." It was shocking enough to get the group banned from Los Angeles's famed Whisky-a-Go-Go nightclub, and a signal that the Doors were a force to be reckoned with.

With Morrison out front, egging on ever-growing crowds, the Doors created the aura of danger, taboo, and uncharted territory, even if the journey was really a little safer than it seemed. The group's music was ultimately accessible, with songs such as "Light My Fire," "People Are Strange," "Hello, I Love You," and "Touch Me" rolling into the Top 20. And Morrison played pop star to the hilt--taking off his shirt, wearing tight leather pants, and posing for spreads in all the teen magazines.

But there was certainly a darker side to Morrison: he was an alcoholic and a heavy drug user, sexually promiscuous and prone to reckless and violent behavior. The Doors' concert career was effectively neutered in 1969, when a drunken Morrison was convicted of exposing himself onstage in Miami. Soon thereafter, he moved to Paris, where he died of a heart attack, in 1971.

The Doors arguably became more popular after Morrison's death. In 1979, Francis Ford Coppola made "The End" a centerpiece in his epic *Apocalypse Now*, and the 1980 biography of Morrison and the band, *No One Here Gets Out Alive*, written by former Doors gofer Danny Sugarman, was a bestseller. The same year, *The Doors Greatest Hits* was released and went on to sell two million copies. In the early eighties, the Doors were selling about 750,000 albums a year, prompting *Rolling Stone* to publish a photo of Morrison on the cover proclaiming "He's hot, he's sexy, and he's dead."

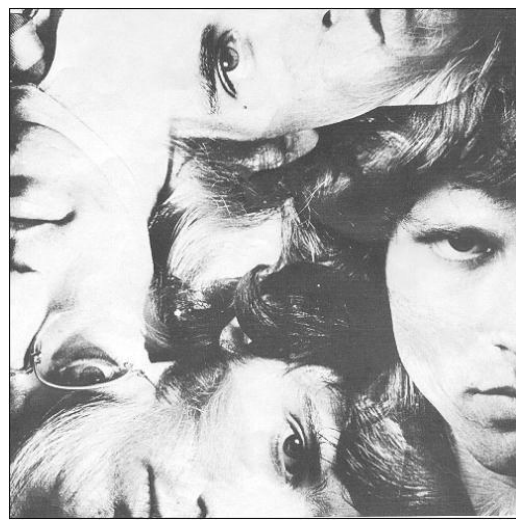
The Doors--who broke up in 1973, after the remaining trio recorded two albums without Morrison--remain an ongoing concern. In 1991, Oliver Stone's film starring Val Kilmer further mythologized Morrison. During 1996, the greatest-hits album and *Absolutely Live* were re-released. Since his death, Morrison's grave in Paris's famed Père Lachaise cemetery is dotted with gifts and graffiti from a constant pilgrimage of fans. "I love it," Manzarek has said. "To me, it's a process; every five years, there's a new generation of fifteen-year-olds discovering *the Doors*."

TRUE OR FALSE?

1. Jim used to say that when he was four years old, his soul passed into the body of a dying Indian.
2. He studied film-making at the Los Angeles university.
3. Jim was extremely well read.
4. When *the Doors* became famous, Jim's photos appeared in the press.
5. Jim was nice, polite and had very good manners.
6. He died in London and was buried there.
7. His most famous song *The End* was used in a film about Vietnam.
8. Jim sang romantic songs about love and friendship.
9. 20 years after Jim's death the film about *the Doors* attracted attention to his personality.
10. Few people remember Jim Morrison now.

JIM MORRISON:

- Я вношу хаос в тексты, в то время как остальные пытаются навести порядок.



MOONLIGHT DRIVE

Let's swim to the moon
Uh-huh
Let's climb thru the tide
Penetrate the evenin' that the city sleeps to hide

Let's swim out tonight, love
It's our turn to try
Parked beside the ocean
On our moonlight drive

Let's swim to the moon
Uh-huh
Let's climb thru the tide
Surrender to the waiting worlds that lap against our side

Nothin' left open
And no time to decide
We've stepped into a river
On our moonlight drive

Let's swim to the moon
Let's climb thru the tide
You reach a hand to hold me
But I can't be your guide

Easy I love you as I watch you glide
Falling through wet forests
On our moonlight drive
Moonlight drive

C'mon, baby, gonna take a little ride
Goin' down by the ocean side
Gonna get real close
Get real tight
Baby gonna drown tonight
Goin' down, down, down

MY EYES HAVE SEEN YOU

My eyes have seen you
Stand in your door
Meet inside
Show me some more

My eyes have seen you
Turn and stare
Fix your hair
Move upstairs
My eyes have seen you
Free from disguise
Gazing on a city
Under television skies
Television skies

My eyes have seen you
Eyes have seen you
Let them photograph your soul
Memorize your alleys
On an endless roll
Endless roll

RIDERS ON THE STORM

Riders on the storm
Into this house we're born
Into this world we're thrown
Like a dog without a bone
An actor out on loan
Riders on the storm

There's a killer on the road
His brain is squirming like a toad
Take a long holiday
Let your children play
If you give this man a ride
Sweet family will die
Killer on the road

Girl you gotta love your man
Take him by the hand
Make him understand
The world on you depends
Our life will never end
Girl you gotta love your man

BREAK ON THROUGH

You know the day destroys the night
Night divides the day
Tried to run
Tried to hide
Break on through to the other side
Break on through to the other side
Break on through to the other side

We chased our pleasures here
Dug our treasures there
Can you still recall the time we cried
Break on through to the other side

Everybody loves my baby (2)
She gets, she gets, she gets high

I found an island in your arms
A country in your eyes
Arms that chained us, eyes that lied
Break on through to the other side
Made a scene from week to week
Day to day, hour to hour
The gate is straight, deep and wide
Break on through to the other side

WAITING FOR THE SUN

At first flash of Eden we raced down to the sea,
standing there on freedom shore,
waiting for the sun, waiting for the sun, waiting for the sun

Can't you feel it now that spring has come
that it's time to live in the scattered sun?
Waiting for the sun, waiting for the sun,
waiting for the sun, waiting for the sun.

Waiting, waiting, waiting, waiting,
waiting, waiting, waiting, waiting,
waiting for you to come along,
waiting for you to hear my song,

waiting for you to come along,
waiting for you to tell me what went wrong.
This is the strangest life I've ever known.

LIGHT MY FIRE

You know that it would be untrue
You know that I would be a liar
If I was to say to you
Girl, we couldn't get much higher
Come on baby, light my fire
Come on baby, light my fire
Try to set the night on fire
The time to hesitate is through
No time to wallow in the mire
Try now we can only lose
And our love become a funeral pyre
Come on baby, light my fire
Come on baby, light my fire
Try to set the night on fire

FIVE TO ONE

Five to one, baby, one in five,
no one here gets out alive,
now you get yours, baby, I'll get mine,
gonna make it, baby, if we try.
The old get old and the young get stronger,
may take a week and it may take longer,
they got the guns but we got the numbers.
Gonna win, yeah, we're takin' over, come on!
Your ballroom days are over, baby, night is drawing near
shadows of the evening crawl across the years.
You walk across the floor with a flower in your hand,
trying to tell me no one understands,
trading your hours for a handful of dimes.
Gonna make it, baby, in our prime.
get together one more time (4)

SPANISH CARAVAN

Carry me Caravan, take me away
Take me to Portugal, take me to Spain
Andalusia with fields full of grain
I have to see you again and again
Take me, Spanish Caravan
Yes, I know you can

Trade winds find Galleons lost in the sea
I know where a treasure is waiting for me
Silver and gold in the mountains of Spain
I have to see you again and again
Take me, Spanish Caravan
Yes, I know you can

THE END

This is the end, beautiful friend.
This is the end, my only friend, the end
of our elaborate plans, the end
of everything that stands, the end
no safety or surprise, the end.
I'll never look into your eyes again.

Can you picture what we'll be,
so limitless and free,
desperately in need of some stranger's hand,
in a desperate land?

Lost in a Roman wilderness of pain,
and all the children are insane,
all the children are insane,
waiting for the summer rain.
There's danger on the edge of town,
ride the king's highway.
Weird scenes inside the gold mine;
ride the highway west, baby.

Ride the snake, ride the snake
to the lake, the ancient lake.
The snake is long, seven miles;
ride the snake, he's old
and his skin is cold

The West is the best, the West is the best,
get here and we'll do the rest.
the blue bus is calling us (2)
Driver, where are you takin' us?

The killer awoke before the dawn,
he put his boots on,
he took a face from the ancient gallery,
and he walked on down the hall.

He went to the room where his sister lived,
and then he paid a visit to his brother.
and then he walked on down the hall.
And he came to a door and he looked inside,
"Father?"
"Yes, son?"
"I want to kill you. Mother, I want to ..."

Come on, baby, take a chance with us, (3)
and meet me at the back of the blue bus...

This is the end, beautiful friend.
This is the end, my only friend, the end.
It hurts to set you free but you'll never follow me.
The end of laughter and soft lies,
the end of nights we tried to die.
this is the end.